





## *In the Same Series*

- 1 ANCIENT INDIA As described by Megasthenes and Arrian, being a translation of the fragments of the *Indika* of Megasthenes collected by Dr Schwanbeck by J W McCRINDLE (1882), Revised by Ramchandra Jain  
Reprint 1973, Rs 50 00 \$10 00
- 2 ANCIENT INDIA As described by Ktesias the Knidian, being a translation of the abridgement of his '*Indika*' by Photios, and of the fragments of that work preserved by other writers, by J W McCrindle Calcutta, Bombay, London, 1882  
Reprint 1974 Rs 50 00 \$10 00
- 3 ANCIENT INDIA As described in classical literature, being a collection of Greek and Latin texts relating to India extracted from Herodotus, Starabo, Diodorus Siculus, Pliny, Aelian, Philostratus, Dion Chrysostom, Porphyry, Stobaeus, the itinerary of Alexander the Great, the *Periegesis* of Dionysius, the *Dionysiaka* of Nonnus, the Romance history of Alexander and other works Translated and copiously annotated by J W McCrindle, 1901  
Reprint 1974, Rs 50 00 \$10 00
- 4 THE COMMERCE AND NAVIGATION OF THE ERYTHREAN SEA being a translation of the *Periplus Maris Erythrean*, by an anonymous writer, and of Arrian's account of the voyage of Nearkhos from the mouth of Indus to the head of the Persian Gulf With introduction, commentary notes and index by J W McCrindle, 1879  
Reprint 1974, Rs 50 00 \$10 00
- 5 THE INVASION OF INDIA  
By Alexander the Great as described by Arrian Q Curtius, Diodorus, Plutarch and Justin Transtated by J W McCrindle, 1896  
Reprint 1973, Rs 50 00 \$10.00

# ANCIENT INDIA

AS DESCRIBED BY

PTOLEMY

BEING

A TRANSLATION OF THE CHAPTERS WHICH DESCRIBE INDIA  
AND CENTRAL AND EASTERN ASIA IN THE TREATISE ON  
GEOGRAPHY WRITTEN BY KLAUDIOS PTOLEMAIOS,  
THE CELEBRATED ASTRONOMER,

WITH

INTRODUCTION, COMMENTARY AND INDEX

BY

J W McCRINDLE, M A., M R A S

EDITED BY

RAMCHANDRA JAIN

WITH

CONCULTURUUM, REFERENCE & APPENDICES



TODAY & TOMORROW'S PRINTERS & PUBLISHERS  
24-B/5, ORIGINAL ROAD, KAROL BAGH  
NEW DELHI-110005

*First Reprinted 1885*

LONDON, TRUBNER & CO

From the INDIAN ANTIQUARY, 1884

© Revised Edition by the Publishers

*Printed in India at*

TODAY & TOMORROW'S PRINTERS & PUBLISHERS

11/7, Milestone, Mathura Road

Faridabad, Haryana (India)

## PREFACE TO THE NEW EDITION

The great curiosity, which their edition of the *Ancient India as described by Megasthenes and Arrian* aroused in the minds of Scholars and their comments the book, particularly the editor's *Conculturuum*, with all its originality and imagination, provides an interesting reading and occasion of thought and the suggestion that the other works on Indian history under preparation would soon be published and enrich our knowledge with their novelties and originalities has propelled us to bring out this title of the series: McCRINDLE'S PTOLEMY

Though the geographical information communicated by Ptolemy stands disproved, longitudes and latitudes are no more correct, locations of regions are hotly disputed, inspite of all these shortcomings, this treatise is of great cultural importance, because geography is the determining factor of history It does not only determine the boundaries and loca-

that age Geography and history are inalienable companions History is blind without geography and geography is deaf without history

The geography of Ptolemy similarly helps us in rightly understanding the way of living of the people of Bharata in the second century A D The present edition is the dialectical development of the past, having in its womb the seeds of the dialectical development of the future The right understanding of the past, hence, is essential for the right understanding of the present so that the future may rightly be planned

R K. JAIN

# C O N T E N T S

CONCULTURUUM—(1) A Treatise on Geography, (2) Historical Background, (3) Ptolemy's Cultural Importance, (4) Frontiers of Bharata, (5) Spread of the Brahmaryanism, (6) Damihsisation of Deccan, (7) The Austrik Bharatiyan, (8) Taprobane, (9) Some Events Explained, (10) Historical Geography	IX—XLIV
Original Title Page	XLV
McCrendle's Preface	XLVII
McCrendle's Introduction	1
<b>Ptolemy's Geography</b>	<b>33 to 330</b>
Description of India within the Ganges	33
,, of its sea-coast	33
,, of its mountain ranges	75
,, of its rivers	81
,, of the different territories and peoples of India classified according to river-basins	104
,, of islands	187
,, of India beyond the Ganges (including Indo-China)	189
,, of the Sinai (Southern China)	244
,, of the Island of Taprobane (Ceylon)	247
,, of Hyrkania	260
,, of Margiane	262
,, of Baktriane	267
,, of Sogdianoi	274
,, of the Sakai	283
,, of Skythia within Imaos	285
,, of Skythia beyond Imaos	292
,, of Serike (Northern China)	297
,, of Areia	305
,, of the Paropanisadai	310

Description of Drangiana	313
,, of Arakhosia	315
,, of Gedrosia	319
<b>Appendix of Additional Notes</b>	<b>331</b>
1. On the Latitude of Byzantium and that of Tash-Kurghan (p 14)	331
2 On Kouroula (pp 22, 63-4)	331
3 On the Argaric Gulf and Argeirou (pp 22, 59 and 60)	331
4. On Thelkheir (pp 63 and 64)	332
5 On Orthoura (pp 64 and 184)	332
6 On Arkatos (p 64)	332
7 On the River Adamas (p 71)	333
8 On Mount Sardonyx (p 77)	334
9 On Talara (p 90)	334
10 On Pounnata (p 180)	334
11 On Arembour (pp 180, 182)	334
12 On Abour (p 184)	334
13 On Argyre (p 196)	334
14 On the Golden Khersonese (p 197)	335
15 On the Loadstone rocks (p 242)	335
16 On the sandy deserts of Baktria (p 270)	335
17 On the River Ochos (p 273)	335
18 On the Avestic names of rivers, &c, in Afghanistan	336
19 On the Griffins or Gryphons (p 295)	338
<b>Editor's Notes</b>	<b>341</b>
<b>Index</b>	<b>399</b>
<b>Appendices (1 to 11)</b>	<b>433 to 464</b>

# CONCULTURUUM

## 1 A Treatise on Geography

Klaudios Ptolemaios, popularly known as Ptolemy, was a celebrated astronomer, mathematician and geographer. He was an Egyptian and flourished in the middle of the second century A.D. He was preceded by several geographers, but he has been acknowledged the first scientific geographer in spite of several gross blunders brought to light by the later geographical researches.

All learning is integrated. No learning is isolated. Astronomy and Mathematics have a strong bearing on geography. History largely determines connotations of geographical concepts. Sociology determines the character of the peoples associated with particular geographical regions. Geography as a part of the science of man, throws much light on the culture and civilization of man. Ptolemy's geography throws much light on all these humanistic aspects.

The study so far, of geography, or for that matter any branch of human knowledge, has been carried on with a parochial view. Like any other science, it was studied for its own sake and from its own point of view. The various scholars have studied and interpreted Ptolemy's geography from this viewpoint and, hence, they stopped at determining the modern places and peoples mentioned by him. And this had been and really is an endless exercise. But even if the fullest identity is established what is the purpose of this achievement? We know the modern entities and we prove at the best, that these entities existed in a period of time so far removed from today. This is a mere historical study which serves little purpose.

Megasthenes and Arrian That cultural study presents a picture of the age of Chandragupta Maurya in the fourth century B C Ptolemy came after 450 years from Megasthenes Eratosthenes (about 240 B C), Strabo (60 B C—19 A D), Pliny (23–79 A D), and Mariner (20 A D) came after Megasthenes These predecessors of Ptolemy added much to the information communicated by Megasthenes Diodorus (100 B C—100 A D) mixed history with fiction, Curtius (100 A D) is not a very reliable informant Arrian (200 A D), the best of Alexander's historians, flourished after Ptolemy and Justinus (not later than 500 A D) much after him The knowledge that Ptolemy received and scientifically developed had become much modified through 450 years that intervened between Megasthenes and Ptolemy His treatise on geography, hence, has assumed great importance which it retained for the following 1300 years when the horizons of the geographical knowledge of the world began to expand that, by and by, corrected several earlier geographical theories and informations

### **Historical Background**

We will find in Ptolemy's geography several concepts used by Megasthenes These concepts have different connotations with the two writers This difference has not come haphazardly It is the result of the dialectical development of the society, thought and patterns We may rightly understand them only by chronologically tracing their dialectical development We have to understand them through the historical background of Ptolemy

According to Strabo, the son and successor of Sandrokottos (Chandragupta) was Allitrochades when Athenaeus calls Amitrochates (Amitraghata, the slayer of foes) The Jaina chroniclers know him as Simhasene Bindusara is his Aryan, Brahmanic Puranic name He weakened the sixteen mahajanapadas He maintained intact the best empire inherited from his father and also the friendly relations with the Greek rulers of the west He flourished 300—273 B C He was succeeded by his son Ashoka, the Great, the greatest of kings, who ruled from 273–236 B C He conquered Kalinga in 264 B C He, like his predecessors, was a Jaina monarch but after the Kalinga conquest, he

became converted to Buddhism His sons became reconverted to Jainism. His great grandson Samprati achieved the spiritual heights of Ashoka, if not his materialist one Shramanism became divided in two opposing camps, Jainism and Buddhism but none of them could be surpassed and overwhelmed by Brahmanism but the latter began to make its powerful headway The last Mauryan emperor Brihadratha was treacherously assassinated by his own Brahmana Commander-in-Chief Pushyamitra C 187 B C He usurped the Magadha throne for the Brahmana, Shunga dynasty that ruled from 187 to 75 B C Pushyamitra laid the foundation of the first Brahmaryan (here Brahmana) monarchy in Bharata The Bharatiya republicanism began receding and the Brahmanic tribal feudalism began increasing The Shungas were followed by the Kanvas who ruled Magadha from 75 B C to 30 B C.

The Parthians (the Pahalavas) of Iran probably extended their suzerainty to certain parts of the Punjab and the Sindh in the second-first centuries B C They had conflicts with the Shakas in Iran but some of the Shakas founded their principalities in western India by the last quarter of the first century B C By the fourth quarter of the first century A D , they were driven out by the Kushanas Kanishka was the best Kushan ruler who probably ruled from 78 A D to 101 or 102 A D The Kushan power met its end by the end of the second century A D

This age witnesses great social and cultural transformations The two mutually exclusive and antagonistic societies, the Shramanas and the Brahmanas, the Shramanas divided into two main currents the Jainas and the Buddhists, had begun to harden under the impacts of the hardening Brahmanic social pattern The Jaina Agamas and the Buddhist Tripitakas had been collated and redacted The Jainas became disrupted into the Digambaras and the Shvetambaras and the Buddhists into the Hinayanas and the Mahayanas

The Brahmanic society was minutely hardening into castes The creation of Smritis started this obscurantist process The Gitopanishad, the bible of the God-monarchy, came into being The Ramayana and the Bharata and the Mahabharata are the creations of this age The concept Pandava, the dominating Maha-

Bharata tribe was first coined by Patanjali' But, curiously enough, Patanjaly did not know the greatest Pandava Yuddhisthira The Bhrigu recension of the Mahabharata created in the early centuries of post Christian era, notices the five andava brothers They were totally unknown to the original nucleus the Jaya or its developed form, the Bharata The concept Pandava is a corrupt form of the concept Panchdevas, Varuna (Dharma, Yuddhisthira) India (Arjun), Vayu (Bhima) Ashwins (Nakula and Sahadeva), and these Panchadevas are assumed to have descended from Nature or from the Rgveda<sup>2</sup>

The Brahmaryans had not visited the Deccan during the times of Megasthenes But they had penetrated to the far south by the times of Ptolemy The Brahmanas could not do without borrowing the pre-Brahmaryan shramanic heroes Rama and Krishna They recast them in their own setting The shramanised Rudraism, the Shaivism, was also developed by them These were the creations of long centuries marked by Shramano-Brahmanic coalescences but they took their final concrete forms in this age<sup>3</sup> Though the Shramanic society materially suffered heavily at the hands of the foreign Bramaryans it celebrated its ultimate cultural triumph over the Brahmaryans, through the long centuries of penetrations and interpretations, by the end of the second century A D

The oriental scholars, so far, have, at the best, been only historical and critical scholars William Jones, the father of Orientology and Indology, Max Mueller, Bhandarkar and McCrindle possessed only historical perspective and followed only the critical method They had no dialectical and chronological perspective and their critical method was only parochial, not organic They, hence, missed the right truths of the histories of society, languages, myths and events, We have, here followed the historical, chronological and dialectical perspective and the organic critical method in finding the right nature of the cultural lights drawn from Ptolemy's geography This is for the first time that Megasthenes and Ptolemy have been subjected to cultural scrutiny to augment the knowledge of the human society through their esteemed works This perspective and method is employed more with Ptolemy as he appears in the

sequential chain of the Greek writers Megasthenes was the first and whatever he was communicated by the Brahmanas had no earlier precedence with earlier Greek writers like Hecatocetus (500 B C), Herodotus (484-431 B C) and Ktesias (398 B C) We have none of the Megasthenes concepts to compare with any earlier Greek writer on India That was all heresay Moreover none had the like information This cultural study of Ptolemy from this perspective and method unravels several mysteries of the history, cultural and civilization of that age

### 3 Ptolemy's Cultural Importance

Ptolemy today stands annihilated, long live Ptolemy The geographical information communicated by him, today, in essentials, stands disproved His longitudes and latitudes are no more correct His locations of regions and places are no more relevant and hotly disputed too The scant information provided by him about Sinai and Taprobane is astonishing It is partly unreliable too He has given us no information about Skythia, the Uttarakuru region and the west Asia The information was communicated to him, as to Megasthenes, by the Arya Brahmanas who themselves were most deficient The length and width given, sometimes two thousand times, is amusing In spite of all these shortcomings, Ptolemy's treatise is of great cultural importance

Ptolemy wrote after twenty one centuries of the Brahmaryan military conquest of Bharata The information about the Aryan cradleland and the spread of Aryanism within this long period of time is historically very important and that is available to us through Ptolemy The information about pre-Aryan and post-Aryan places and peoples in that age determines the directions of the way people of Bharata followed The influence of Bharata upto Ural mountain's in the north and upto Indian Archipelago in the east is highly revealing The ways of living of the two main currents of the country, the Shramanas and the Brahmanas, presents us the continuing picture of the organism of society in that age The extent ~~of~~ <sup>of</sup> Charatiya culture in so wide extent regions is spini

enthralling. The variously differing cultures and civilizations of the people in various regions, widely differing, is very instructive. The study of Ptolemy, hence, from the cultural perspective is highly rewarding.

#### 4 Frontiers of Bharata

Ptolemy gives a very vivid description of Indian frontiers. His knowledge of the Indian frontiers is much more accurate, detailed and scientific than that of Megasthenes. He divides India in two parts, India within the Ganges and India beyond the Ganges as he does of Skythia, Skythia within Imaos and Skythia beyond Imaos.

India within the river Ganges is bounded on the west by the Paropanisadae and Arakhosia and Gedrosia along their eastern sides, on the north by the mount Imaos along the Sogdia and the Skai lying above it, on the east by the river Ganges, and on the south and again on the west by a portion of the Indian ocean. India beyond the Ganges is bounded on the west by the river Ganges, on the north by the parts of Skythia and Serike, on the east by Sinai along the meridian, which extends from the furthest limits of Serike to the Great Gulf, and also by this Gulf itself on the south by the Indian ocean and part of the Green Sea which stretches from the island of Menouthias in a line parallel to the equator, as far as the regions which lie opposite to the Great Gulf. India beyond the Ganges comprised with Ptolemy, not only the great plain between that river and the Himalayas, but also all south-eastern Asia, as far as the country of the Sinai (China).<sup>4</sup>

The far-western and the far-northern frontiers of Bharata, according to Ptolemy, included many more regions than that of Megasthenes. Afghanistan, Baluchistan, regions lying south of the mountain range called Paropanisos, now known as the central Hindu Kush, Arii, Baktria and Sogdiana north of the Pamir or the Meru range. Mount Imaos of Ptolemy is, thus, further east to the Bolor range and further north to the Pamir range bordering the Skythia country which stretched to both sides of the mount, the northern and the southern. The concept Imaos was variously applied by the Greeks to the Hindu Kush or to the chain of the

Himalayas running parallel to the equator, but which was gradually transferred to the Bolar range which runs from north to south and intersects them Imaos of Ptolemy is to the east of the Aral sea where runs the river Jaxertes and is situate the country of Skythia The later geographers have disputed this situation of the Imaos but the mentioning of the country of Sogdiana within the frontiers of Bharata leaves no doubt that only Skythia was excluded from the Bharatiya frontiers and was its adjacent neighbour of the north Megasthenes is uncertain about the situations of Mt Imaos Sometimes he mentions it as a part of eastern Himalayas and sometimes equates it with the Paropanisos He excludes even Baktria from the Bharatiya frontiers This description of the frontiers of Bharata definitely points, in spite of the two foreign Aryan military invasions, to the cultural affinity of these regions in the age of Ptolemy It also points to the fact that the two Aryan military invasions did not supplant the original culture and civilization with their own but their own culture and civilization became subjugated to the indigenous original culture The frontiers of Bharata, in spite of these incursions, far and wide contained within themselves the basic elements of the Bharatiya spiritual culture The actual frontiers under the Pataliputra regime, of course, extended only upto Afghanistan, Baluchistan and the Arii regions as was the case in the age of Chandragupta After Pushyamitra, this rule also became disintegrated but the Bharatiya culture remained supreme in these regions in spite of the Shakas, the Pahalavas and the Kushanas The supreme culture that dominated these regions was mainly the Shramanic culture represented by its two currents, the Jainism and the Buddhism The Brahmanism, as yet, was only trying to take roots in the Punjab, the Rajasthan and the Prachya regions The Prasiak region of Ptolemy may reasonably be identified with the Prasii region of Megasthenes, in spite of certain divergent views amongst the scholars Palimbothra was still the capital of Prasiak<sup>5</sup>, the most important city of the country of Bharata

## 5 Spread of the Brahmaryanism

Uttarakuru or Hyperborea was the cradle-land of the undivided

Aryans; the Brahmaryans and the Greek Aryans being the two branches of the undivided Aryans This unknown region, to the Greeks as well as to the Brahmanas, was not a mythical region but a real one It lay to the north of Ptolemy's Skythia within and beyond the Imaus and Serike The region has been located to the north of the central Steppes and to the south of the Ural mountains, extending to the east upto the ocean<sup>6</sup>

Ptolemy corroborates this most important event of history through the locations of various Aryan places He knows Uttaraku as a mountain range, probably the Ural mountains, as region and as a people Though Ptolemy places it in the northern Serike country but none had seen and known it It had been described as an unknown region by the Brahmana and the Greek writers, Ptolemy has only conjecturally placed it within Serike to give it a reality only He is truthful in giving Uttaraku as a reality He annihilates all mythology about Uttaraku or Hyperborea

Ptolemy gives no Aryan name to any mountain, river, ocean, bay, island or cape He gives certain Aryan names to places and peoples He mentions Ariaka, a city in Margiane Arcia is a small province of Ariana comprehending the whole of ancient Persia Ariaspe is a town in Drangiana These three Aryan places still existed in the far northern Bharata of Ptolemy. The Ariaka, city of Margiane lay adyacent to the Skythian people inhabited by the barbaric, nomadic, pastoral and migrating peoples He knew only one Ariaka people in Skythia

We again find very few Aryan places and people in India - within the Ganges Ariaka, the land of the Aryans, has been identified with Maharashtra region bordering northern and southern Bharata To its south lay Limyrike or Damirike, the Tamil-land Brakme was a Brahma town on the Tamraparni river Brakmanai Magoi were the Kanarese Brahmins in the Maharashtra region Ptolemy does not mention any Brahmanic place or people beyond Maharashtra to the south No Brahmanic place or people have been mentioned by him in the countries beyond the Ganges This is not accidental We find a host of names of places and peoples signifying the pre-Aryan

Bharatiyans and also some of the Dravidians but not of the Brahmaryans Why ?

The pre-Aryan world was really a human family Their whole outlook—political, economic and social—was cosmopolitan They had no use for geography The Aryan political supremacy over the various regions of the world introduced quite a novel and so far unknown phenomenon of territoriality They founded the nation states based on territoriality The territorial nation states were first introduced in Bharata and Greece This new phenomenon gave birth to the science of geography Our knowledge of the geography of Bharata commences with the establishment of the political supremacy of the Brahmaryans after their military conquest They soon began to colonise their lands of conquest The first territorial state they founded in Bharata was their colony of Brahmavarta, the region between the Saraswati and the Drisbadvati rivers, the region covered or colonised by the Brahmaryans They, after consolidation of their political power through coalescences and assimilations began to expand in the rest of Bharata They partly Brahmaryanised Magadha shortly about sixth century B C and south Bihar and Bengal only about the middle of the third century A D Bihar continued to be under the rule of the Asura kings upto the seventh century A D<sup>7</sup> These Brahmaryans of the north were not familiar with the southern countries and tribes in the time of Panini They acquainted themselves with the southern India only in the time of Patanjali C 150 B C<sup>8</sup> The Brahmaryans in this age had only a shortlived political rule in Magadha, as seen earlier under the Shungas and the Kanvas The Deccan, including Maharashtra, Andhrapradesh and the regions upto the Krishna river, was ruled by the early Satavahans who were the non-Aryan Andhrabhratyas, the servants of the Andhras, a pre-Aryan non-Aryan people<sup>9</sup> The Satavahana Gautamiputra Satakarni ruled over the whole of the trans-Vindhyan Deccan C 106-130 A D The Satavahana rule continued till the first quarter of the third century A D<sup>10</sup> Ptolemy corroborates the literary evidence of Pratisthana or Paithan, the capital of the Satavahanas His Baithan has been identified with Paithan<sup>11</sup> This evidence clearly and conclusively proves that the Deccan had not been Brahmanised, even partly,

till, at least, the end of the Satavahana rule. The concept Ariake for Maharashtra did not signify any Aryan rule over Maharashtra. It signified only a literary description of the region communicated to the Greek historians and geographers by the Brahmanas, their supreme authority in these matters. The Brahmana settlements, hence, in the Tamil country only indicate a few insignificant townships inhabited largely by the Brahmanas. Ptolemy's geography helps us to understand that the trans-Vindhyan Deccan was still not Brahmanised though they had begun their cultural penetration in the south just after the Shunga rule in Magadha country. To the eastern Bharata, they had not yet advanced beyond the Magadha country.

## 6 Damiilisation of Deccan

The Roman geographers divided India in three divisions, one being Dimirike. Dimirike of the Romans is the Limyrike of Ptolemy. Limyrike has been identified with the Tamil country. Though the Tamil country is only a part of the Deccan peninsula, though the largest one, but the epithet is culturally applied to the whole of the trans-Vindhyan Deccan. In contrast to the Tamil or Damil country, the Limyrike, Ariake is the Aryan country. These two cultural concepts suggest great historical events and phases.

Before the Damilians immigrated to Bharata, it was populated by the Australoid race. They were the non-Aryan pre-Aryan Mediterranean people of Greece, who, like the non-cooperating fifty sons of Vishvamitra, the Bharatiya Commander-in-Chief against the Brahmaryan military invaders in the Dashrajan war and the patriarch of the Andhras, the Pundras, the Shabarans, the Pulindas and the Mutibas, did not cooperate with their Aryan military conquerors and navigated, as good navigators they were, to the east to the Deccan Bharata in the first quarter of the first millennium B.C. and imposed themselves on the original Austric people of the region. Parashuram was their Commander-in-Chief in this second foreign military conquest of the Deccan Bharata.<sup>12</sup> Alexander's was the third foreign military conquest of Bharata, not the second, as assumed by the Greek writers. We possess no accounts of any rule in the Deccan before the Satavahana rule and

as seen earlier, they were the non-Aryan Austrik people. We do not witness any Damiian rule in the Decean till the age of Ptolemy. They had successfully imposed their culture on the Decean and the Brahmaryans were now beginning to impose. Then who were the predominating people of Bharata in the age of Ptolemy?

## 7. The Austrik Bharatiyan

A large number of the peoples mentioned by Ptolemy are non-Aryan and non-Dravidian. The peoples mentioned by Ptolemy have been given in Appendix 4, the peoples of India within the Ganges. The Aioi, the Passala, the Prasiake, the Poulindai, the Tabasoi, the Phyllitai, the Bettigoi, the Kandaloi, the Ambastai, the Bolingai, the Parouaroi, the Adeisathroi, the Mandalo, the Badiamoi, the Drilophyllitai, the Kokkanagai, the Salakenoi, the Sabarai, the Gangridai, the Bassoronage and the Arouarnoi peoples are the Australoid or the Austrik peoples<sup>73</sup>. The Arouarnoi people have not been satisfactorily identified. They lived between the Godavari and the Krishna rivers. These rivers watered the Andhra region. Ptolemy appears to indicate the Andhra people by his concept Arouarnoi.

The pre-Aryan and the pre-Dravidian Austric people had republican institutions and it is for this reason that we do not find there any monarchy before the Satavahanas. May be, as in the north, the monarch enjoyed a centralised authority with republican institutions at the lower levels as was the case in the age of Chandragupta Maurya. The Dravidians (the Damilians) had not been successful to rule over the northern India. The pre-Aryan Austric people were all powerful before the Brahmana Shunga rule. In the beginning of the Christian era, other powers as seen earlier, were trying to gain their footholds and the Austric power was on the beginning of retreat but all the same, they were still dominating. We, thus find that the Austric people of Bharata dominated the whole scene and the Damilians and the Brahmaryans were trying to consolidate and gain political power.

We also find that the Bharatiyans of this age exercised immense cultural and political influence in the far east designa-

ted by Ptolemy as India beyond the Ganges and the islands of the Indian ocean. The culture and civilization of Bharata emigrated to these far regions and we had living contacts with them.

## 8 Taprobane

The problem of Taprobane, so far, has defied all solutions. Taprobane has been so far identified with the Lanka or Ceylon. Ptolemy has deluded all these identifiers by giving a very minute and wide description of the island. Though he has given false dimensions of the island, as large as twenty times the present area, he has left no doubt that what he is describing is no other island than the present Ceylon. But Taprobane is not Ceylon.<sup>13</sup>

Megasthenes informs us that Taprobane was an island, separated from the mainland by a river, is inhabited by Palaigonoi people and is an island.<sup>14</sup> We need not be deluded by the Puranic dimensions of the land as these Himalayan exaggerations were a common feature with the Puranic informants of Megasthenes. The concept Palaigonoi has rightly been interpreted as Parajanas, the people believing in the Beyond, Beyond the matter, the Spirit. These spiritual wise men inhabited this island situate within the Sindhu Delta down Patala, a city so important with the Greeks. The concept Taprobane has very wrongly been interpreted as Tambapanni river of the Pali and Tamraparni river of the Sanskrit. Taprobane is not a river but definitely is an island. Megasthenes does not indicate Ceylon by the concept because he definitely locates it in the Sindh regions.

The concept Taprobane is the Greek form of the concept Tapovana. The abode of the spiritual people may rightly be called a Tapovana. The concept Tapovana comes very near to the concept Taprobane. As it was located in Sindh, it was rightly called the Sindhal Tapovana, to differentiate it from other Tapovanas of the country. This and the adjoining regions of Gujarat were famous for their lions and tigers, hence it could also be called Sinhal Tapovana. May be, Sindhal, in course of time, might have been transformed into Simhala Taprobane, hence, signifies Simhala Tapovana, an island, situate on the mouth of the Indus, within two streams of this grand river.

The people residing in the west of the island were the Rhamnai people of Gedrosia (modern Baluchistan)<sup>15</sup> It was a widely diffused and powerful race with enterprising spirits They migrated to the Vindhya in large numbers They were the speakers of the Brahui language belonging to the Dravidian group of languages<sup>16</sup> They, in the Vindhya, coalesced with other groups and formed a powerful and enterprising group of people These people might have taken with them their Simhal Tapovana culture The Tabsoi or the Tapasa people were their kinsmen The name of the river Tapti must have had some relationship with the concept Tapovana in its origin These Rhamnai people must have had intimate relationship with the high spiritual culture of Simhal Tapovana They might have, to commemorate their culture, given the name Tapti after Tabsai to the river of their new region and Simhala to some island founded by them in this region

We learn from the epic and the Puranic literature that the name of the region in this age was Janasthana The Janasthana region may be located within the territory of the Tapti and the Godavari rivers This Janasthana might have been a republican country, still keeping intact the lingering traditions of the pre-Aryan Jana republics of the western Bharata and Ganarajyas of the Prachya Bharata<sup>17</sup> The people of Janasthan were sea-going people and they had their island region Simhal with capital Lanka<sup>18</sup> Their republican leaders with centralised state power having republican institutions at the lower levels were called Iraivan or Iraivan, meaning king or supreme authority, in the Tamil language The Janasthana people spoke the Tamil language and their political masters were called Iraivans which became Sanskritised as Ravana<sup>19</sup> The military engagements between the Satavahana Iraivan Simuka with the Shungas and the Kanvas and that of Kharavela with the later Iraivans became later transferred as the Rama—Ravana katha<sup>20</sup> The Rhamnai, the Tabsoi and the other people of Janasthan are the Ravana people Iraivan being their supreme leader

began to be called Lanka after the name of its capital This Simhaladvipa of the epic and the Puranas possessed the famous Tapovana This refers to our Simhal Tapovana which came to be known as Simhal island alone Tapovana having been transferred by the legendarians to the relegated but the famous position of a known Tapovana where Sita is supposed to have been imprisoned The big rivers of India had islands within them The region between the two streams of a big river could also be called an island as it became bounded on all sides by the riverine waters It appears very probable that this Simhal island was the region between some two ancient streams of the Godavari river, also having a riverine port, from which these sea-faring people could navigate through the river to the oceans and to the further lands through the oceans

Ptolemy mentions two mountains, Galiba and Malaia in the Taprobane island Out of the four rivers of Taprobane mentioned by him, we are familiar with his Ganges and Soana, the former rising from the Galiba and the latter from the Malaia The Soana or the Son river of Bihar joins the Ganges at Pataliputra The river Son rises from the eastern Vindhya while the river Tapti from the western Vindhya but the both have a common source in the Vindhya, the dividing mountain of the north from the south The Tapti flows in Janasthana and the Son in the Prachyadesha Ptolemy, like his Brahmanic informants, as a Puranic writer, transferred these rivers to a mythically wide island of his imagination

We, thus, find, and the aforesaid evidences compel us to find, that the Simhala Tapovana was an island bounded by the Godavari waters, mainly populated by the Rhamnai or other Ravana peoples It was originally an Indus island whose inhabitants colonised, as the Bharatiya people had done in the far east, the far west and the far north, a region in the Godavari valley and gave it the name of their former island The mythic imagination of the legendarians imposed this name to the Island south of the Cape Kumari only to satisfy their racial and cultural arrogance The geographical names Simoundou and Salike given to the island and the ethnic name Salai to the people of the island flow from this mythical and imaginary fiction of the litterateurs,

The identification of Taprobane with Tamraparni, river or island, is historically and culturally unfounded. Taprobane is Simhal Tapovana island within the Sindhu in the first place. After 450 years from Megasthenes, we witness a second Simhal Tapovana island within the Godavari. The non-Aryan Dravidian Ravana people inhabited it. This great island was the jewel of the Janasthana region.

The legend of Vijaya, son of Simhavahu or Simhala, and prince of Tamralipti, on banishment by his father for evil conduct, emigrating to Ceylon, colonising it and giving it his father's name is a crude legend. There is no historical basis for this legend. It is pure and simple mythical fiction. Even if it be relied upon, the necessary consequence that Ceylon was aryanised or buddhaised by him is untenable. The Brahmaryans had not yet reached the Vangadesha. Buddhism spread in this part and in Sindh in the west after Ashoka. If any Vijaya existed, he was a non-Aryan non-Buddhist hero. He might have founded Simhaladvipa in some Godavari region of Janasthana. The Indus and the Bengal Simhalians meet together in the Janasthana island. May be, the Indus Simhala hero became transferred as the Tamralipti hero Vijaya which was a very common and ordinary phenomenon with the legendarians.

These evidences clearly find that the pre-Aryan Austric people founded the island known to the Greeks as Taprobane and to the Bharatiyans as Simhaladvipa. Its culture and civilization originally was of the pre-Aryan and the pre-Buddhistic Austric, may be its component Ahi, culture and civilization.

## 9. Some Events Explained

The geographical concepts used by Ptolemy are the Greek forms of the current Bharatiya concepts. Though Ptolemy was interested only in giving their geographical connotations, some of them signify deeper cultural meanings. We, here, deal with some of the most important cultural concepts.

grammarian Panini gives a deeper meaning of the concept. He mentions Kumari-shramana<sup>22</sup> Patanjali, commenting on Sutra 2 4 9 of Panini, states that the Shramanas and the Brahmanas were the two antagonistic religious groups whose opposition was of a permanent nature<sup>23</sup> The Shramanas were non-Brahmanical ascetics<sup>24</sup> Kumari Shramana, hence, was a non-Brahmanical female ascetic Buddhism had not yet travelled to Cape Kumari in the age of Panini who flourished in the age of Chandragupta Maurya We may hence safely conclude that Kumari Shramana, signifies a Jaina female ascetic The Brahmanas had not yet known the Deccan in the age of Panini They also had no female ascetics as asceticism was forbidden for the females in the Brahmanical fold The name of such an important Cape could not be given lightly through an insignificant concept Asceticism was highly honoured in that age The name of Cape Kumari appears to have been given to commemorate the significant penances of some Jaina female ascetic Shramanism was the way of life of the whole of India even before the advent of the Aryans and the Dravidians<sup>25</sup> and it was natural that Cape Kumari was so named after the name of the Jaina female ascetic

## II Brahmagara

The Arya Brahmanas had begun to penetrate the south in the first century A D The Brahmanas of the south India appear, in those days, to have consisted of a number of isolated communities that were settled in separate parts of the country, and that were independent each of the other This town, Brahmagara, was a small township<sup>26</sup> Brahmagara means the abode of the Brahmanas We may here recall their first colonised region, the Brahmavarta, the region covered or colonised by the Brahmanas Brahmagara, the abode (Agara) of the Brahmanas, in the same vein, appears to be the first small attempt at migration, by the Brahmanas to the south Megasthenes knows no such Brahmana settlement It, hence, appears to be a later event Ptolemy places this Brahmagara in the Malabar coast of the Madras State

Brakme or Brahmae was town of the Magi Brahmanas This was a colony of the Persian priests settled in Bharata who had adopted Brahmanism or of the Brahmanas who had adopted the Persian

Magi way This town was situate in the western ghat's region, the Canarese region<sup>27</sup>

### III. Semne

The Damil country had a town named Semne Sramana is the Sanskrit transliteration of the concept Semne

The region of Gymnosophistai did lay to the east of Kashmira

Asinda of Ptolemy has been identified with the Siddhapur town in the Saraswati region Shramanism was the pre-Aryan way of this region and the Siddhas signified the liberated souls

Saramanne of Ptolemy was the Shramana Nagar of Hyrkania situate north of Media in the immediate vicinity of the Kaspian sea It was the metropolis of the Shramanic region known to Ptolemy by the name of Serakene

### IV. Areia

Areia was a country bounded on the north by Margiana and a part of Baktriane, on the west by Parthia and the Karmanian desert, on the south by Drangiane and on the east by western parts of Paropanisos It was a small province, rather a district of wide extent in Ariana comprehending nearly the whole of Persia Obviously, it was an Aryan region

The Aryans were conspicuous in this far northern Bharata When Alexander conquered this region, he commemorated his military conquest by founding a city and naming it as Alexandreia of the Areians identified with or near Herat Alexander himself was an Aryan, rather the Greekaryan, and he conquered his own kith and kin in this region Tribalism, feudalism, capitalism, imperialism and Selfism know no affinities and brotherhood of race, religion, sex or region

Ariana, even during the age of Ptolemy, signified nearly the whole of modern Persia or Iran Iran itself is a corrupt form of the concept Aryan and even the present monarch, Razashah Pahalavi, is proud of calling himself an Aryan in 1971 at the 2500th celebrations of the foundation of the Iranian

monarchy The Iranians trace their original cradle-land to the Eranvej region where the undivided Iranaryans and Brahmarians lived together after separating from their earlier Aryan brother, the Europaryan, in their original cradle land, the Uttarakuру The Brahmo-Iranian home, known as Eranvej or Airyanem Vaejo has been located in the vast planes of the Oxus and the Iaxartes<sup>28</sup>, the Sogdiana of the Greek writers

Though the metropolis of Areia was Artikandana or Artakana near Alexandria of this region, Areia was the principal city of the Areia country River Areias watered this region, identified with the modern Hari Rudov river of Herat, rising at Oba in the Paropanisan mountains It also receives the river Etymander (now the Helmand and the Amshumati of the Rgveda), which gave its name to one of the Areian tribes The river had an important city on its banks, the city of Ariaspē, which was next in importance to the capital city of Drangiana, Prophthasia identified with Peshamarun, lying between Dushak and Phra<sup>29</sup> (Farrah, also the name of the present Iranian queen)

Ptolemy knows Ariakai, the Aryan race, which possessed a vast region between the Tapoura mountains and the slope towards the mouth of Iaxartes and the seacoast between the two rivers in the country of Skythia within Imaos<sup>30</sup> Ptolemy is ignorant of the geography of northern Asia otherwise he would have also found some more Aryan settlements, regions and countries

This geographical information provided by Ptolemy is of great and deep cultural significance The Aryans had created history in these regions and at a certain period of history, in the second millennium B C , predominated over the whole of the far northern and the far western provinces of Bharata These Aryan settlements were the cultural reminiscences of the glorious past of the nomadic, migrating, barbaric Aryan military hordes, available also in the time's of Ptolemy

We have elsewhere found, as stated earlier, that the pre-Aryan culture and civilization of Bharata was Shramanic<sup>31</sup> The pre-Aryan north-western regions of Bharata were populated by the Ahi or the Naga people who were purely non-Aryan<sup>32</sup> The pre-Aryan cultures of the north-west India and Iran were of the

same spirit and origin<sup>33</sup> The culture of Iran in that age extended upto Aryanem Vaejo We may safely conclude that the pre-Aryan Iranian culture extended upto the Skythian regions The existence of the Shramanic settlements upto Skythia, along with those of the Aryans, go to show that the Shramanic culture and civilization flourished in that region, the prosperity of which attracted the Aryan barbarians for loot, plunder and pillage and its ultimate annihilation The Shramanic culture and civilization did not extend to the north beyond Skythia

## V Adisvara

The Adisvara city has satisfactorily been identified with Ahichchhatra, the capital of north Panchala in the first millennium B C This big city derived its name from the protection given by an Ahi leader to the twentythird Jaina Tirthankara Parshvanatha<sup>34</sup> Panchala belonged to the non-Aryan Prachya people, the Ikshavaku Ahis<sup>35</sup> They were followers of the Shramanic and later the Jaina way

We find another city of a similar name Adeisathra There were two Ahichchhatras in ancient India, one in the north and the other in the bottom south Ptolemy also knows Adeisathroi people<sup>36</sup> It appears probable that the Ahichchhatras of the north went as far south as the river Kaveri region, founded the city and gave it the name of their original habitation as has been and is a general phenomenon with the Bharatiya people The Adeisathroi people had their habitation in the city, just north to the island later called Simhaladirpa As noted, it was a Shramanic settlement populated by the Shramanic people

## VI Aioi

The Aioi people have been identified with the Ahi people They occupied the southern parts of Kerala Cape Kumari was included in this region It appears probable that the Aioi country was an extensive region populated by the Ahi people Kottara was its capital in the age of Ptolemy The Ahi people, as earlier indicated, followed the Shramanic way Aioi country is the only region now in Bharata where the matriarchal system of

the Ahis still prevails It was widely prevalent in the per-Aryan Bharata<sup>37</sup> We may naturally presume that the Shramanic Ahî people of the far south first landed on the adjacent island, opposite to Cape Kumari and colonised it They gave it the Shramanic culture which was later strengthened by Ashoka

## VII Land of Pandion

The land of Pandion included the greater portion of the Tinneveli region, and extended as far north as to the highlands in the neighbourhood of the Koimbatur gap Its western boundary was formed by the southern range of the ghats, and it had a seaboard on the east which extended for some distance along what is called Palk's Passage Cape Kory and city of Modoura were included in it

Ptolemy states that Cape Komaria, also a town of this name, was included in the Aioi region and Cape Kory in the Pandion region, both identified as Cape Kumari He makes a difference between the two by mentioning it with its other name, Kalligikon The confusion has arisen because Cape Komaria and Cape Kory, the Kalligikon, have been taken as one and the same place while, in fact, they indicate two places Cape Kory, the Kalligikon, is Point Kalinir Cape Komaria bounded the Orgalic Gulf on the south while Cape Kory, the Kalligikon, on the north This explanation clears the confusion of including the same place within two regions, of the Aioi and the Pandionoi Cape Komaria was possessed by the Aioi and Cape Kori, the Kalligikon, by the Pandionoi

Ptolemy mentions two Modouras, one in the north and the other in the south The northern Modoura is mentioned as the city of the gods and has been identified with Mathura of the Surasena region The other is the capital of Pandion country This Pandion country definitely refers to the later Pandya country

The Pandya country of the historical times dates after the seventh century A D<sup>38</sup> and the identification of the Ptolemy's Pandion with it is clearly unwarranted The Ptolemy's Pandion is distinctly different,

Jaina Bhagavati Sutra includes a country by name Padha in its list of sixteen Mahajanapadas of the sixth century B C It is stated that Padha is Pandya Ashoka also knew a Pandya country<sup>39</sup> Megasthenes know three Pandya countries, one in the Indus region, the second in the south on heresay evidence and third in the Baktrian region<sup>40</sup> Krishnaswami is wrong in placing the Pandaia region in the extreme south<sup>41</sup> The desription of 365 villages paying revenue to the state treasury refers to the Indus Pandaia region and not the southern one The real Pandaia region of Megasthenes has been located by us in the Baktrian region<sup>12</sup>

It is intriguing to note that Ptolemy also mentions a Pandoouoi tribe whose region was situate around the Bidaspes river, the Vitasta of the Rgvedic fame and the Jhelum of the modern times Though McCrindle calls it Pandya country he differentiates it from the southern one and assigns it to the so called Pandavas of the lunar race who fought with the Kaurvas of the solar race which is the subject of the Mahabharata<sup>43</sup> He is grossly misinformed The Pandavas of the Mahabharata are said to be the real brothers of Kauravas and they both are said to have belonged to the Puru tribe Both belonged to the so-called lunar race The Ikshakus alone are given the solar lineage<sup>44</sup> According to the Puranas also, the Kaurva Pandavas and the Kaurava Kauravas fought the battle and then the Pandavas disappeared and the post-Mahabharata genealogy is given as the Kaurava genealogy The Brahmanical literature nowhere states that the Pandavas gave their name to any settlements or regions

The Pandoouoi people of Ptolemy, hence, appear to be the same people which Megasthenes relates with Pandaia, the assumed daughter of Krishna It appears probable that the Krishna republic, in the pre-Aryan age, extended its frontiers upto Baktriana till 2000 B C and before and when the Aryans followed their historical migrations to the south from their cradle-land, they annihilated it and reached the frontiers of Cappadocia and Iran C 2000 B C<sup>45</sup> The Krishna republic afterwards remained limited to the eastern Iran and western Arachosia region around the Amshumati or the Helmund river When the Brahmaryans launched their military invasion of Bharata, the Krishna republic

gave the first stiff resistance in the thirteenth century B C but fell to the superior Brahmaryan military might.<sup>46</sup> After their fall, they might have retreated to their simultaneous region around the Jhelam. The third battle with the Krishna was fought with their female army.<sup>47</sup> May be, that might have been drawn from this region. We know from Megasthenes that Pandava established the matriarchal rule. It appears that the Krishnas had two regions simultaneously under them, one in the Iran Afghanistan region and the other in the Jhelum region. After the final annihilation of the Bharatiya resistance in the Dashrajna war,<sup>48</sup> led by the Dasyu-chief military commander of Bharata, the famous Vishvamitra, Krishna moved to the Surasena region, thence to the Indus region and finally to the Southern Bharata beyond the Krishna, daughter of Krishna. All the Pandava regions of Megasthenes and Ptolemy are historically the Krishna regions. The Krishnas were the pre-Aryan non-Aryan people of Bharata, of the Australoid ethnic stock and following the shramanic way.

The undialectical and the unchronological oriental scholars, though following the historical and the critical method, have confused the various events relating to different periods of history. They, hence, have proved worse than the legendarians. The later southern Pandya rule is confused with the Pandya rule of Megasthenes and Ptolemy. The qualities of the Indus Pandya rule are transferred to the southern Pandya rule. For want of explanation the Jhelum Pandya rule is confused with the Pandava rule. The Pandavan rules over different Pandavan regions flourished in different periods of history through the dialectical development of historical forces. The dialectical, the chronological and the historical perspective solves the riddle. When we throw the lights of different sciences upon this problem, the Vedic, the Puranic, the historical, the archaeological and others, we get the real truth. This organic critical method further helps us in finding the reality of the different Pandavan rules over different regions in different periods of history, all separate from each other but culturally and historically forming a real continuum through long period of time.

But the reality of the Pandava problem has, so far, deluded us. It is very difficult to believe that Pandava was the daughter of

Megasthenes's Herakles identified with Krishna And Pandaia is very important with Megasthenes, Ptolemy and other Greek writers What is this Pandaia ?

No literary evidence corroborates the assumption that Krishna had a physical daughter The Krishna republic was a matriarchal one and women played historical role in the Brahmo-Bharatiyan wars but we nowhere find any daughter of Krishna Pandaia must have been a mythical name preserving some ancient historical reality

Panini knows Vasudeva<sup>49</sup> but not Krishna who was later identified with Vasudeva and does not know the Pandavas It is hence, quite evident that the Pandavas had not become associated with Krishna in the age of Panini who was a contemporary of Megasthenes Krishna had till these times been accepted as a Yadu hero The Krishna of the Surasena region is assigned Vrishni-Audhaka branch, of the Yadu peoples The Yadus, including the Vrishni-Audhaka branch, were the pre-Aryan non-Aryan people The Surasenakas were not brahmanised till the second century B C<sup>50</sup> The Yadus had an independent Jana-republic long before the Brahmaryan invasion in the middle of the Saraswati Valley region This was an Aikshvaka Ahi peoples' republic The Yadu republic was a part of the famous five republics, the Panchajanah of the Rgveda, the other four being those of the Purus, the Turvashas, the Anus and the Druhyus The Panchajatah were the republican masters of the Panchajanah Those Yadu took a prominent part in the Dashrajna war so beautifully described in the Rgveda Krishna was intimately associated with the Panchajatahs and the Panchajanah The corrupt form of these concepts may be Pandaia It is possible that when the Panchajatah and the Panchajanah historical realities became mytholessed they became sounded up in one mythical event of Panjavas or Punjabas or Pundabas which finally assumed the form of Pandaia of Megasthenes Punjab and Pandaia have very close linguistic' affinities, and I hold, on this evidence, that Pandaia represents the original Panchajanah and the Panchajatah The Pandaia myth, at some point of time, became attached to Krishna and got his fatherhood Pandaia is the later mytholised name of an ancient historical reality

One another historical mistake evidently stands corrected here. The concept Punjab is given the connotations of the land of five rivers, viz., Panja-Ab meaning five waters. Punjab was never the land of five rivers only. It was the land originally of Sapta Saraswati and then of Sapta-Sindhu but both had more tributaries and Megasthenes knows more than a dozen tributaries of the Sindhu. The concept Punjab signifies the existence of the five peoples and their five republics flourishing since long before the Brahmaryan times.

This Krishnaic Pandava was later transferred to the Brahmaryan invaders punning upon the Panchadevas, the Varuna (Pharma or Yudhisthira), Vayu (Bhima), Indra (Arjuna), and two Ashwins (Nakula and Sahadeva). The Panchadevas, through the linguistic corruptions, became the later Mahabharatic Pandavas. But the origins of the Pandava and the Pandavas are different and mutually antagonistic.

### VIII Abiria

Abiria was the country of the Abhiras or Ahirs that lay to the east of the Indus, above where it bifurcates to form the delta. They included several pastoral tribes which inhabited the lower districts of the north-west as far as Sindh. The concepts Abiria and Ophir signify one and the same thing. Saurashtra was the sea-board of the Abiria country. Supara was a famous Abirian port on the west coast. The Abhira people are located mainly between the lower Sindhu valley and Kathiawar, apparently in south-western Rajasthan and the adjoining regions.

The Abhiras appear to have been a foreign people who immigrated to Bharata probably along with the Shakas from some part of eastern Iran. Their first mention is found in the Gunda (north Kathiawar) inscription of 181 A.D. They were considered Shudras as they are mentioned in association with the Shudras by Mahabharata and Mahabhashya of Patanjali.<sup>51</sup> There were several Abhira settlements in different parts of western, central and southern India<sup>52</sup> but none in the northern part. They do not appear to have been associated with the Surasena country whose capital was Mathura. Their earliest mention is in Ptolemy and by

his time's, they are found in an extensive region from north-west to Sindh but not in the eastern region of Bharata

Ptolemy locates the country of Abiria in the lower Indus region, in the vicinity of which Megasthenes locates the Pandaia country Ptolemy also locates the Pandaia country in the Jhelum region The Pandaioi preceded the Abiriaoii in this region With the passage of time, they must have had mutual coalescences and assimilations in the Jhelum and the Indus regions Krishna was getting cultural importance with the Sramanised Brahmanas They adopted him, made an avatara of him, for their political theory of God-Monarchy, the bible of which is the Gitopanishad The foreign Abhiras were a nomadic, pastoral race whose original occupation was the tending of the cows By and by, the name Abhira became equivalent to a "Cowherd"<sup>53</sup> They adopted to themselves the Krishna cult which was now getting a foothold They abhiraised Krishna, made him cowherd Krishna or Gopal Krishna and wove several Abhira stories around him, We have earlier stated that Madura is a corrupt form of Mathura people travelled to the far south, founded the Pandya region and its capital Madura, we may fairly assume that the concept Pandaia also travelled with them along with the concept Mathura Though no literary evidence is available regarding the travel of the concept Pandaia to the south but the nomenclature of the concept Pandya can not be otherwise explained The nomenclature of the most important river of the Deccan, the Krishna river, the daughter of Krishna, indicates that the Krishna people founded the Pandaia region of the south with Madura as capital The river of the region got the name Krishna These people must have travelled to the south before the brahmanisation of Krishna as the then culture of the region indicates The Abhiras, with their Gopal Krishna cult, must have migrated to the Surasena region in the third-fourth century A D This Krishna cult, with more additions, became finally absorbed in the Brahmanic Puranic culture by the middle of the first millennium A D in the imperial Gupta age

The dialectical and chronological study of the Pandaia people of Megasthenes and Ptolemy and of the Abiria people of Ptolemy yield us rich cultural discoveries The pre-Aryan non-Aryan

Krishna became brahmanised in the early centuries of the Christian era. He was later abhvirised to be finally legendarised in the Puranas. A sad disappearance of a historical personage into the mythical realm.

## IX Maiandros Mountain

The Maiandros mountain is situate in India beyond the Ganges. From this range descend all the rivers beyond the Ganges as far as the Besynga or Bassein river, the western branch of the Irawadi in Burma. It has been identified with the Yuma chain which forms the eastern boundary of Arakan, of which the three principal rivers are the Mayn, the Kula-dan and the Le-myo. Maiandros is the graccised form of Mandara mountain.

Megasthenes knows one Mallus mountain in the Bihar region of the Mandei (Munda) and the Malli (Malla) people. The (Calingae) Kalinga or Orissa people were nearest the sea<sup>51</sup>. The Malla Mahajanapada flourished in the age of Mahavira and Buddha in the south Bihar regions<sup>52</sup>. The Mallus mountain, hence, may be identified with the Parshvanath hills of south Bihar, the Puranic name of which was Mandara<sup>53</sup>. The Mundas are the non-Aryan Adivasi people and Mallas the non Aryan Ikshvaku people following the Shramanic way.

The Mandara mountain lies to the north-west of the ancient Tamralipti, the modern Tamluk, which was a very renowned port in this age. Fa-hien, the great Chinese traveller, sailed for Ceylon in the beginning of the fifth century A D from Tamralipti. Fahien had remained in Bharata C 400-411 A D. It was within the boundary of the Malla ganarajya to the south of which was the Kalinga ganarajya. Both the peoples belonged to the same race and the same way.

These were the flourishing days of the eastern India. People travelled far and wide within the country and beyond through the land-routes and the sea-routes. The people of Malla-ganarajya through the port of Tamluk or directly through the land-route from eastern India to the far-east travelled to Burma and founded their settlements there. As earlier seen, they were in the habit of giving the old names of their regions, towns, rivers and mountains

of their new home lands The Malla people, who travelled to Burma, gave the name Maiandros to the mountain in their new region, presently called the Yuma mountains

## X Zabai

Champa was a very famous city, the capital of the ancient Anga country Anga was one of the sixteen Mahajanapadas or Ganarajyas Shatanika, the father of Udayana of the Vatsa Ganarajya, with capital Kaushambi, conquered Dadhivahana of Anga Ganarajya, with capital Champa The Anga Ganarajya might have later passed to the Magadha rule Brahmadatta of Anga defeated Bhattiya, father of Bimbisara (Shrenika of the Jaina fame), who was later killed by Bimbisara in battle His son Ajatashatru (Kunika of the Jaina fame) was the governor of Champa till he ascended the Magadha throne<sup>67</sup> It has also been stated that Udayana, son of Shatanika, conquered Kalinga, perhaps from the Magadha rule, and restored Anga to his father-in-law Dadhivahana<sup>68</sup>

The Anga country comprised the districts of Bhagalpur and Monghyr in Bihar and extended northwards upto the Koshi river At one time, it included Magadha and extended upto the sea Its Capital Champa was a very prosperous city situate on the junction of the same name, modern Chandana, with Ganges Its traders sailed from here to Suvarnabhumi for purposes of trade<sup>69</sup>

Maharaja Kharvela of the Chedi dynasty, a great Digvijayin, ruled over Kalinga in the second first century B C His military conquests extended upto the Punjab in the west, the Pandya region of the far south and the whole of Uttarapatha including Magadha and Anga<sup>70</sup>

We thus find that the Anga country was a highly flourishing state from sixth to the first century B C and it had extensive trade and cultural contacts in the far east

Ptolemy knows Champa as Zabai on the west coast of Kamboja Champa was a powerful state, in the ancient times, possessed of a territory far extensive<sup>71</sup> Kamboja was situated in north-eastern Cambodia, presently called Annam The two earliest rulers

of this region, known to us, are Shruta-varman and his son Shreshtha-varman. Champa was a coastal state near Kamboj.<sup>62</sup> The concept Shruta indicates Jaina canon and the Shreshthi, the Jaina merchant. The Brahmanas had not, by this time, brahmanised the Anga and the Kalinga territories, as seen earlier, and the Buddhists did not go to the far east in this age. They went to China in this age via west and north. The cultural expeditions to the Kamboja and the Champa countries in the far east were undertaken by the Jaina people. It is wrong to suggest that Champa was a Hindu kingdom in the second century A D.<sup>63</sup> Bharata did not know the "Hindu" in this age which was later used as a contemptuous term for the people of Bharata by the Muslim conquerors of Sindh in the seventh century A D.<sup>64</sup> The concept Hindu is being very loosely used by the oriental scholars. It appears reasonable to assume that the Jaina cultural missionaries, along with those of the Mallas and the others, travelled to the far east in the glorious days of the Mauryas and the Angas, founded Bharatiya settlements there and took with them the Bharatiya Shramanic culture which exercised large influence in the later times.

## XI. Perimoula and Perimoulic Gulf

Perimulic or Perimoulic gulf of Ptolemy has been identified with the Gulf of Siam. Perimoula was a port on the Perimoulic Gulf. Pliny mentions an Indian promontory called Perimula where there were productive pearl fisheries. The Indian Perimula of Pliny has been identified with Simylla of Ptolemy. Simylla was locally called Timoula. Ptolemy had met several of his informants hailing from Simylla. Simylla has been identified with the Chaul port near Bombay, perhaps in the Island of Salsette.<sup>65</sup>

It has been asked, how came it to pass that a place on the west coast of India should have the same name as another on the far distant Malaya coast? It may be supposed by way of explanation, that in very remote times, a stream of emigration from the eastern and western coasts of Bharata flowed to the far eastern countries and also to the foreign countries in the far west in the Red and the Mediterranean seas. Who were the people that emigrated from the Bharatiya port of Simylla to the Malayan port of Perimoula?

The Aryavarta of the Brahmanic literature did not extend beyond Narmada river in this age<sup>66</sup> The Satavahana Simuka had established his authority in this region by C 30 B C This region was previously known as the Assaka Mahajanapada Kharavela also moved his army to Assaka to strike terror The Assaka is the Ashmaka of the later Puranas The Godavari river flowed through the Assaka region<sup>67</sup> The Assaka region was immediately south of Paithan on the Godavari river The Assakas belonged to the Ikshavaku family which was the greatest pre-Aryan, non-Aryan race<sup>68</sup> The Brahmanas had not yet dominated this region into which the Perimoula of Ptolemy was situate Nomenclature of Ariake given to this region, with some more additions, appears to be purely on heresay evidences from their erstwhile brothers, the Brahmanas The expert mariners that sailed from this Assaka port were the Ikshavaku or the Andhra seions who took the Bharatiya trade and the way to Malaya and other distant regions They gave the name of their old port to their new port settlement and to the Gulf It appears that these were very powerful and influential people who could colonise such a vast and important region

These Bharatiya emigrants not only designated the port and the gulf by the name of their original settlement They gave the name of their mountain to the whole country Malayagiri was the name of a mountain in the ancient times that was a portion of western ghats from the Nilgiris to the Cape Kumari<sup>69</sup> The Malava country of the south-east Asia received its name from the Malayagiri of Bharata through the Bharatiya settlers

The story of Bharatiya emigrations dates back from the hoary past We know such emmigrations since 4000 B C , when the known chapter of the humun history opens The Bharatiya cultural ambassadors went to Sumer, Egypt, Greece and America<sup>70</sup> This enthralling human endeavour continued till the age of Ptolemy despite three foreign military invasions of the Brahmaryans, the Dravidians and the Greeks

Apart from these specific cultural events, we have some more but they can not be satisfactorily explained in the present state of our knowledge The Bharatiya colonists went to Burma, Siam, Malaya and the east Indies We have some historical

records about them belonging to the third quarter of the first millennium A D But they were colonised by the first century A D The concepts Sohanpuri, Aganagara, Kirradia, Besynga, Sobanos, I-abadios and other islands and Sindai islands suggest cultural links with Bharata The historical migrations to these lands before Ptolemy still await more light and better explanations

## 10 Historical Geography

Geography is the determining factor of history. It determines the behaviour and attitudes of a particular society of a particular region The hardy mountaneous people are attracted by the plenty of the plains people which vitally effect the present and future behaviours and attitudes of the two peoples Duality is the mother of change and progress Time is the determining factor in historical alignments and re-alignments With every upheaval of the people, geography changes and maps are redrawn at every determining period of history Geography, thus becomes the source of history and the right understanding of the geography of a particular age helps in the right understanding of the history of that age Geography and history are inalienable companions History is blind without geography and geography is deaf without history

The geography of the world C 4000 B C , helps us in the right understanding of the way of people in that age The maps of the world were redrawn at the Aryan intrusions in different parts of the world The maps of Bharata were, again and again, redrawn at each and every foreign conquest and internal changes of rulerships The geography of Megasthenes helps us in the right understanding of the way of life of the people of Bharata in the fourth ceentury B C The geography of Ptolemy similarly helps us in rightly understanding the way of living of the people of Bharata in the second century A D The present is the dialectical development of the past, having in its womb the seeds of the dialectical development of the future The right understanding of the past, hence, is essential for the right understanding of the present so that the future may rightly be planned.

When Ptolemy wrote his treatise on Indian Geography, the pre-Aryan Bharatiya social structure had crumbled down and it had become historically influenced by the Brahmaryan, the Dravidian and the Greek foreign intrusions Ptolemy's treatise attests this historical truth We may resume this previous discussion as follows —

1 The undivided Aryans lived in the Uttarakuru or the Hyperborean regions before they separated for their historic migrations to the different parts of the world. The Greeks and the Brahmanas treated one another like real brothers

2 The Greeks considered their invasion of Bharata as the second foreign invasion It was really the third The Damilian or the Dravidian invasion might have become obliterated from the Greek memory

3 The pre-Aryan, the Dravidian and the Brahmanic peoples and places were clearly recognisable in the age of Ptolemy The Aryans still had their settlements in the vicinity of their cradle land in Skythia, Sogdiana, Baktriana, Ariana, Arachosia and the northern Bharata The Dravidians had their settlements only in the trans-Vindhyan regions to the south downwards The pre-Aryan Australoids or Austric people of Bharata had their settlements in the far north, the far west and the whole of Bharata

4 The Brahmanas had not yet powerfully advanced to the east beyond Magadha and to the south beyond the Vindhyas The Dravidians were yet beginning to attain political power in the south The original Austric people controlled and possessed the political power in the whole of Bharata and the far eastern greater Bharata They could still claim their lingering traditions in the far north and the far-west

5 The Bharatiyan people, despite three foreign intrusions were still vigorous and powerful people They had kept their shramanic way of life in tact in the whole of Bharata and in the far-eastern regions with good influences in the far west and surviving-for-existence state in the far-north

The right understanding of the historical aspects of the geography of Ptolemy will help us in right understanding of the later history of Bharata through the later geographical treatises

## REFERENCES

- 1 Patanjali, Mahabhashya, 4, 1 114, 8 1 15
- 2 Ramchandra Jain, Jaya The Brahmaryan conques of Bihar  
Unpublished, Chapter 28
- 3 (i) R G Bhandarkar, Collected Works of Sr R. G.  
Bhandarkar, 1929 Bhandarkar Oriental Research Institute  
Poona, Pages 19, 41, 147 163  
(ii) Ramchandra Jain Gitopanishad, Unpublished.  
(iii) Ramchandra Jain, Origins of Ramakatha; *Mahatma*  
Jayanti Smarika 1969 Pages 9ff
- 4 McCrindle Ancient India as Described by Poetry: Edited  
by S M Shastri 1927 Chulaverthy, Chatter & Co. Ltd.  
Calcutta, Pages 33, 180

14. Frags. XVIII, LVI, LIX (17) in McCrindle's *Ancient India*, Megasthenes and Arrian, Edited by R C Majumdar, 1960, Chukerverthy, Chatterji & Co Ltd, Calcutta
- 15 McCrindle, *Op cit* (I D P), Page 322
- 16 McCrindle, *Op cit* (I D P), Page 159
- 17 Ramchandra Jain, *Op cit* (M A A S), Chapter I Section 5 and Chapter V Section 3
- 18 Γ E Pargiter, *Ancient Indian Historical Tradition*, 1962, Motilal Banarasidas, Delhi, Pages 277-278
- 19 Γ E Pargiter, *Op cit* (A I H T), Pages 242 Note 5 and 277
- 20 Ramchandra Jain, *Origins of the Ramakatha*, Mahavira Smriti, 1969, Pages 15-16
- 21 F E Pargiter, *Op cit* (A I H T), Page 266
- 22 Panini, Ashtadhyayi 2 1 70
- 23 Patanjali, *Mahabhasya*, 1 476
- 24 V S Aggarwal, *India as known to Panini*, 1952, University of Lucknow, Lucknow, Page 384
- 25 Ramchandra Jain, *Op cit* (M A A S), Chapter I Section 6
- 26 McCrindle, *Op cit* (I D P), Page 51
- 27 McCrindle, *Op cit* (I D P), Page 170
- 28 (i) Zend Avesta, translated by J Darmesteter, *Sacred Books of the East Series*, Motilal Banarsidas, Delhi, 1965, Part I (Vol IV), Pages XLIX, 3  
 (ii) E Herzfeld, *Iran in the Ancient East*, Oxford University Press, Oxford, 1941, Page 190  
 (iii) B K Ghose, *Indo-Iranian Relations (in the Vedic Age)*, 1957, Bharatiya Vidya Bhavan, Bombay, Page 218
- 29 McCrindle, *Op cit* (I D P), Pages 34, 309, 315
- 30 McCrindle, *Op cit* (I D P), Page 389
- 31 Ramchandra Jain, *Op cit* (M A A S), Chapter I
- 32 Ramchandra Jain, *Op cit* (E A O), Chapter III
- 33 B K Ghose, *Op cit* (I I R), Page 218
- 34 Ramchandra Jain, *Hastinapur, the Ancient Capital of Ahistala Janapada*, Unpublished
- 35 Ramchandra Jain, *Op cit* (E A B), Page 129

- 36 McCrindle, *Op cit* (I D P), Pages 161, 165
- 37 Ramchandra Jain, *Op cit* (M A A S), Page 14, 24
- 38 R Sathianathar, *Dynasties of South India (in The Classical Age)*, 1954, Bharatiya Vidyabhawan, Bombay, Page 267
- 39 R C Majumdar, General Editor, *The Age of Imperial Unity*, 1953, Pages, 15, 78
- 40 Megasthenes, Fragments LVI, LVIB, LVIII
- 41 S Krishnamani Aiyangar, *South India and Ceylon (in A I U)*, Page 229
- 42 Ancient India, Megasthenes and Arrian, Edited by Ramchandra Jain, 1972, Today and Tomorrow Book Agency, New Delhi, Conculturum, Page XXXVII
- 43 McCrindle, *Op cit* (I D P), Page 121
- 44 F E Pargiter, *Op cit* (A I H T), Pages 90, 148
- 45 B K Ghosh, *Op cit* (Vedic Age), Page 206
- 46 Ramchandra Jain, Jaya, *The Brahmaryan Conquest of Bharata*, Unpublished, Chapter 20 Section II
- 47 Rgveda 1 15 8 1
- 48 Ramchandra Jain, *Op cit* (Jaya), Chapter 22 Section II
- 49 Panini, Ashtadhyayi, IV 1 114, IV 3 98
- 50 Ramchandra Jain, *Op cit* (A E B), Pages 140-141, 86 and Chapter IV
- 51 D C Sircar, Deccan after the Satavahanas (in A I U), Page 221
- 52 D C Sircar, Northern India after the Kushanas (in A I U), Page 160 Note 3
- 53 R G Bhandarkar, Collected Works of Sir R G Bhandarkar Vol IV, 1929, Bhandarkar Oriental Research Institute, Poona, Page 52
54. McCrindle, *Ancient India as described by Megasthenes and Arrian*, edited by R C Majumdar, 1960, Chukerverthy Chatterji & Co Ltd, Calcutta, Page 136
- 55 B C Law, *North India in the sixth century B C*, (in A I U), Page 7
- 56 B C Law, *Historical Geography of Ancient India*, 1954, Societe Asiatique de Paris, France, Page 236

- 57 A D Pusalkar, Traditional History from the Accession of Parikshit to the end of the Brihadratha Dynasty (in Vedic Age), Pages 321, 327-328
- 58 B C. Law, *Op cit* (N I S.C), Page 10
59. B C. Law, *Op cit* (H G A I); Page 43
- 60 D C Sircar, *Op cit* (S & C), Pages 214 to 216
- 61 McCrindle, *Op cit* (I D P), Page 203
62. R C Majumdar, Colonial and Cultural Expansion in South-east Asia (in the Classical Age); 1954, Bharatiya Vidya Bhavan, Bombay, Pages 633-634
- 63 R C Majumdar, Cultural and Colonial Expansion (in A I U), Page 657
64. R C Majumdar, the Struggle for Empire, 1957, Bharatiya Vidya Bhavan, Bombay, Preface Page XLIV
- 65 McCrindle, *Op cit* (I D P), Pages 42-43, 201
- 66 D C Sircar, *Op cit* (S & C), Page 191
- 67 (1) B C Law, *Op cit* (N I S C ), Pages 12-13  
 (2) B C Law *Op cit* (H G A I), Page 51
- 68 Ramchandra Jain, *Op cit* (E A B ), Page 23
- 69 B C Law, *Op cit* (H G A I) Page 173
- 70 Ramchandra Jain, *Op cit* (M A A S ), Chapter I

(Original Title page)

ANCIENT INDIA  
AS DESCRIBED BY  
PTOLEMY;  
BEING  
TRANSLATION OF THE CHAPTERS WHICH DESCRIBE INDIA  
AND CENTRAL AND EASTERN ASIA IN THE TREATISE ON  
GEOGRAPHY WRITTEN BY KLAUDIOS PTOLEMAIOS,  
THE CELEBRATED ASTRONOMER,  
WITH  
INTRODUCTION, COMMENTARY, MAP OF  
INDIA ACCORDING TO PTOLEMY, AND  
A VERY COPIOUS INDEX,  
BY  
J W McCRINDLE, MA, MR AS,  
FORMERLY PRINCIPAL OF THE GOVERNMENT COLLEGE, PATAA  
AND FELLOW OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALCUTTA,  
MEMBER OF THE GENERAL COUNCIL OF THE UNIVERSITY  
OF EDINBURGH.

*Reprinted from the "Indian Antiquary," 1884.*

London  
TRÜBNER & Co

1885



# McCrindle's

## PREFACE

### TO THE ORIGINAL EDITION

---

PTOLEMY'S "Treatise on Geography," like his famous work on astronomy to which it formed the sequel, was destined to govern the world's opinion on the subject of which it treated, from the time of its publication until the dawn of the modern era, a period of about 1,300 years. This treatise must have been composed in the interests of chartography rather than of geography, for the author's aim is not so much to describe the earth's surface as to lay down the principles on which maps should be constructed, and to determine the latitude and longitude of places with a view to their being mapped in their proper positions. The principles he here laid down have proved of permanent validity, and are still practically applied in the art of map-construction, but his determinations of the position of places, owing to the paucity and imperfection of the astronomical observations on which, in combination with the existing measurements of terrestrial distances his conclusions were based, are all, with very few exceptions, incorrect. The work

lost, of course, much of its old authority as soon as the discoveries of modern times had brought its grave and manifold errors to light. It did not, however, on this account cease to be of high interest and value as an antiquarian record, if we may judge from the multiplicity of the learned disquisitions which have from time to time been published in elucidation of many points of Ptolemaic Geography.

There is perhaps no part of the contents which has received more attention from scholars than the chapters relating to India, where the tables abound to a surprising extent with names which are found nowhere else in classical literature, and which were doubtless obtained directly from Indian sources, rather than from reports of travellers or traders who had visited the country. On glancing over these names one cannot fail to remark how very few of them have any but the most distant resemblance to the indigenous names which they must have been intended to represent. Philologists, however, have made persistent efforts to penetrate the disguise which conceals the original forms of the names so much distorted by Ptolemy, and have succeeded in establishing a great number of satisfactory identifications, as well as in hitting upon others which have a balance of probability in their favour—a similar service has been rendered by the archaeological investigations which have

now for many years been systematically prosecuted under the auspices of the Indian Government

The present work has for its main object to show concisely what has been accomplished up to this time in this department of enquiry. It has been compiled from multifarious sources which are not easily accessible, as for instance from foreign publications not yet translated into our own language, and from the Journals and Transactions of various societies at home and abroad which concern themselves with Oriental literature.

I venture therefore to hope that my compendium, which it has taken much time and laborious research to prepare, may meet with recognition and acceptance as a useful contribution to general literature, while proving also serviceable to scholars as a work of reference.

I proceed now to indicate the method which I have followed in the treatment of my subject, and to specify the authorities on which I have principally relied. I have then, in an introductory chapter, attempted to give a succinct account of the general nature of Ptolemy's geographical system, and this is followed by a translation of several chapters of his First Book which serve to exhibit his general mode of procedure in dealing with questions of Geography, and at the same time convey his views

of the configuration of the coasts of India, both on this side the Ganges and beyond In translating the text I have taken it in detachments of convenient length, to each of which I have subjoined a commentary, the main object of which is—1st, to show, as far as has been ascertained, how each place named by Ptolemy in his Indian Tables has been identified, 2nd, to trace the origin or etymology of each name, so far as it is possible to do so, and 3rd, to notice very concisely the most prominent facts in the ancient history of the places of importance mentioned I have, as a rule, quoted the sources from which my information has been derived, but may here state that I have generally adopted the views of M Vivien de Saint-Martin and those of Colonel Yule, whose map of ancient India in Smith's well-known historical *Atlas of Ancient Geography* is allowed on all hands to be the best that has yet been produced These authors have examined the greater part of the Ptolemaic Geography of India, and their conclusions are for the most part coincident The works of Saint-Martin, which I have consulted, are these *Étude sur la Géographie Grecque et Latine de l'Inde, et en particulier sur l'Inde de Ptolémée, dans ses rapports avec la Géographie Sanskrite, Mémoire Analytique sur la Carte de l'Asie Centrale et de l'Inde, et Étude sur la Géographie et les populations primitives du Nord Ouest de l'Inde d'après*

*les hymnes védiques* Colonel Yule has expressed his views chiefly in the notes upon the map referred to, but also occasionally in the notes to his edition of *Marco Polo* and in other works from his pen Frequent reference will be found in my notes to that work of vast erudition, Prof Lassen's *Indische Alterthumskunde* Unfortunately the section which he has devoted to a full examination of Ptolemy's India is the least satisfactory portion of his work His system of identification is based on a wrong principle, and many of the conclusions to which it has led are such as cannot be accepted His work is notwithstanding, as Yule says, "a precious mine of material for the study of the ancient geography of India" For elucidations of the Ptolemaic geography of particular portions of India I have consulted with great advantage such works as the following — Wilson's *Ariana Antiqua*, General Cunningham's *Geography of Ancient India*, Vol I (all yet published), and his *Reports on the Archaeological Survey of India*, Bishop Caldwell's Introduction to his *Dravidian Grammar*, valuable for identification of places in the south of the Peninsula, the *Bombay Gazetteer*, edited by Mr J M Campbell, who has carefully investigated the antiquities of that Presidency, the volumes of *Asiatic Researches*, the *Journals of the Royal Asiatic Society* and of the *British Societies in India*, the *Journals of the Royal*

Geographical Society, the articles on India and places in India in Smith's *Dictionary of Classical Geography*, written almost all by Mr. Vaux, articles in the *Indian Antiquary*, Bенев's *Indien* in the *Encyclopédie* of Ersch and Grüber, the Abbé Halma's *Traité de Géographie de Claude Ptolémée*, Paris, 1828; the Chapters on Marinus and Ptolemy's System of Geography in Bunbury's *History of Ancient Geography* Priaulx's *Indian Travels of Apollonius of Tyana*, &c., Stephanos of Byzantium *On Cities*, Sir Emerson Tennent's *Ceylon*, Sir H Rawlinson's articles on Central Asia which have appeared in various publications, and other works which need not here be specified.

There has recently been issued from the press of Firmin-Didot, Paris, the first volume of a new and most elaborate edition of Ptolemy's Geography, prepared by C Müller, the learned editor of the *Geographi Graeci Minores*, but the work unfortunately has not advanced so far as to include the chapters which contain the geography of India.

I would here take the opportunity of expressing my obligations to Dr Burgess, the late editor of the *Indian Antiquary*, for his careful revision of the proofs, and for sundry valuable suggestions.

Having thought it advisable to extend the scope of the work beyond the limits originally contemplated, I have included in it those

chapters of the geography in which China, Central Asia, and all the provinces adjacent to India are described. The reader is thus presented with the Ptolemaic Geography of the whole of Asia, with the exception only of those countries which from propinquity and frequency of intercourse were well known to the nations of the West.

In a short Appendix will be found some additional notes.

The present volume forms the fourth of the Series of Annotated Translations of the Works of the Classical Writers which relate to India. Another volume, containing Strabo's Indian Geography and the Accounts given by Arrian and Curtius of the Makedonian Invasion of India, will complete the series.

3, ABBOTSFORD PARK, EDINBURGH,  
*June, 1885*

---



# PTOLEMY'S GEOGRAPHY OF INDIA AND SOUTHERN ASIA.

---

## INTRODUCTION

### *Ptolemy and his System of Geography*

Klaudios Ptolemaios, or as he is commonly called, Ptolemy, was distinguished alike as a Mathematician, a Musician, an Astronomer and a Geographer, and was altogether one of the most accomplished men of science that antiquity produced. His works were considered as of paramount authority from the time of their publication until the discoveries of modern times had begun to show their imperfections and errors. It is surprising that with all his fame, which had even in his own lifetime become pre-eminent, that the particulars of his personal history should be shrouded in all but total darkness. Nothing in fact is known for certain regarding him further than that he flourished in Alexandria about the middle of the 2nd century of our æra, in the reign of Antoninus Pius, whom he appears to have survived.

His work on Geography formed a sequel to his great work on Astronomy, commonly called the *Almagest*. From its title *Γεωγραφικὴ Ὑφήγησις*, *an Outline of Geography*, we might be led to infer

that it was a general treatise on the subject, like the comprehensive work of Strabo, but in reality it treats almost exclusively of Mathematical, or what may be called Cosmical, Geography. Ptolemy's object in composing it was not like that of the ordinary Geographer to describe places, but to correct and reform the map of the world in accordance with the increased knowledge which had been acquired of distant countries and with the improved state of science. He therefore limits his argument to an exposition of the geometrical principles on which Geography should be based, and to a determination of the position of places on the surface of the earth by their latitudes and longitudes. What he considered to be the proper method of determining geographical positions he states very clearly in the following passage "The proper course," he says, "in drawing up a map of the world is to lay down as the basis of it those points that were determined by the most correct (astronomical) observations, and to fit into it those derived from other sources, so that their positions may suit as well as possible with the principal points thus laid down in the first instance."<sup>1</sup>

Unfortunately, as Bunbury remarks, it was impossible for him to carry out in practice—even approximately—the scheme that he had so well laid down in theory. The astronomical observations to which he could refer were but few, and they were withal either so defective or so inaccurate that he could not use them with con-

---

<sup>1</sup> Book I cap 4 The translation is Bunbury's

fidence At the same time his information concerning many parts of the earth, whether owing to their remoteness or the conflicting accounts of travellers regarding them, was imperfect in the extreme The extent, however, of his geographical knowledge was far greater than that possessed by any of his predecessors, and he had access to sources of information which enabled him to correct many of the errors into which they had fallen

He was induced to undertake the composition of his *Geography* through his being dissatisfied more or less with all the existing systems There was however one work—that of his immediate precursor, Marinos of Tyre—which approximated somewhat closely to his ideal, and which he therefore made the basis of his own treatise Marinos, he tells us, had collected his materials with the most praiseworthy diligence, and had moreover sifted them both with care and judgment He points out, however, that his system required correction both as to the method of delineating the sphere on a plane surface, and as to the computation of distances, which he generally exaggerated He censures him likewise for having assigned to the known world too great a length from west to east, and too great a breadth from north to south

Of Ptolemy's own system, the more prominent characteristics may now be noted He assumed the earth to be a sphere, and adopting the estimate of Poseidônios fixed its circumference at 180,000 stadia, thus making the length of a degree at the equator to be only 500 stadia, instead of 600, which

is its real length? To this fundamental miscalculation may be referred not a few of the most serious errors to be found in his work. With regard to the question of the length and the breadth of the inhabited part of the earth, a question of first importance in those days, he estimated its length as measured along the parallel of Rhodes,<sup>3</sup> which divided the then known world into two nearly equal portions at 72,000 stadia, and its breadth at 40,000. The meridian in the west from which he calculated his longitudes was that which passed through the Islands of the Blest (*Μακάρων Νῆσοι*) probably the Canary Islands,<sup>4</sup> and his most

<sup>2</sup> The Olympic stadium, which was in general use throughout Greece, contained 600 Greek feet, which were equal to 625 Roman feet, or 606½ English feet. The Roman mile contained 8 stadia, or about half a stadium less than an English mile. A stadium of 600 Greek feet was very nearly the 600th part of a degree, and 10 stadia are therefore just about equal to a Nautical or Geographical mile. According to Eratosthenes, a degree at the Equator was equal to 700 stadia, but according to Poseidônios it was equal to only 500. The truth lay between, but Ptolemy unfortunately followed Poseidônios in his error.

<sup>3</sup> "The equinoctial line was of course perfectly fixed and definite in Ptolemy's mind, as an astronomical line, but he had no means of assigning its position on the Map of the World, except with reference to other parallels, such as the tropic at Syene, or the parallels of Alexandria and Rhodes, which had been determined by direct observation"—Bunbury, *Hist. of Anc. Geog.*, vol. II, p. 560, n. 2.

<sup>4</sup> The Island of Ferro—the westernmost of the Group of the Canaries, which was long taken as the prime meridian, and is still so taken in Germany—is really situated 18° 20' west of Greenwich, while Cape St Vincent (called anciently the *Sacred Cape*) is just about 9°, so that the real difference between the two amounted to 9° 20' instead of only 2½°. Two corrections must therefore be applied to Ptolemy's longitudes—one sixth must be deducted because of his under-estimate of the length

eastern meridian was that which passed through the Metropolis of the Sinai, which he calls Sinai or Thinai, and places in  $180^{\circ} 40'$  E Long and  $3^{\circ}$  S Lat. The distance of this meridian from that of Alexandria he estimated at  $119\frac{1}{2}$  degrees and the distance of the first meridian from the same at  $60\frac{1}{2}$  degrees, making together 180 degrees, or exactly one-half of the circumference of the earth. His estimate of the breadth he obtained by fixing the southern limit of the inhabited parts in the parallel of  $16\frac{1}{2}$  degrees of South Latitude, which passes through a point as far south of the Equator as Meroë is north of it. And by fixing the northern limit in the parallel of 63 degrees North Latitude, which passes through Thoulē (probably the Shetland Islands), a space of nearly 80 degrees was thus included between the two parallels, and this was equivalent in Ptolemy's mode of reckoning to 40,000 stadia.

Having made these determinations he had next to consider in what mode the surface of the earth with its meridians of longitude and parallels of latitude should be represented on a sphere and on a plane surface—of the two modes of delineation that on the sphere is the much easier to make, as it involves no method of projection but a map drawn on a plane is far more convenient for use, as it presents simultaneously to the eye a far greater extent of surface. Marinus had drawn his map of the world on a plane, but his method

of a degree along the Equator and  $6^{\circ} 50'$  must be added because Ferro was so much further west than he supposed. Subject to these corrections his longitudes would be fairly accurate, provided his calculations of distances were otherwise free from error.

of projection was altogether unsatisfactory. It is thus described by Ptolemy Marinos, he says, on account of the importance of the countries around the Mediterranean, kept as his base the line fixed on of old by Eratosthenes, viz., the parallel through Rhodes in the 36th degree of north latitude. He then calculated the length of a degree along this parallel, and found it to contain 400 stadia, the equatorial degree being taken at 500. Having divided this parallel into degrees he drew perpendiculars through the points of division for the meridians, and his parallels of latitude were straight lines parallel to that which passed through Rhodes. The imperfections of such a projection are obvious. It represented the parts of the earth north of the parallel of Rhodes much beyond, and those south of it much below, their proper length. Places again to the north of the line stood too far apart from each other, and those to the south of it too close together. The projection, moreover, is an erroneous representation, since the parallels of latitude ought to be circular arcs and not straight lines.

Ptolemy having pointed out these objections to the system of Marinos proceeds to explain the methods which he himself employed. We need say nothing more regarding them than that they were such as presented a near approximation to some of those which are still in use among modern Geographers.

Ptolemy's treatise is divided into 8 books. In the 1st or introductory book he treats first of Geography generally—he then explains and

criticizes the system of Marinus, and concludes by describing the methods of projection which may be employed in the construction of maps. The next 6 books and the first 4 chapters of the 7th book consist of tables which give distinctly in degrees and parts of a degree the latitudes and longitudes of all the places in his map. These places are arranged together in sections according to the country or tribe to which they belong and each section has prefixed to it a brief description of the boundaries and divisions of the part about to be noticed. Descriptive notices are also occasionally interspersed among the lists but

eraries, or from records of voyages and travels. This supposition is however untenable, for we find that while the statements as to the length of the longest days at the selected places are always correct for the latitudes assigned them, they are often glaringly wrong for their real positions. Ptolemy, it is evident, first mapped out in the best way he could the places, and then calculated for the more important of these places the astronomical phenomena incident to them as so situated. I conclude by presenting the reader with a translation of some chapters of the Introductory Book,<sup>5</sup> where Ptolemy in reviewing the estimate made by Marinus of the length of the known world from west to east, has frequent occasion to mention India and the Provinces beyond the Ganges, which together constitute what is now called Indo China.

### BOOK I, CAP 11

§ 1 What has now been stated will suffice to show us what extent in *breadth* it would be fair to assign to the inhabited world. Its *length* is given by Marinus at 15 hours, this being the distance comprised between his two extreme meridians—but in our opinion he has unduly extended the distance towards the east. In fact, if the estimate be properly reduced in this direction the entire length must be fixed at less than 12 hours the Islands of the Blest being taken as the limit towards

---

<sup>5</sup> The edition used is that of C F A Nobbe Leipzig, 1843

the west, and the remotest parts of Sêra and the Sinai<sup>6</sup> and Kattigara<sup>7</sup> as the limit towards

---

<sup>6</sup> "China for nearly 1,000 years has been known to the nations of Inner Asia, and to those whose acquaintance with it was got by that channel, under the name of Khitai, Khata, or Cathay, e.g., the Russians still call it Khitai. The pair of names, Khitai and Machin, or Cathay and China, is analogous to the other pair Seres and Sinai. Seres was the name of the great nation in the far east as known by land, Sinai as known by sea, and they were often supposed to be diverse, just as Cathay and China were afterwards" Yule's *Marco Polo*, 2nd ed., Introd., p. 11 and note.

<sup>7</sup> The locality of Kattigara has been fixed very variously Richthofen identified it with Kian chi in Tong king, and Colonel Yule has adopted this view "To myself," he says, "the arguments adduced by Richthofen in favour of the location of Kattigara in the Gulf of Tong king, are absolutely convincing. This position seems to satisfy every condition. For 1st, Tong king was for some centuries at that period (B C 111 to A D 263), only incorporated as part of the Chinese Empire 2nd, the only part mentioned in the Chinese annals as at that period open to foreign traffic was Kian-chi, substantially identical with the modern capital of Tong king, Kesho or Hanoi. Whilst there are no notices of foreign arrivals by any other approach, there are repeated notices of such arrivals by this province, including that famous embassy from Antun, King of Ta'sin, i.e., M. Aurelius Antoninus (A D 161-180) in A D 166. The province in question was then known as Ji nan (or Zhi nan, French), whence possibly the name Sinai, which has travelled so far and spread over such libraries of literature. The Chinese Annalist who mentions the Roman Embassy adds 'The people of that kingdom (Ta'sin or the Roman Empire) came in numbers for trading purposes to Fu nan, Ji nan, and Kian-chi.' Fu nan we have seen, was Champa, or Zabai. In Ji nan with its chief port Kian chi, we may recognize with assurance Kattigara, Portus Sinarum. Richthofen's solution has the advantages of preserving the true meaning of Sinai as the Chinese, and of locating the Portus Sinarum in what was then politically a part of China, whilst the remote Metropolis Thinae remains unequivocally the capital of the Empire, whether Si gnan fu in Chen si, or Lo yang in Ho nan be meant. I will only add that though we find Katighora in Edrisi's *Geography*, I apprehend this to be a mere adoption from the *Geogra-*

the east § 2 Now the entire distance from  
the Islands of the Blest to the passage of

phy of Ptolemy, founded on no recent authority It must have kept its place also on the later mediæval maps, for Pigafetta, in that part of the circumnavigation where the crew of the Victoria began to look out for the Asiatic coast, says that Magellan 'changed the course of the land until in  $13^{\circ}$  of N Lat in order to approach those who have made Gaticara, which Cape (under correction have never seen it), is not placed where they think, but is towards the north in  $12^{\circ}$  or thereabouts' [The Cape actually represented by Cape Varela or Cape St. James on the coast of Cochin China] It is probable that, as Richthofen points out, Kattigara, or at any rate Kian chi, was the Lukin or Al Wâkin of the early Arab geographers But the terminus of the Arab voyagers of the 9th century was no longer in Tong King, the haven of the great city which we know as Hang chow, and which then lay on or near a delta arm of the great Yang tse These arguments may be accepted as conclusively settling a paper, however, recently read before the R. Asiatic Society, Mr Holt, an eminent Chinese scholar, expressed a different view He "showed that there was good evidence of a very early communication from some port on the Chinese coast to near Martaban, or along the valley of the Irâwadi to the north west capital of China, then at Si gnan fu or Ho nan fu He then showed that the name of China had been derived from the Indians, who first knew China, and was not due to the Tan Dynasty, but more probably came from the name of the Compass, the Chinese being thus known in India as the 'Compass people,' just as the Seres, another Chinese population, derived their western name from 'Silk.' That knowledge of this fact was lost to both Indians and the Chinese is clear from the use by Huuen Tsiang and later writers of two symbols (see Morrison's Dictionary, syllabic of two parts, No. 8,033) to designate the country, as these, while giving the sound 'Che ha,' indicate that they are substitutes for original words of like sounds, tho' the true sense of which cannot now be recovered Having shown that M. Ronaud's view of an intercourse between China and Egypt in the first century A D has no real foundation, Mr Holt

the Euphrates at Hierapolis, as measured along the parallel of Rhodes, is accurately determined by summing together the several intervening distances as estimated in stadia by Marinus, for not only were the distances well ascertained from being frequently traversed, but Marinus seems moreover in his computation of the greater distances, to have taken into account the necessary corrections for irregularities and deviations<sup>8</sup> He understood, besides, that while the length of a single degree of the 360 degrees into which the equatorial circle is divided measures, as in the commonly accepted estimate, 500 stadia, the parallel circle which passes through Rhodes in 36 degrees of N latitude, measures about 400 stadia § 3 It measures, in fact, a little over that number if we go by the exact proportion of the parallels, but the excess is so trifling as in the case of the equatorial degree, that it may be neglected But

further stated that there was no evidence of an embassy from M Aurelius having gone by sea to China in A D 166 In conclusion he urged, that in his judgment, there was no proof whatever of any knowledge of a maritime way to China before the 4th century A D, the voyage even of Fa huan, at that period being open to serious criticism He believes therefore with M Gosselin that the Kattigara of Ptolemy was probably not far from the present Martaban, and that India for a considerable period up to the 7th century A.D dominated over Cambodia ”

<sup>8</sup> Deviations from the straight line by which the route would be represented in the map The irregularities refer to the occasional shortening of the daily march by obstacles of various kinds, bad roads, hostile attacks fatigue, &c

his estimates of the distances beyond Hierapolis require correction § 4 He computes the distance from the passage of the Euphrates already mentioned to the Stone Tower<sup>9</sup> at 876

<sup>9</sup> "One of the circumstances of the route that Ptolemy has reproduced from Marinus is that on leaving Baktra the traveller directed his course for a long enough time towards the North Assuredly the caravan touched at Samarkand (the Marakanda of Greek authors) which was then, as now, one of the important centres in the region beyond the Oxus For passing from Sogdiana to the east of the snowy range, which covers the sources of the Jaxartes and the Oxus three main routes have existed at all times that of the south which ascends in the high valleys of the Svr Daryn or Jaxartes, and that of the north which goes through Badakshân, that valley of the Jaxartes before turning to the east towards Chinese Tartary Of these three routes the 2nd or the middle Greek merchants could only apply to the Itinerary of the probability, the Stone Tower of the Itinerary is found with much an important place belonging to the Turkonâna the Jaxartes, of which the name Tushkand in the valley found in same meaning in the language of the Turkonâna it would be the northern route that the caravan of Maes would have followed. The march of seven months in advancing constantly towards the south of China (Saint Martin, Étude, pp 428 9) Sir H Rawlinson however assigns it a more towards the north of China the east leads necessarily southern position, placing it at Tash kurghan an ancient city which was of old the capital of the Sarik kul territory, a district lying between Yarkand and Badakshan and known to the Chinese as Ko panto The walls of Tash kurghan are built of unusually large blocks of stone It was no doubt of which it was built that it received the name of Tash kurghan or the 'Stone Fort,' and it seems to have every claim to represent Fort, *λίθιος πύργος* of Ptolemy, where the caravans rendezvous before entering China. in preference to Tashkand or Ush, which have been selected as the site of the Stone Tower by other geographers."—*Jour R Geog Soc.* vol. XLII, p 327

*schæni*<sup>10</sup> or 26,280 stadia, and from the Stone Tower to Sêra, the metropolis of the Sêres, at a 7 months' journey or 36,200 stadia as reckoned along the same parallel. Now in neither case has he made the proper deductions for the excess caused by deviations, and for the second route he falls into the same absurdity as when he estimated the distance from the Garamantes to Agisymba<sup>11</sup> § 5 Where he had to deduct above half of the stadia in the march of the 3 months and 14 days, since such a march could not possibly have been accomplished without halting.

---

The necessity for halting would be still more urgent when the march was one which occupied 7 months § 6 But the former march was accomplished even by the king of the country himself, who would naturally use every precaution, and the weather besides was all throughout most propitious But the route from the Stone Tower to Sêra is exposed to violent storms, for as he himself assumes, it lies under the parallels of the Hellespont and Byzantium,<sup>12</sup> so that the progress of travellers would be frequently interrupted § 7 Now it was by means of commerce this became known, for Marinos tells us that one Maës, a Makedonian, called also Titianus, who was a merchant by hereditary profession, had written a book giving the measurement in question, which he had obtained not by visiting the Sêres in person, but from the agents whom he had sent to them But Marinos seems to have distrusted accounts borrowed from traders § 8 In giving, for instance, on the authority of Philémon, the length of Ivernia (Ireland) at a 20 days' journey, he refuses to accept this estimate, which was got, he tells us, from merchants, whom he reprobates as a class of men too much engrossed with their own proper business to care about ascertaining the truth, and who also from mere vanity frequently exaggerated distances So

---

<sup>12</sup> Lat  $40^{\circ} 1'$ —Lat of Tash kurghân Lat  $37^{\circ} 46'$   
(long  $75^{\circ} 4'$ )

too, in the case before us, it is manifest that nothing in the course of the 7 months' journey was thought worthy either of record or remembrance by the travellers except the prodigious time taken to perform it

### CAP 12

§ 1 Taking all this into consideration, together with the fact that the route does not lie along one and the same parallel (the Stone Tower being situated near the parallel of Byzantium, and Sêra lying farther south than the parallel through the Hellespont) it would appear but reasonable in this case also to diminish by not less than a half the distance altogether traversed in the 7 months' journey, computed at 36,200 stadia, and so let us reduce the number of stadia which these represent at the equator by one-half only, and we thus obtain (22,625) stadia or  $45\frac{1}{2}$  degrees<sup>13</sup> § 2 For it would be absurd, and show a want of proper judgment, if, when reason enjoins us to curtail the length of both routes, we should follow the injunction with respect to the African route, to the length of which there is the obvious objection, *viz.*, the species of animals in the neighbourhood of Agisymba,

<sup>13</sup> 36,200 stadia along the parallel of Rhodes are equivalent according to Ptolemy's system, to 45,250 stadia along the equator, and this sum reduced by a half gives the figures in the text

which cannot bear to be transplanted from their own climate to another, while we refuse to follow the injunction with regard to the route from the Stone Tower, because there is not a similar objection to its length, seeing that the temperature all along this route is uniform, quite independently of its being longer or shorter. Just as if one who reasons according to the principles of philosophy, could not, unless the case were otherwise clear, arrive at a sound conclusion<sup>14</sup>

§ 3 With regard again to the first of the two Asiatic routes, that, I mean which leads from the Euphrates to the Stone Tower, the estimate of 870 schoeni must be reduced to 800 only, or 24,000 stadia, on account of deviations § 4 We

<sup>14</sup> Marnos was aware that Agysymba lay in a hot climate, from the fact that its neighbourhood was reported to be a favourite resort for rhinoceroses, and he was thus compelled to reduce his first estimate, and he was which would have placed it in far too cold a latitude, for these animals, which are found only in hot regions. But no such palpable necessity compelled him to reduce his estimate of the distance from the Stone Tower to the Metropolis of the Seres, for here the equator had an equitable temperature, as it did not recede from the equator but lay almost uniformly along the route. Marnos that his enormous estimate of the distance shown the Seric Metropolis required reduction, however, might have shown that which was based on the habitat cogent argument as the distance to Agysymba, though such a reduction as to face of it absurd to suppose that It is on the rhinoceros marched through a difficult and unknown country have 7 months consecutively at an average progress of 170 stadia (about 20 miles) daily

may accept as correct his figures for the entire distance as the several stages had been frequently traversed and had therefore been measured with accuracy. But that there were numerous deviations is evident from what Marinus himself tells us § 5 For the route from the passage of the Euphrates at Hierapolis through Mesopotamia to the Tigris, and the route thence through the Garlamaios of Assyria, and through Media to Ecbatana and the Kaspian Gates, and through Parthia to Hekatompylos Marinus considers to lie along the parallel which passes through Rhodes, for he traces (*in his map*) this parallel as passing through these regions § 6 But the route from Hekatompylos to the capital city of Hyrkania must, of necessity, diverge to the north, because that city lies somewhere between the parallel of Smyrna and that of the Hellespont, since the parallel of Smyrna is traced as passing below Hyrkania and that of the Hellespont through the southern parts of the Hyrkanian Sea from the city bearing the same name which lies a little farther north § 7 But, again, the route herefrom to Antiochēia (Merv) of Margiana through Areia, at first bends towards the south, since Areia lies under the same parallel as the Kaspian Gates, and then afterwards turns towards the north, Antiochēia being situated under the parallel of

the Hellespont<sup>16</sup>. The route after this runs in an eastward direction to Baktra whence it turns towards the north in ascending the mountains of the Kômêdoï, and then in passing through these mountains it pursues a southern course as far as the ravine that opens into the plain country § 8. For the northern parts of the mountain region and those furthest to the west where the ascent begins, are placed by him under the parallel of Byzantium, and those in the south and the east under the parallel of the Hellespont. For this reason, he says, that this route makes a detour of equal length in opposite directions, that in advancing to the east it bends towards the south, and thereafter probably runs up towards the north for 50 schæni, till it reaches the Stone Tower § 9. For to quote his own

---

<sup>16</sup> The actual latitudes of the places here mentioned may be compared with those of Ptolemy —

	Real Lat	Ptolemy's Lat
Byzantium	41°	43° 5'
Hellespont	40°	41° 15'
Smyrna	38° 28'	38° 35'
Iesus	37°	36° 35'
Rhodes	36° 24'	36° 25'
Hierapolis	36° 28'	36° 15'
Ecbatana	34° 50'	37° 45'
Kaspian Gates	35° 30'	37°
Hekatompylos	35° 40'	37° 50'
Antiochœa (Merv)	37° 35'	40° 20'
Baktra (Balkh)	36° 40'	41°
Stone Tower (Tâshkand)	42° 58'	43°
Sera Metropolis (Ho nan)	38° 35'	33° 58'

words, "When the traveller has ascended the ravine he arrives at the Stone Tower, after which the mountains that trend to the east unite with Imaus, the range that runs up to the north from Palunbothra" § 10 If, then, to the 60 degrees made up of the 24,000 stadia, we add the  $45\frac{1}{4}$  degrees which represent the distance from the Stone Tower to Sêra, we get  $105\frac{1}{4}$  degrees as the distance between the Euphrates and Sêra as measured along the parallel of Rhodes<sup>16</sup> § 11 But, further, we

<sup>16</sup> Saint Martin identifies Sêra the Metropolis of the Seres, with a site near Ho nan fu. He says, (*Etudes* p 412) "At the time when the caravan journey reported by Maïs was made (in the first half of the first century of our era), the Han surnamed Eastern held the reins of government, and their residence was at Lo yang near the present City of Ho nan fou, not far from the southern bank of the lower Hoang ho. It is there then we should look to find the place which in their ignorance of the language of the country, and in their disdain for barbarous names, the Greek traders designated merely as the Metropolis of the Seres." The road these traders took appears to have been the same by which Hiuen Tsiang travelled towards India.

We may here insert for comparison with Ptolemy's distances two itineraries, one by Strabo and the other by Pliny. Strabo (lib XI, c viii, 9) says "These are the distances which he (Eratosthenes) gives —

	Stadia
From the Kaspian Sea to the Kyros about	1,800
Thence to the Kaspian Gates	5,600
Thence to Alexandreia of the Aretoi (Herat)	6,400
Thence to Baktra, called also Zariaspa (Balkh)	3,870
Thence to the Jaxartes, which Alexander reached, about	5,000
Making a total of	22,670 "
He also assigns the following distances from the Kaspian Gates to India —	Stadia.
"To Hekatompylos	1,960
To Alexandreia of the Aretoi (Herat)	4,530

can infer from the number of stadia which he gives as the distance between successive places lying along the same parallel, that the distance from the Islands of the Blest to the saered Promontory in Spain (Cape St. Vincent), is 2½ degrees, and the distance thence to the mouth of the Baetis (Guadalquivir), the same

	Stadia
Thonco to Prophthasia in Dranga (a littlo north of lako Zarath)	1,600
Thonco to the City Arkhotos (Ulan Robut)	4,120
Then to Ortospana (Kabul) on the 3 roads	2,000
from Baktra	1,000
Thenco to the confines of India	<hr/> 15,300 "
	15,210

Which together amount to  
The sum total however is only

Pliny (lib VI, c xxi) says "Diogenetus and Bacton, his (Alexander's) measurers, have recorded that from the Kas pian Gates to Hekatompulos of tho Parthians there were as many miles as wo have stated, thonco to Alexandria Arion a city built by that king, 575 milos, to the town of the Arakhosi of the Drangae 108 milos, to Hortospanum 175 miles, thonco to the town of the Arakhosi 565 miles, to Opinnd 50 miles differing from theso 120 miles, to the foot of Caucasus, from that the last named city lay at the distance of 237 miles, and thonco to the Indus and Indians, was 80 miles, and Poucolatis, a town of the town of Taxila 120 miles, to the Hydaspes, a famous river, which was the limit of Alexander's progress, although he crossed the river and dedicated altars on the far off bank, as the letters and dedicated himself to the king himself forming" The Kaspian Gates formed a point of great importance in ancient Geography, and many of the meridians were measured from it. The pass has been clearly identified with that now known as the Sirdar Pass between Veramin and Kishlak in Khowar. Arrian states that the distance from the city of Rhagai to the entrance of the Gates was a one day's march. This was, however, a forced march, as the ruins of Rhagai (now Rai, about 5 miles from Tehran) are somewhere about 30 miles distant from the Pass.

From the Bætis to Kalpē, and the entrance of the Straits,  $2\frac{1}{2}$  degrees From the Straits to Karallis in Sardinia, 25 degrees From Karallis to Lilybaion, in Sicily,  $4\frac{1}{2}$  degrees From this Cape to Pakhynos, 3 degrees Then again, from Pakhynos to Tainaros, in Lakonia, 10 degrees Thence to Rhodes,  $8\frac{1}{2}$  degrees From Rhodes to Issus,  $11\frac{1}{2}$  degrees, and finally from Issos to the Euphrates,  $2\frac{1}{2}$  degrees<sup>17</sup> § 12 The

<sup>17</sup> I may present here the tabular form in which Mr Bunbury (vol. II, p 638) exhibits the longitudes of the principal points in the Mediterranean as given by Ptolemy, and the actual longitudes of the same points computed from Ferro

	Longitude in Ptolemy	Real longitude E of Ferro
Sacred Promontory	$2^{\circ} 30'$	$9^{\circ} 20'$
Mouth of Bætis	$5^{\circ} 20'$	$12^{\circ}$
Calpe (at mouth of Straits)	$7^{\circ} 30'$	$13^{\circ}$
Caralis in Sardinia	$32^{\circ} 30'$	$27^{\circ} 30'$
Lilybæum in Sicily	$37^{\circ}$	$30^{\circ} 45'$
Pachynus (Prom.) in Sicily	$40^{\circ}$	$33^{\circ} 25'$
Tænarus (Prom.)	$50^{\circ}$	$40^{\circ} 50'$
Rhodes	$58^{\circ} 20'$	$46^{\circ} 45'$
Issus	$69^{\circ} 20'$	$54^{\circ} 30'$

The same authority observes (vol. II, p 564) "Ptolemy thus made the whole interval from the Sacred Cape to Issus, which really comprises only about  $45^{\circ} 15'$  to extend over not less than 67 degrees of longitude, and the length of the Mediterranean itself from Calpe to Issus, to amount to 62 degrees rather more than 20 degrees; beyond the truth It is easy to detect one principal source of this enormous error Though the distances above given are reported by Ptolemy in degrees of longitude, they were computed by Marinus himself from what he calls *stadiasm*, that is from distances given in maritime itineraries and reported in stadia In other words, he took the statements and estimates of preceding authorities and converted them into degrees of longitude, according to his own calculation that a degree on the equator was equal to 500 stadia, and

sum of these particular distances gives a total of 72 degrees, consequently the entire length of the known world between the meridian of the Islands of the Blest and that of the Sêres is  $177\frac{1}{2}$  degrees, as has been already shown<sup>18</sup>

### CAP 13

§ 1 That such is the length of the inhabited world may also be inferred from his estimate of the distances in a voyage from India to the Gulf of the Sinai and Kattigara, if the sinuosities of the coast and irregularity of the navigation be taken into account, together with the positions as drawn into nearer proximity in the projections, for, he says, that beyond the Cape called Kôry where the Kolkhic Gulf terminates, the Argaric Gulf begins, and that the distance thence to the City of Kouroula, which is situated to the north-east of Kôry is 3,400 stadia § 2 The

consequently a degree of longitude in latitude  $36^{\circ}$  would be equal (approximately) to 400 stadia." The total length of the Mediterranean computed from the stadias moi must have been 24,800 This was an improvement on the estimate of Eratosthenes, but was still excessive In the ancient mode of reckoning sea distances the tendency was almost uniformly towards exaggeration

<sup>18</sup> The different corrections to be applied to Ptolemy's eastern longitudes have been calculated by Sir Henry Rawlinson to amount to *three tenths*, which is within one seventieth part of the empirical correction used by M Gosselin [If we take *one fifth* from Ptolemy's longitude of a place, and deduct  $17^{\circ} 43'$  for the W longitude of Ferro, we obtain very approximately the modern English longitude Thus, for Barygaza, Ptolemy's longitude is  $113^{\circ} 15'$  and  $113^{\circ} 15' - 22^{\circ} 39' - 17^{\circ} 43' = 72^{\circ} 53'$ , or only 5' less than the true longitude W of Greenwich  
—J B]

distance right across may, therefore be estimated at about 2,030 stadia, since we have to deduct a third because of the navigation having followed the curvature of the Gulf, and have also to make allowances for irregularities in the length of the courses run § 3. If now we further reduce this amount by a third, because the sailing, *though subject to interruption*, was taken as continuous, there remain 1350 stadia, determining the position of Kouroula as situated north east from Kôri § 1. If now this distance be referred to a line running parallel to the equator and towards the East and we reduce its length by half in accordance with the intercepted angle, we shall have as the distance between the meridians of Kouroula . . . .

the south-east about 6,300 stadia § 6 And if we deduct from this in like manner as before one-sixth, in order to find the distance parallel to the equator, we shall make the interval between the meridians of these two places 5,250 stadia, or  $10\frac{1}{2}$  degrees

§ 7 At this place the Gangetic Gulf begins, which he estimates to be in circuit 19,000 stadia The passage across it from Paloura to Sada in a direct line from west to east is 1,300 stadia Here, then, we have but one deduction to make, viz., one-third on account of the irregularity of the navigation, leaving as the distance between the meridians of Paloura and Sada 8,670 stadia, or  $17\frac{1}{2}$  degrees § 8 The voyage is continued onward from Sada to the City of Tamala, a distance of 3,500 stadia, in a south-eastward direction If a third be here again deducted on account of irregularities, we find the length of the continuous passage to be 2,330 stadia, but we must further take into account the divergence towards the south-east, and deduct one-sixth, so we find the distance between the meridians in question to be 1,940 stadia, or  $3^{\circ} 50'$  nearly § 9 He next sets down the passage from Tamala to the Golden Khersonese at 1,600 stadia, the direction being still towards the south-east, so that after making the usual deductions there remain as the distance between the two meridians 900 stadia, or  $1^{\circ} 48'$  The

sum of these particulars makes the distance from Cape Kôry to the Golden Khersonese to be  $34^{\circ} 48'$

#### CAP 14

§ 1 Marinus does not state the number of stadia in the passage from the Golden Khersonese to Kattigara, but says that one Alexander had written that the land thereafter faced the south, and that those sailing along this coast reached the city of Zaba in 20 days, and by continuing the voyage from Zaba southward, but keeping more to the left, they arrived after some days at Kattigara § 2 He then makes this distance very great by taking the expression "some days" to mean "many days," assigning as his reason that the days occupied by the voyage were too many to be counted,—a most absurd reason it strikes me § 3 For would even the number of days it takes to go round the whole world be past counting? And was there anything to prevent Alexander writing "many" instead of "some," especially when we find him saying that Diokoros had reported that the voyage from Rhapta to Cape Prasum took "many days" One might in fact with far more reason take "some" to mean "a few," for we have been wont to use this style (of expression)<sup>20</sup> § 4 So now lest we

---

<sup>20</sup> To account for the seeming caprice which led Marinus to take the expression *some days* as equivalent to *ever so many days* it has been supposed that he had

should appear to fall ourselves into the same error, that of adapting conjectures about distances to some number already fixed on, let us compare the voyage from the Golden Khersonese to

adopted the theory that Kattigara, the furthest point eastward that had been reached by sea, was situated nearly under the same meridian as Sern, the furthest point in the same direction that had been reached by land. Unfortunately the expression used by Alexander *some days* did not square with this theory, and it was all the worse in consequence for that expression "The result," says Mr Bunbury (vol II, p 537), "derived by Marinus from these calculations was to place Kattigara at a distance of not less than 100 degrees of longitude or nearly 50,000 stadia, east of Cape Kôry, and as he placed that promontory in  $125\frac{1}{2}$ ° of longitude east of the Fortunate Islands, he arrived at the conclusion that the total length of the inhabited world was, in round numbers  $225^{\circ}$ , equivalent, according to his calculation to 112,500 stadia. As he adopted the system of Poseidônios, which gave only 180,000 stadia for the circumference of the globe, he thus made the portion of it which he supposed to be known, to extend over nearly two thirds of the whole circumference. This position of Cape Kôry, which was adopted by Ptolemy as a position well established, was already nearly  $34^{\circ}$  too far to the east, but it was by giving the enormous extension we have pointed out to the coast of Asia beyond that promontory, that he fell into this stupendous error, which though partly corrected by Ptolemy, was destined to exercise so great an influence upon the future progress of geography." Columbus by accepting Ptolemy's estimate of the circumference of the globe greatly underestimated the distance between the western shores of the Atlantic and the eastern shores of Asia, and hence was led to undertake his memorable enterprise with all the greater hope and courage.

With reference to the position of Cape Kôry as given by Ptolemy, Bunbury says (vol II, p 537, note) "Cape Kôry is placed by Ptolemy who on this point apparently follows Marinus, in  $125^{\circ}$  E Longitude. It is really situated  $80^{\circ}$  E of Greenwich and  $98^{\circ}$  E of Ferro but as Ptolemy made a fundamental error in the position of his primary meridian of nearly  $7^{\circ}$  this must be added to the amount of his error in this instance. He himself states that Cape Kôry was  $120^{\circ}$  E of the mouth of the Baetis, the real difference of longitude being only  $86^{\circ} 20'$ ."

Kattigara, consisting of the 20 days to Zaba and the "some days" thence to Kattigara with the voyage from Arômata to Cape Prasum, and we find that the voyage from Arômata to Rhapta took also 20 days as reported by Theophilos, and the voyage from Rhapta to Prasum "many more days" as reported by Dioskoros, so that we may set side by side the "some days" with the "many days" and like Marinos take them to be equivalent § 5 Since then, we have shown both by reasoning and by stating ascertained facts, that Prasum is under the parallel of  $16^{\circ} 25'$  in South latitude, while the parallel through Cape Arômata is  $4^{\circ} 15'$  in North latitude, making the distance between the two capes  $20^{\circ} 40'$ , we might with good reason make the distance from the Golden Khersonese to Zaba and thence to Kattigara just about the same § 6 It is not necessary to curtail the distance from the Golden Khersonese to Zaba, since as the coast faces the south it must run parallel with the equator We must reduce, however, the distance from Zaba to Kattigara, since the course of the navigation is towards the south and the east, in order that we may find the position parallel to the equator § 7 If again, in our uncertainty as to the real excess of the distances, we allot say one-half of the degrees to each of these distances, and from the  $13^{\circ} 20'$  between Zaba and Kattigara we deduct a third on account of the divergence, we shall have the

distance from the Golden Khersonese to Kattigara along a line parallel to the equator of about  $17^{\circ} 10'$  § 8 But it has been shown that the distance from Cape Kôry to the Golden Khersonese is  $34^{\circ} 48'$ , and so the entire distance from Kôry to Kattigara will be about  $52^{\circ}$

§ 9 But again, the meridian which passes through the source of the River Indus is a little further west than the Northern Promontory of Taprobane, which according to Marinus is opposite to Kôry, from which the meridian which passes through the mouths of the River Bætis is a distance of 8 hours or  $120^{\circ}$  Now as this meridian is  $5^{\circ}$  from that of the Islands of the Blest, the meridian of Cape Kôry is more than  $125^{\circ}$  from the meridian of the Islands of the Blest But the meridian through Kattigara is distant from that through the Islands of the Blest a little more than  $177^{\circ}$  in the latitude of Kôry, each of which contains about the same number of stadia as a degree reckoned along the parallel of Rhodes § 10 The entire length then of the world to the Metropolis of the Sinai may be taken at 180 degrees or an interval of 12 hours, since it is agreed on all hands that this Metropolis lies further east than Kattigara, so that the length along the parallel of Rhodes will be 72,000 stadia

### CAP 17, (part)

§ 3 For all who have crossed the seas to those places agree in assuring me that the district of

Sakhalîtēs in Arabia and the Gulf of the same name, lie to the east of S<sup>v</sup>a g r o<sup>s</sup>, and not to the west of it as stated by Marmos, who also makes Simyilla the emporium in India, to be further west not only than Cape Komari, but also than the Indus § 1 But according to the unanimous testimony both of those who have sailed from us to those places and have for a long time frequented them, and also of those who have come from thence to w<sup>o</sup> Simyilla which by the people of the country is called Timoula, lies only to the south of the mouths of the river, and not also to west of them § 5 From the same informants we have also learned other particulars regarding India and its different provinces and its remote parts.

was not only the road that led to Baktrianē by way of the Stone Tower, but also a road that led into India through Palimbothra. The road again that led from the Metropolis of the Sinai to the Haven at Kattigara runs in a south-west direction, and hence this road does not coincide with the meridian which passes through Sēra and Kattigara, but, from what Marinus tells us, with some one or other of those meridians that are further east.

I may conclude this prefatory matter by quoting from Mr Bunbury his general estimate of the value of Ptolemy's Indian Geography as set forth in his criticism of Ptolemy's Map of India.

His strictures, though well grounded, may perhaps be considered to incline to the side of severity. He says (vol II, pp 642-3), "Some excellent remarks on the portion of Ptolemy's work devoted to India, the nature of the different materials of which he made use, and the manner in which he employed them, will be found in Colonel Yule's introduction to his Map of India, in Dr Smith's *Atlas of Ancient Geography* (pp 22-24). These remarks are indeed in great measure applicable to the mode of proceeding of the Alexandrian Geographer in many other cases also, though the result is particularly conspicuous in India from the fulness of the information—crude and undigested as it was—which he had managed to bring together. The result, as presented to us in the tables of Ptolemy, is a map of utter confusion, out of which it is very difficult to extract in a few instances any definite conclusions." The attempt

of Lassen to identify the various places mentioned by Ptolemy, is based throughout upon the fundamental error of supposing that the geographer possessed a Map of India similar to our own, and that we have only to compare the ancient and modern names in order to connect the two. As Col Yule justly observes " Practically, he (Lassen) deals with Ptolemy's compilation as if that Geographer had possessed a collection of real Indian surveys, with the data systematically co-ordinated. The fact is, that if we should take one of the rude maps of India that appeared in the 16th century (e.g. in Mercator or in Linschoten), draw lines of latitude and longitude and then *more* Ptolemaico construct tables registering the co-ordinates of cities, sources and confluences as they appeared in that map, this would be the sort of

data, upon which such a map must mainly be founded upon anything like sound critical principles. But it must be confessed that the result is far from encouraging. So small a proportion of Ptolemy's names can find a place at all, and so many of those even that appear on the map are admitted by its author to rest upon very dubious authority, that we remain almost wholly in the dark as to the greater part of his voluminous catalogues, and are equally unable to identify the localities which he meant to designate, and to pronounce an opinion upon the real value of his materials."

## BOOK VII

### *Contents*

*Description of the furthest parts of Greater Asia, according to the existing provinces and Satrapies*

- 1 [Tenth Map]  
*of India within the River Ganges*
- 2 [Eleventh Map]  
*of India beyond the Ganges  
of the Sinai*
- 3 [Twelfth Map]  
*of the Island of Taprobanē and the islands surrounding it*
- 4 Outline Sketch of the Map of the Inhabited World  
*Delineation of the Armillary Sphere with the Inhabited World*  
*Sketch of the World in Projection*
- 5 [There are 400 Provinces and 30 Maps]

## CAP I

*Description of India within the Ganges*

§ 1 India within the river Ganges is bounded on the west by the Paropanisadai and Arakhcsia and Gedrōsia along their eastern sides already indicated, on the north by Mount Imaōs along the Sogdianoi and the Sakai lying above it, on the east by the river Ganges, and on the south and again on the west by a portion of the Indian Ocean. The circuit of the coast of this ocean is thus described —

2 In Syrastrēnē, on the Gulf called Kanthi, a roadstead and harbour  $109^{\circ} 30' 20''$   
The most western mouth of

the River Indus called

Sagapa . . . . .	$110^{\circ} 20' 19^{\circ} 50'$
------------------	----------------------------------

The next mouth called Sm-

thôn . . . . .	$110^{\circ} 40' 19^{\circ} 50'$
----------------	----------------------------------

The 3rd mouth called Khry-

soun (the Golden) . . . . .	$111^{\circ} 20' 19^{\circ} 50'$
-----------------------------	----------------------------------

The 4th called Kariphron	$111^{\circ} 40' 19^{\circ} 50'$
--------------------------	----------------------------------

The 5th called Sapara	$112^{\circ} 30' 19^{\circ} 50'$
-----------------------	----------------------------------

The 6th called Sabayaessa	$113^{\circ} 20^{\circ} 15'$
---------------------------	------------------------------

The 7th called Lônibarê	$113^{\circ} 30' 20^{\circ} 15'$
-------------------------	----------------------------------

3 Bardaxēma, a town . . . . .	$113^{\circ} 40' 19^{\circ} 40'$
-------------------------------	----------------------------------

Syrastra, a village . . . . .	$114^{\circ} 19^{\circ} 30'$
-------------------------------	------------------------------

Monoglōsson a mart . . . . .	$114^{\circ} 10' 18^{\circ} 40'$
------------------------------	----------------------------------

*Comment* — Strabo, following Eratosthenes, regarded the Indus as the boundary of India on the west, and this is the view still less generally prevalent. Ptolemy, however, extended within India

the regions which lay immediately to the west of that river, comprehending considerable portions of the countries now known as Balûchistân and Afghânistân He was fully justified in this determination, since many places beyond the Indus, as the sequel will show, bore names of Sanskrit origin, and such parts were ruled from the earliest times down to the Muhammadan conquests by princes of Indian descent The western boundary as given by Ptolemy would be roughly represented by a line drawn from the mouth of the Indus and passing through the parts adjacent to Kandahâr, Ghaznî, Kâbul, Balkh, and even places beyond The Paropanisadai inhabited the regions lying south of the mountain range called Paropanisos, now known as the Central Hindû-Kûsh . One of these towns was Ortospana, which has been identified with the city of Kabul, the Karoura of our author He gives as the eastern boundary of the Paropanisadai a line drawn south from the sources of the river Oxus through the Kaukavian Mountains (the eastern portion of the Hindû-Kûsh) to a point lying in long  $119^{\circ} 30'$  and lat  $39^{\circ}$  Arakhôsia lay to the south of the Paropanisadai—its chief city was Arakhôtos, whose name, according to Rennell, is preserved in Arokhaſ There is a river of the same name which has been identified with the Helmand (the Etymander or Erymanthos of the ancients) but also and more probably with the Urghand-âb or Arkand-âb, which passes by Kandahâr Gedrôsia, the modern Balûchistân, had for its eastern boundary the River Indus The boundary of India on the

north was formed by Mount Imaōs (Sansk *hima*, cold), a name which was at first applied by the Greeks to the Hindū-Kūsh and the chain of the Himmālayas running parallel to the equator, but which was gradually in the course of time transferred to the Bolor range which runs from north to south and intersects them Ptolemy, however, places Imaōs further east than the Bolor, and in the maps which accompany his *Geography*, this meridian chain, as he calls it, is prolonged up to the most northernly plains of the Irtish and Obi.

Sogdiana lay to the north of Baktria and abutted on Skythia, both towards the north and towards the west. The name has been preserved in that of Soghd, by which the country along the Kohik from Bokhārā to Samarkand has always been known. Our author places the Sogdian Mountains (the Pāmir range) at the sources of the Oxus, and the mountains of the Kōmēdai between the sources of that river and the Jaxartes.

The Sakai were located to the east of the Sigdians—Ptolemy describes them as nomadic, as without towns and as living in woods and caves. He specifies as their tribes the Karatai (probably connected with the Kirātai of India), the Komaroī, the Kōmēdai, the Massagetai, the Grynaioī Skythai, the Toōraii and the Byltai. The Sakai it would appear therefore were the Mountaineers of Kafiristān, Badakshān, Shignan, Roshan, Baltistān, or Little Tibet, &c.

### *Syrastrēnē and Larikē*

Syrastrēnē —The name is formed from the Sanskrit Surāshtra (now Sorath) the ancient

name of the Peninsula of Gujarât It is mentioned in the *Periplûs of the Erythraean Sea* as the sea-board of Abêria, and is there praised for the great fertility of its soil, for its cotton fabrics, and for the superior stature of its inhabitants

**K a n t h i** —The Gulf of this name is now called the Gulf of Kachh It separates Kachh, the south coast of which is still called K a n t h a, from the Peninsula of Gujarât In the *Periplûs* the gulf is called Barakô and is described as of very dangerous navigation In Ptolemy, Barakê is the name of an island in the Gulf

Two mouths only of the Indus are mentioned by the followers of Alexander and by Strabo The *Periplûs* gives the same number (7) as Ptolemy There are now 11, but changes are continually taking place Sagapa, the western mouth, was explored by Alexander It separates from the main stream below Thatha In the chronicles of Sindh it is called Sâgâra, from which perhaps its present name Ghâra, may be derived It has long ceased to be navigable

**S i n t h ô n** —This has been identified with the Piti branch of the Indus, one of the mouths of the Baghâr River This branch is otherwise called the Sindhi Khrysoun This is the Kediwârî mouth

**K h a r i p h r o n** —Cunningham identifies this with the Kyâr river of the present day which, he says, leads right up to the point where the southern branch of the Ghâra joins the main river near Lâri-bandar

**S a p a r a** —this is the Wârî mouth

**S a b a l a c s s a** is now the Sir mouth

**Lonibarē** in Sanskrit is Lōnavārī (or Lōnava-dā, or Lavanavārī or Lāvanavātā)<sup>21</sup> It is now the Kori, but is called also the Launi which preserves the old name

**Bardaxēma** —This, according to Yule, is now Pur-bandar, but Dr Burgess prefers Srinagar, a much older place in the same district, having near it a small village called Bardiyā, which, as he thinks, may possibly be a reminiscence of the Greek name

**Syrastra** —This in the Prakritized form is Sorath. It has been identified by Lassen with Junāgadh, a place of great antiquity and historical interest in the interior of the Peninsula, about 40 miles eastward from the coast at Navi-bandar. The meaning of the name is *the old fort*. The place was anciently called Girnagara, from its vicinity to the sacred mountain of Girnār, near which is the famous rock inscribed with the edicts of Asōka, Skandagupta, and Rudra Dāma. Yule identifies Syrastra with Navi-bandar, a port at the mouth of the Bhādar, the largest river of the Peninsula, said to be fed by 99 tributaries. Junāgadh was visited by Hiuen Tsiang, who states that after leaving the kingdom of Valabhī (near Bhaunagar) he went about 100 miles to the west and reached the country of Su-la-ch'a (Saurāshtra) that was subject to the kingdom of Valabhī. See *Tarikh-i-Sorath*, edited by Dr Burgess, pp 33-199.

**Monoglōsson** —This is now represented by Mangrol, a port on the SW coast of the Penin-

<sup>21</sup> *Lavana* is the Sanskrit word for salt.



who gives a vivid account of the difficulties attending the navigation of the gulf and of the estuary which was subject to bores of great frequency and violence.

Kamānē is mentioned as Kammōnē in the *Periplus*, where it is located to the south of the Narmadā estuary. Ptolemy probably errs in placing it to northward of it.

Nausaripa has been identified with Nausari, a place near the coast, about 18 miles south from Surat.

Poulipoula is in Yule's map located at Saurar, which is on the coast south from Nansari. It was perhaps nearer Balsar.

#### 6 Arīakē Sadinōn

Soupara .. ..	112° 30'	15° 30'
Mouth of the River Goatis ..	112° 15'	15° 10'
Downga ..	111° 30'	15°
Mouth of the River Benda	110° 30	15°
Sinnylla, a mart and a cape	110°	14° 45'
Hippokoura ..	111° 45'	14° 10'
Baltipatna	110° 30'	14° 20'

Ārīakē corresponds nearly to Mahārāshtra—the country of the Marīthas. It may have been so called, because its inhabitants being chiefly Aryans and ruled by Indian princes were thereby distinguished from their neighbours, who were either of different descent or subject to foreign domination. The territory was in Ptolemy's time divided among three potentates, one of whom belonged to the dynasty of the Sadines and ruled the prosperous trading communities that occupied the seaboard. This dynasty

is mentioned in the *Periplus* (cap. 52) whence we learn that Sandana after having made himself master of Kallima (now Kalyāna), which had formerly belonged to the house of Saraganes the elder subjected its trade to the severest restrictions, so that if Greek vessels entered its port even accidentally, they were seized and sent under guard to Barigaza, the seat evidently of the paramount authority Sadanes, according to Læsén, corresponds to the Sanskrit word Sādhanā, which means *completion* or *a perfecter*, and also an agent or representative. By Saraganes is probably indicated one of the great Satkarni or Andhra dynasty. The *Periplus* makes Arimē to be the beginning of the kingdom of Mambares and of all India.

Sonparo has been satisfactorily identified by Dr. Burgess with Supārā, a place about 6 miles to the north of Vasu (Basem). It appears to have been from very early times an important centre of trade and it was perhaps the capital of the district that lay around it. Among its ruins have been preserved some monuments, which are of historical interest, and which also attest its high antiquity. These are a fragment of a block of brick like the rocks of Girnar, inscribed with edicts of Asoka, and an old Buddhist Stūpa. The name of Supārā figures conspicuously in the many learned and elaborate treatises which were evoked in the course of the famous controversy regarding the situation of Ophir to which Solomon despatched the ships he had hired from the Tyrians. There can now be little doubt that if Ophir did not mean India itself it designated

some place in India, and probably Supârâ, which lay on that part of the coast to which the traders of the west, who took advantage of the monsoon to cross the ocean, would naturally direct their course. The name moreover of Supârâ is almost identical with that of Ophir when it assumes, as it often does, an initial S, becoming Sôphara as in the *Septuagint* form of the name, and Sofir which is the Coptic name for India, not to mention other similar forms (See Benfey's *Indien*, pp 30-32.)

The mouths of the Goaris and Bênda Yule takes to be the mouths of the Strait that isolates Salsctte and Bombay. The names represent, as he thinks, those of the Gôdâvarî and Bhîma respectively, though these rivers flow in a direction different from that which Ptolemy assigns to them, the former discharging into the Bay of Bengal and the latter into the Krishnâ, of which it is the most considerable tributary. Ptolemy's rivers, especially those of the Peninsula, are in many instances so dislocated, that it is difficult to identify them satisfactorily. It appears to have been his practice to connect the river mouths which he found mentioned in records of coasting voyages with rivers in the interior concerning which he had information from other sources, and whose courses he had only partially traced. But as Yule remarks, with his erroneous outline of the Peninsula this process was too hazardous and the result often wrong. Mr J M Campbell, BoCS, would identify the Goaris with the Vaitarna River, as Gore is situated upon it and was probably the

highest point reached by ships sailing up its stream. The sources of the Vaistarna and the Gôdâvarî are in close propinquity. The Bênda he would identify with the Bhîwandî River, and the close similarity of the names favours this view.

Doungâ is placed in Yule's map to the S.E. of Supârâ on the Strait which separates Salsette from the mainland. Ptolemy, however, through his misconception of the configuration of this part of the coast, places it a whole degree to the west of Supârâ. Mr Campbell, from some similarity in the names, suggests its identity with Dugâd—a place about 10 miles N. of Bhîwandî and near the Vajrabâî hot springs. Dugâd, however, is too far inland to have been here mentioned by Ptolemy, and moreover, it lies to the north of Supârâ, whereas in Ptolemy's enumeration, which is from north to south, it is placed after it.

Simylla—Yule identifies this with Chaul and remarks ‘Chaul was still a chief port of Western India when the Portuguese arrived. Its position seems to correspond precisely both with Simylla and with the Saimûr or Jaimûr (*i.e.* Chaimur, the Arabs having no *ch*) of the Arabian geographers. In Al-Bîrûnî the coast cities run Kambâyat, Bahruj, Sindân (Sanjân), Sufâra (Supârâ), Tana (near Bombay) “There you enter the country of Lârân, where is Jaimûr.” Istakhri inverts the position of Sindân and Sufâra, but Saimûr is still furthest south.” In a note he adds “Ptolemy mentions that Simylla was called by the natives Timula (probably Tiamula), and

putting together all these forms, Tîmula, Sîmylla, Saimûr, Chaimûr, the real name must have been something like Chaimul or Châmul, which would modernize into Chaul, as Chamari and Prâmara into Chauri and Pawâr" Chaul or Chêñwal lies 23 miles S of Bombay Pandit Bhagvânâlâ Indraji, Ph D., suggested as a better identification Chimûla in Trombay Island, this being supported by one of the Kanhêri inscriptions in which Chimûla is mentioned, apparently as a large city like Supârâ and Kalyâna in the neighbourhood Mr Campbell thus discusses the merits of these competing identifications—"Sîmylla has a special interest, as Ptolemy states that he learned some of his Geography of Western India from people who traded to Sîmylla and had been familiar with it for many years, and had come from there to him—Ptolemy speaks of Sîmylla as a point and emporium, and the author of the *Periplûs* speaks of it as one of the Konkan local marts Sîmylla till lately was identified with Chaul But the discovery of a village Chembur on Trombay Island in Bombay Harbour, has made it doubtful whether the old trade centre was there or at Chaul In spite of the closer resemblance of the names, the following reasons seem to favour the view that Chaul, not Chimûla, was the Greek Sîmylla First, it is somewhat unlikely that two places so close, and so completely on the same line of traffic as Kalyân (the Kalliena of the *Periplûs*) and Chimûla should have flourished at the same time Second, the expression in the *Periplûs* 'below ( $\mu\epsilon\tau\alpha$ ) Kalliena other local marts are Semulla' points to some place down the coast rather than

to a town in the same Harbour as Kallienā, which according to the Author's order north to south should have been named before it Third, Ptolemy's point (promontorium of Simylla has no meaning if the town was Chembur in Trombay But it fits well with Chaul, as the headland would then be the south shore of Bombay Harbour, one of the chief capes in this part of the coast, the south head of the gulf or bay whose north head is at Bassein This explanation of the Simylla point is borne out by Fryer (1675) *New Account* (pp 77-82), who talked of Bombay 'facing Chaul' and notices the gulf or hollow in the shore stretching from Bassein to Chaul Point The old (1540) Portuguese name 'Chaul Island' for the isle of Kennery of the south point of Bombay, further supports this view" Ptolemy's map gives great prominence to the projection of land at Simylla, which (through a strange misconception on his part, for which it is impossible to account) is therein represented as the great south-west point of India, whence the coast bends at once sharply to the east instead of pursuing its course continuously to the south

**Hippokoura** —This word may be a Greek translation (in whole or in part) of the native name of the place Hence Pandit Bhagvānlāl Indraji was led to identify it with Ghodabandar (Horse-port) a town on the Thana Strait, whose position however is not in accordance with Ptolemy's data Mr Campbell again has suggested an identification free from this objection Ghoregāon (Horse-village) in Kolāba, a place at the head of a navigable river, which was once a

seat of trade Yule takes it, though doubtfully, as being now represented by Kudâ near Râjapûr Hippokourios was one of the Greek epithets of Poseidôn Ptolemy mentions another Hippokoura, which also belonged to Ariâkâ and was the Capital of Baleokouros Its situation was inland

Bal tipatna — This place is mentioned in the *Periplûs* under the somewhat altered form Palai patmaî Yule locates it, but doubtfully, at Daibal Fra Paolino identified it with Balaer patam (the Balcopatam of Rennell) where the king of Cananor resided but it lies much too far south to make the identification probable Mr Campbell has suggested Pali, which he describes as "a very old holy town at the top of the Nagôtna river" Its position, however, being too far north and too far from the sea, does not seem to suit the requirements

### 7 (Ariakê) of the Pirates

Mandagara	.	113°	14°
Byzanteion		113° 40'	14° 40'
Khersonêbos		114° 20'	14° 30
Armagara		114° 20'	14° 20
Mouth of the River Nanagouna		114° 30'	13° 50
Nitra, a mart		115° 30'	14° 40'

### Ariake

Piracy which from very early times seems to have infested, like a pernicious parasite, the commerce of the Eastern Seas, flourished nowhere so vigorously as on the Konkan Coast along which richly freighted merchantmen were continually plying Here bands of pirates, formed into regularly organized communities like those

of the Thags in the interior of the country, had established themselves in strongholds contiguous to the creeks and bays, which were numerous on the coast, and which afforded secure harbourage to their cruisers. The part of the coast which was subject to their domination and which was in consequence called the Pirate Coast, extended from the neighbourhood of Simylla to an emporium called Nitra, the Mangaruth of Kosmas and the Mangalur of the present day. Whether the native traders took any precautions to protect their ships from these highwaymen of the ocean is not known, but we learn from Pliny, that the merchantmen which left the Egyptian ports heading for India carried troops on board well-armed for their defence. Mr Campbell has ingeniously suggested that by Ἀνδρῶν Πειρατῶν Ptolemy did not mean pirates, but the powerful dynasty of the Andhrabhritya that ruled over the Konkan and some other parts of the Dekhan. He says (*Bombay Gazetteer*, Thâna, vol II, p 415 n 2nd), "Perhaps because of Pliny's account of the Konkan pirates, Ptolemy's phrase *Ariâkê Andrôn Peiratôn* has been taken to mean Pirate Ariâkê. But Ptolemy has no mention of pirates on the Konkan Coast, and, though this does not carry much weight in the case of Ptolemy, the phrase *Andrôn Peiratôn* is not correct Greek for pirates. This and the close resemblance of the words suggest that *Andrôn Peiratôn* may originally have been *Andhra-bhrityon*." On this it may be remarked, that though Ptolemy has no mention of pirates on the Konkan Coast this is not in the least sur-

prising, since his work is almost exclusively geographical, and whatever information on points of history we obtain from it is more from inference than direct statement. Further, I do not see why the expression ἀνδρῶν Πειρατῶν if taken to mean pirates should be called incorrect Greek, since in latter Attic it was quite a common usage to join ἀνήρ with titles, professions and the like.

**Mandagara** — This may be a transliteration, somewhat inexact, of Madangarh (House of Love) the name of a fort about 12 miles inland from Bankût. More likely the place is Mândlâ on the north bank of the Sautrî river opposite Bankût, and now known as Kolmândlâ and Bâg and Bâgmândlâ Mangalûr, to which as far as the name goes it might be referred, is too far south for the identification.

**Byzanteion** — The close correspondence of this name with that of the famous capital on the Bosporos has led to the surmise that a colony of Greeks had established themselves on this coast for commercial purposes, notwithstanding the danger to be apprehended from attacks by the pirates in their neighbourhood. It appears however quite unlikely the Greeks should have formed a settlement where few, if any, of the advantages could be enjoyed which generally determined their choice of a locality in which to plant a colony. The name may perhaps be a transliteration of Vijayanta, now Vijayadurga, the south entrance of the Vâghotan river in Ratnagiri. The word means the Fort of Victory.

**Khersonêbos** — This seems to be the peninsula which is in the neighbourhood of Goa. It is

mentioned in the *Periplus* as one of the haunts of the pirates, and as being near the island of the Kameitai, that is, St George's Island

**A**rmagara — This is placed near the mouth of the Nanagouna river, which may be taken to mean here the river on which Sadāivagarh stands. The Nanagouna however must be identified with the Tapti, whose embouchure is about 6° farther north. Its name is Sanskrit, meaning 'possessed of many virtues'. To account for this extraordinary dislocation, Yule supposes that Ptolemy, having got from his Indian lists a river Nānīguna rising in the Vindhya, assigns to it three discharges into the sea by what he took for so many delta branches, which he calls respectively Goaris, Benda and Nanaguna. This, he adds, looked possible to Ptolemy on his map with its excessive distortion of the western coast and his entire displacement of the western Ghāts. Mr Campbell suggests that Ptolemy may have mistaken the Nānā Pass for a river.

Nitra is the most southern of the pirate ports, and is mentioned by Pliny in a passage where he remarks that ships frequenting the great emporium of Mouziris ran the risk of being attacked by pirates who infested the neighbourhood, and possessed a place called Nitra. Yule refers it as has been already stated to Mangalur.

### 8 Limyrikē

Tyndis, a city	116°	14° 30'
Bramagara	116° 45'	14° 20'
Kalaikārias ..	116° 40'	14°
Mouziris, an emporium	117°	14°

Mouth of the River Pseudos-

tomos .. .		117° 20'	14°
Podoperoura . .		117° 40'	14° 15'
Semnē . .		118°	14° 20'
Koreoura		118° 40'	14° 20'
Bakarei . .		119° 30'	14° 30'
Mouth of the River Baris .		120°	14° 20'

**Limyrikē** —Lassen was unable to trace this name to any Indian source, but Caldwell has satisfactorily explained its origin. In the introduction to his *Draudian Grammar* he states (page 14), that in the Indian segment of the Roman maps called the *Ptolemaic Tables* the portion of India to which this name is applied is called Damirike, and that we can scarcely err in identifying this name with the Tamil country since Damirike evidently means *Damir-il*: In the map referred to there is moreover a district called Seytia Dymirice, and it appears to have been this word which by a mistake of Δ for Δ Ptolemy wrote Lymirike. The D, he adds, retains its place in the *Cosmography* of the Geographer of Ravenna, who repeatedly mentions Dimirica as one of the 3 divisions of India. Ptolemy and the author of the *Periplus* are at one in making Tyndis one of the first or most northern ports in Limyrikē. The latter gives its distance from Barygaza at 7,000 stadia, or nearly 12 degrees of latitude, if we reckon 600 stadia to the degree. Notwithstanding this authoritative indication, which makes Limyrikē begin somewhere near Kalikat (11° 15' N lat) its frontier has generally been placed nearly 3 degrees further north, Tyndis having

been located at Barcelôr This error has been rectified by Yule, whose adherence to the data of the *Periplûs* has been completely justified by the satisfactory identification of Mouziris (the southern rival in commercial prosperity of Barygaza) with Kranganur, instead of with Mangalur as previously accepted The capital of Limyrikê was Karûr, on the Kâvêri, where resided Kérobotros, i.e., Kêralaputra, the Chîra king

Tyndis is described in the *Periplûs* as a place of great note pertaining to the kingdom of Kérobotras, and situate near the sea at a distance of 500 stadia from Mouziris This distance north from Kranganur with which, as has been stated, Mouziris has been identified, brings us to Tanûr "Tanûr itself," says Yule, "may be Tyndis, it was an ancient city, the seat of a principality, and in the beginning of the 16th century had still much shipping and trade Perhaps, however, a more probable site is a few miles further north, Kadalandi, i.e Kadalandi, 'the raised ground by the sea,' standing on an inlet 3 or 4 miles south of Bêpur It is not now a port, but persons on the spot seem to think that it must formerly have been one, and in communication with the Backwater" He adds in a note supplied by Dr Burnell, "The composition of *Kadal* and *Tundi* makes *Kadalundi* by Tamil rules" The pepper country called Kottonarîke was immediately adjacent to Tyndis, which no doubt exported great quantities of that spice

Bramagara is placed in the table half a degree to the east of Tyndis, i.e., really to the south of it, since Ptolemy makes the Malabar

Coast run east instead of south. The name may be a transliteration of the Sanskrit *Brahmāgāra*, which means 'the abode of the Brahmins.' The Brahmins of the south of India appear in those days to have consisted of a number of isolated communities that were settled in separate parts of the country, and that were independent each of the other. This, as Lassen remarks (*Ind Alt.*, vol III, p 193) is in harmony with the tradition according to which the Arya Brahmins were represented as having been settled by Tarasurāma in 61 villages, and as having at first lived under a republican constitution. In section 74 Ptolemy mentions a town called *Brahmire* belonging to the Brahmanoi Magoi, i.e., 'sons of the Brahmins.'

**Kalaikarias** —The last half of this word (*Kerias*) is doubtless the Tamil word for "coast," *karei*, which appears also in another of Ptolemy's names, *Peringkarei*, mentioned as one of the inland towns *Pandionoi* (sec 89). I find in Arrowsmith's large Map of India a place called 'Chalaeoory' to the NE of Kranganur, and at about the same distance from it as our author makes Kalaikarias distant from Mouziris.

**Mouziris** may unhesitatingly be taken to represent the *Muviri* of *Muviri-Kodlu* which says Yule, appears in one of the most ancient of Malabar inscriptions as the residence of the King of Kadangalur or Kranganur and is admitted to be practically identical with that now extinct city. It is to Kranganur he adds that all the Malabar traditions point as their oldest seaport of renown, to the Christians it was the landing place of St Thomas the Apostle.

Mouth of the river *Pseudostomos*, or 'false mouth' According to the table the river enters the sea at the distance of  $\frac{1}{3}$  of a degree below Mouziris It must have been one of the streams that discharge into the Backwater

*Podo peroura* must be the Poudopatana of Indikopleustēs—a word which means 'new town,' and is a more correct form than Ptolemy's *Podo-peroura*

*Semnē*—The Sanskrit name for Buddhist Ascetics was *Śramana*, in Tamil *Samana*, and as we find that this is rendered as *Semnor* by Clemens Alexandrinus, we may infer that Semnē was a town inhabited by Buddhists, having perhaps a Buddhist temple of noted sanctity For a different explanation see Lassen's *Ind Alt* vol III, p 194

*Bakarei* is mentioned by Pliny as Beare, and as Bakarē by the Author of the *Periplūs*, who places it at the mouth of the river on which, at a distance of 120 stadia from the sea was situated the great mart called Nelkynda, or Melkynda as Ptolemy writes it The river is described as difficult of navigation on account of shallows and sunken reefs, so that ships, despatched from Nelkynda were obliged to sail down empty to Bakarē and there take in their cargoes The distance of Nelkynda from Mouziris is given at about 500 stadia, and this whether the journey was made by sea or by river or by land Upon this Yule thus remarks "At this distance south from Kranganū we are not able to point to a quite satisfactory Nelkynda The site which has been selected as the most probable is nearly 800

stadia south of Mouziris This is Kallada, on a river of the same name entering the Backwater, the only navigable river on this south-west coast except the Perri-âr near Kranganur The Kallada river is believed to be the *Kanëtti* mentioned in the Kéralotatti legendary history of Malabar and the town of Kallada to be the town of Kanëtti It is now a great entrepôt of Travankor pepper, which is sent from this to ports on the coast for shipment That Nelkynda cannot have been far from this is clear from the vicinity of the *Πυρρόν ὅπος* or *Red-Hill* of the *Periplûs* (sec 58) There can be little doubt that this is the bar of red laterite which, a short distance south of Quilon, cuts short the Backwater navigation, and is thence called the Warkallê barrier It forms abrupt cliffs on the sea, without beach, and these cliffs are still known to seamen as the *Red Cliffs* This is the only thing like a sea cliff from Mount d'Ely to Cape Comorn." The word Bakarei may represent the Sanskrit *द्वाराला*, 'a door'

Mouth of the river Baris —The Baris must be a stream that enters the Backwater in the neighbourhood of Quilon

#### 9 Country of the Aiol

Melkynda	.....	120° 20'	14° 20'
Elangkôn (or Elangkôr), a mart	.....	120° 40'	14°
Kottuara, the metropolis	.....	121°	14°
Bammala	.....	121° 20'	14° 15'
Komaria, a cape and town	.....	121° 45'	13° 30'

### *Limirike and country of the Aioi*

The Aioi — This people occupied the southern parts of Travankor. Their name is perhaps a transliteration of the Sanskrit *ahi*, ‘a snake,’ and if so, this would indicate the prevalence among them of serpent worship. Cunningham, in his *Geography of Ancient India* (p 552), states that in the Chino-Japanese Map of India the alternative name of Malyakūta is Hai-an-men, which suggests a connection with Ptolemy’s Afoi. I note that the entrance to the Backwater at Kalikoulan is called the Great Ayibicca Bar, and an entrance farther south the Little Ayibicca Bar. The first part of this name may also be similarly connected.

Melkynda, as already stated is the Nelkynda of the *Periplūs*, which places it, however, in Limyrikē. Pliny speaks of it as *portus gentis Neacyndon*. (v 11 Neacrindon, Neachyndon, Nelcyndon) The name, according to Caldwell, probably means West Kynda, that is Kannetri the south boundary of Kērala Proper. When Mangalur was taken as the representative of Mouziris, Nelkynda was generally identified with Nelisuram, which besides the partial resemblance of its name, answered closely in other respects to the description of Nelkynda in the *Periplūs*—*Cf C Müller, not ad Peripl., Sec 54 Lassen, Inp Alt, vol III p 190 Bunbury, Hist of Anc Geog vol I pp 467 8*

Elangkōn or Elangkōr is now Quilon, otherwise written Kulam.

“Kottiara,” says Caldwell, “is the name of a place in the country of the Aioi of Ptolemy in the Paralia of the Author of the *Periplūs*, identical

in part with South Travankor. Apparently it is the Cottara of Pliny, and I have no doubt it is the Cottara of the *Ptolemaic Tables*. It is called by Ptolemy the Metropolis, and must have been a place of considerable importance. The town referred to is probably Kôttâra, or as it is ordinarily written by Europeans 'Kotaur,' the principal town in South Travankor, and now as in the time of the Greeks distinguished for its commerce" *Draud Gram*, Introd p 98. The name is derived from *kôd* 'a foot,' and *âr-û* 'a river.'

B a m m a l a —Mannert would identify this with Buhta, a place a little to the north of Anjenga, but this is too far north. It may perhaps be the Bahta of the *Periplus*.

K o m a r i a, a cape and a town —We have no difficulty in recognizing here Cape Comorin, which is called in the *Periplus* Komai and Komarei. The name is derived from the Sanskrit *lumâri*, 'a virgin,' one of the names of the Goddess Dûrgâ who presided over the place, which was one of peculiar sanctity. The Author of the *Periplus* has made the mistake of extending the Peninsula southward beyond Comorin.

We may here compare Ptolemy's enumeration of places on the west coast with that of the *Periplus* from Barygaza to Cape Comorin.

<i>Ptolemy</i>	<i>Periplus</i>
Barygaza	Barygaza
Nousaripa	Akabarou
Poulipoula	
Soupara	Souppara
Dounga	Kallienâ

<i>Ptolemy</i>	<i>Periplús</i>
Simylla	Semylla
Island of Milizēgyris	Mandagora
Hippokoura	
Baltipatna	Palaipatmai
Mandagora	Melzeigara
Is of Heptanēsia	
Byzanteion	Byzantium
	Toparon
	Tyrannosboas
	3 separate groups of islands
Khersonēsos	Khersonēsos
Armagara	Is of Leukē
Is of Peperine	
Nitra	Naoura
Tyndis	Tvndis
Trinēsia Islands	
Bramagara	
Kalaikarias	
Mouziris	Mouziris
Podoperoura	
Sennē	
Is Leukē	
Koreoura	
Melkynda	Nelkynda
Bakarei	Bakarē
Elangkōn	Mons Pyrrhos
Kottiara	
Bammola	Balita
Komaria	Komar

There is a striking agreement between the two lists, especially with respect to the order in

which the places enumerated succeed each other. There are but three exceptions to the coincidence and these are unimportant. They are, Milizegyris, Mandagora and the Island Leukē i.e. 'white island,' if the name be Greek. The Melzeigara of the *Periplus*, Vincent identifies with Jayagadh or Sidi, perhaps the Sigerus of Pliny (ib VI, e xxvi, 100) Ptolemy makes Milizēgyris to be an island about 20 miles south of Simylla. There is one important place which he has failed to notice, Kalliena now Kalyana, a well-known town not far from Bombay.

#### 10 Country of the Kareoī

In the Kolkhe Gulf, where there is the Pearl Fishery —

Sōsikourai	122°	14°30'
Kolkhoī, anemporium	123°	15°
Mouth of the river Sōlēn ..	124°	14°40'

The country of the Kareoī corresponds to South Tinneveh. The word *karei*, as already stated is Tamil, and means 'coast'. The Kolkhe Gulf is now known as the Gulf of Manār. The pearl fishery is noticed in the *Periplūs*.

Sōsikourai — By the change of S into T we find the modern representative of this place to be Tutikorin (Tuttukudi) a harbour in Tinneveli, where there are pearl banks, about 10 miles south of Kolkhoī. This mart lay on the Sōlēn or Tamraparnī river. Tutikorin in the *Peutinger Tables* is called *Colcis Indorum*. The Tamil name is Kolkei, almost the same as the Greek. Yule in his work on Marco Polo (vol II, pp 360 61) gives the following account of this

place, based on information supplied by Dr Caldwell —

"Kolkhoi, described by Ptolemy and the Author of the *Periplus* as an emporium of the pearl trade, as situated on the sea-coast to the east of Cape Comorin, and as giving its name to the Kolkhic Gulf or Gulf of Manâr has been identified with Korkai, the mother-city of Kayal (the Coel of Marco Polo) Korkai, properly Kolka (the l being changed into r by a modern refinement, it is still called Kolka in Malayalam), holds an important place in Tamil traditions, being regarded as the birth-place of the Pândya dynasty, the place where the princes of that race ruled previously to their removal to Madurâ. One of the titles of the Pândya kings is 'Rules of Korkai' Korkai is situated two or three miles inland from Kayal, higher up the river. It is not marked in the G Trig Surv map, but a village in the immediate neighbourhood of it called Mâramangalam 'the good fortune of the Pândyas' will be found in the map. This place, together with several others in the neighbourhood, on both sides of the river, is proved by inscriptions and relics to have been formerly included in Korkai, and the whole intervening space between Korkai and Kayal exhibits traces of ancient dwellings. The people of Kayal maintain that their city was originally so large as to include Korkai, but there is much more probability in the tradition of the people of Korkai, which is to the effect that Korkai itself was originally a seaport, that as the sea retired it became less and less suitable for trade, that Kayal rose as Korkai

fell, and that at length, as the sea continued to retire, Kayal also was abandoned. They add that the trade for which the place was famous in ancient times was the trade in pearls."

Mouth of the River Sôlêñ—This river is identified by Lassen with the Sylaur, which he says is the largest northern tributary of the Tâmrâparnî. On this identification Yule remarks—"The 'Syllâr' of the maps, which Lassen identifies with Sôlêñ, originates, as Dr Caldwell tells me, in a mistake. The true name is 'Sitt-âr,' 'Little River,' and it is insignificant." The Tâmrâparnî is the chief river of Tinneveli. It entered the sea south of Kolkhoi. In Tamil poetry it is called Porunei. Its Pâli form is Tambapanni. How it came to be called the Sôlêñ remains as yet unexplained. Sôla is an element in several South Indian geographical names, meaning Chôla. The word Tâmrâparnî itself means 'red-leaved' or 'copper-coloured sand.' Taprobane, the classical name for Ceylon, is this word in an altered form.

## 11 Land of Pandion

In the Organic Gulf, Cape

Kôry, called also Kalligikon	125° 40'	12° 20'
Argeirou, a town	125° 15'	14° 30'
Salour, a mart	. 125° 20'	15° 30'

The land of Pandion included the greater portion of the Province of Tinneveli, and extended as far north as to the highlands in the neighbourhood of the Koimbatur gap. Its western boundary was formed by the southern range of the Ghâts, called by Ptolemy Mount Bêttagô, and it had a sea-board on the east, which extended for some

distance along the Sinus Organicus, or what is now called Palk's Passage

The Author of the *Periplūs* however assigns it wider limits, as he mentions that Nelkynda, which lay on the Malabar Coast, as well as the pearl fishery at Kolkhoi, both belonged to the Kingdom of Pandion. The kingdom was so called from the heroic family of the Pāndya, which obtained sovereign power in many different parts of India. The Capital, called Madurā, both by Pliny and by our author, was situated in the interior. Madurā is but the Tamil manner of pronouncing the Sanskrit *Mathurā*, which also designated the sacred city on the Jamnā famous as the birthplace and the scene of the exploits of Krishna, who assisted the Pandus in their war with the Kurus. The city to this day retains its ancient name, and thus bears, so to speak, living testimony to the fact that the Aryans of Northern India had in early times under Pāndya leaders established their power in the most southern parts of the Peninsula.

The Orgallie Gulf lay beyond the Kolkhe Gulf, from which it was separated by the Island of Rāmēsvaram and the string of shoals and small islands which almost connect Ceylon with the mainland. It derived its name from Argalou, a place mentioned in the *Periplūs* as lying inland and celebrated for a manufacture of muslin adorned with small pearls. The northern termination of the gulf was formed by Cape Kalimīr.

Cape Kōry —Ptolemy makes Kōry and Kalligikon to be one and the same cape. They are

however distinct, Kôry being the headland which bounded the Organic Gulf on the south, and Kaligikon being Point Kalimîr, which bounded it on the north. The curvature of this Gulf was called by the Hindus Râmâdhanuh, or '*Râma's bow*,' and each end of the bow Dhanuh-kôti or simply Kôti. The Sanskrit word *kôti* (which means 'end, tip or corner') becomes in Tamil *kôdi*, and this naturally takes the form of Kôri or Kôry. The southern Kôti, which was very famous in Indian story, was formed by the long spit of land in which the Island of Râmësvaram terminates. It is remarkable, as Caldwell remarks, that the Portuguese, without knowing anything of the *Kâpu* of the Greeks, called the same spit of land Cape Ramaneoru. Ptolemy's identification of Cape Kôry with Kalligikon or Point Kalimîr is readily explained by the fact just stated that each of these projections was called Kôti.

important projection of India towards the south, and as a well-established point from which the distances of other places might conveniently be calculated He placed it in 125 degrees of E longitude from Ferro, and at 120 degrees east of the mouth of the River Bætis in Spain from which, however, its distance is only 86½ degrees Its latitude is 9° 20' N and that of Cape Comorin 8° 5', but Ptolemy makes the difference in latitude to be only 10'

The identity of Kalligikon with Point Kalimir has already been pointed out *Calimere* is a corrupt form of the Tamil compound Kallimedu, *Euphorbia eminence*, and so the first part of the Greek name exactly coincides with the Tamil Kalli which means the *Euphorbia* plant, or perhaps a kind of cactus Pliny mentions a projection on the side of India we are now considering which he calls Calungon, and which the similarity of name has led some to identify with Kalligikon, and therefore with Point Kalimir It seems better, however, taking into account other considerations which we need not here specify, to identify this projection with Point Gôdâvari

Before concluding this notice we may point out how Ptolemy has represented the general configuration of the eastern coast beyond the Organic Gulf His views here are almost as erroneous as those he entertained concerning the west coast, which, it will be remembered, he did not carry southward to Cape Comorin, but made to terminate at the point of Simylla, thus effacing from the Map of India the whole of the Peninsula

The actual direction of the east coast from point Kalimîr is first due north as far as the mouths of the Krishnâ, and thereafter north-east up to the very head of the Bay of Bengal Ptolemy, however, makes this coast run first towards the south-east, and this for a distance of upwards of 600 miles as far as Paloura, a place of which the site has been fixed with certainty as lying near the southern border of Katak, about 5 or 6 miles above Ganjâm Ptolemy places it at the extremity of a vast peninsula, having for one of its sides the long stretch of coast just mentioned, and he regards it also as marking the point from which the Gangetic Gulf begins The coast of this gulf is made to run at first with an inclination to westward, so that it forms at its outset the other side of the peninsula Its curvature is then to the north-east, as far as to the most eastern mouth of the Ganges, and thence its direction is to the south-east till it terminates at the cape near Têmala, now called Cape Negrais, the south-west projection of Pegu

### 12 Country of the Batoi

Nikama, the Metropolis .	126°	16°
Thelkheir	127°	16° 10'
Kouroula, a town	128°	16°

### 13 In Paralia specially so called the country of the Toringoi

Mouth of the River Khabêros	129°	15° 15'
Khabêris, an emporium	128° 30'	15° 40'
Sabouras, an emporium	130°	14° 30'

The Batoi occupied the district extending from the neighbourhood of Point Kâlimîr to the

southern mouth of the River Kâvêri and corresponding roughly with the Province of Tanjore

N i k a m a, the capital, has been identified with Nagapatam (Nâgapattanam) by Yule, who also identifies (but doubtfully) Thełkyr with Nagor and Kouroula with Karikal

P a r a l i a, as a Greek word, designated generally any maritime district, but as applied in India it designated exclusively (*ἰδίως*) the seaboard of the Tôringoi Our author is here at variance with the *Periplûs*, which has a Paralia extending from the Red Cliffs near Quilon to the Pearl-Fishery at Kolkhoi, and comprising therefrom the coast-lines of the Aioi and the Kareoi "This Paralia," says Yule, "is no doubt Purali, an old name of Travankor, from which the Râja has a title *Puralisan*, 'Lord of Purali' But the "instinctive striving after meaning" which so often modifies the form of words, converted this into the Greek *Παραλία*, 'the coast' Dr Caldwell however inclines rather to think that *Paralia* may possibly have corresponded to the native word meaning *coast* viz *karei*

In see 91, where Ptolemy gives the list of the inland towns of the Tôringoi, he calls them the Sôrétai, mentioning that their capital was Orthoura, where the king, whose name was Sôrnagos, resided In see 68 again he mentions the Sôrai as a race of nomads whose capital was Sôra where their king, called Arkatos, resided Caldwell has pointed out the identity of the different names used to designate this people *Σῶπα*, he says, "which we meet alone and in various combinations in these (Ptolemy's) notices represents the

name of the northern portion of the Tamilian nation. This name is Chôla in Sanskrit, Chôlă in Telugu, but in Tamil Sôra or Chôra. The accuracy with regard to the name of the people is remarkable, for in Tamil they appear not only as Sôras, but also as Sôragas and Sôriyas, and even as Sôringas. Their country also is called Sôragam. The *r* of the Tamil word Sôra is a peculiar sound not contained in Telugu, in which it is generally represented by *d* or *l*. The transliteration of this letter as *r* seems to show that then, as now, the use of this peculiar *r* was a dialectic peculiarity of Tamil."

The River Khabêros is the Kâvêrî. Kâvêra is the Sanskrit word for saffron. Kâvêrî, according to a legend in the *Harivansa*, was changed by her father's curse from one-half of the Gaṅgâ into the river which bears her name, and which was therefore also called Ardha-gangâ, i.e., half-gangâ. Karoura, the residence of the Chera king, was upon this river.

Dr Burnell identified Khabêris with Kâvêripattam (*Ind Ant* vol VII, p 40) which lies a little to the north of Tranquebar (Talangambadi) at the mouth of the Pudu-Kâvêrî (New Kâvêrî).

Sabouras — This mart Yule refers dubiously to Gudalur (Cuddalore) near the mouth of the S Penn-âr River.

#### 14 The Arouarnois (Arravai)

Pôdoukê, an emporium	... 13° 15'	14° 30'
Melangê, an emporium	... 13°	14° 20'
Mouth of the River Tyna .....	13° 40'	12° 45'

Kottis .		132° 20'	12° 10'
Manarpha (or Manaharpha, a mart)	.	133° 10'	12°
15 Maisôlia			
Mouth of the River Maisôlos		134°	11° 40'
Kontakossyla, a mart . .		134° 30'	11° 40'
Koddoura .		135°	11° 30'
Allosygnê, a mart		135° 40'	11° 20'
The point of departure ( <i>aphe-</i> <i>térion</i> ) for ships bound for Khrysê .		136° 20'—11°	

The territory of the Ar ou ar no i (Arvarnoi) was permeated by the River Tyna, and extended northward to Maisôlia, the region watered by the River Maisôlos in the lower parts of its course. Opinions differ with regard to the identification of these two rivers, and consequently also of the places mentioned in connection with them. Some of the older commentators, followed by Yule, take the Tyna to be the Pinâka or Penn-âr River, and the Maisôlos the Krishnâ Lassen again, and recent writers generally, identify the Tyna with the Krishnâ and the Maisôlos with the Gôdâvari. To the former theory there is the objection that if the Gôdâvari be not the Maisôlos, that most important of all the rivers on this coast is left unnoticed, and Lassen accordingly asks why should the small Penn-âr appear and the great Gôdavari be omitted. To this Yule rejoins, "We cannot say why, but it is a curious fact that in many maps of the 16th and 17th and even of the 18th century the Gôdâvari continues to be omitted altogether. A beautiful

map in Valentijn (vol V), shows Gôdâvari only as a river of small moment, under a local name." He argues further that the name Tynna is applied to the Krishnâ is unaccounted for. As identified with the Penn-âr or Pmâka, TYNNA is an easy error for HYNNA.

Pôdouke.—This mart is mentioned in the *Periplus* along with Kurnâ and Sopitma as ports to which merchants from Lamyrike and the north were wont to resort. According to Böhlen, Ritter and Benfey, it is Puduchélier (Pondicherry). Lassen and Yule agree, however, in placing it at Pulikat, which is nearly two degrees further north.

In Yule's map Melangê is placed at Krishnapatam, a little to the south of the North Penn-âr River, which as we have seen, he identifies with the Tyna. Its name closely approximates to that of the capital Malanga, and hence Cunningham, who takes the Maisolos to be the Gôdâvari, and who locates Malanga in the neighbourhood of Elur, identifies Melangê with Bandar Malanka (near one of the Gôdâvari mouths) which he assumes to have been so called from its being the port (*bandar*) with which the capital that lay in the interior communicated with the sea. See *Geog of Anc Ind*, pp 539-40.

Manarpha (or Manal arpha)—This mart lay at the mouth of a river which still preserves traces of its name, being called the Manâra. Kottis lay not very far to the north of it.

Maisolia is the name of the coast between the Krishna and the Godâvari, and onward thence to the neighbourhood of Paloura. It is the Masalia

of the *Periplūs* which describes it as the sea-board of a country extending far inland, and noted for the manufacture, in immense quantities, of the finer kinds of cotton fabrics. The name is preserved in Masulipattam, which has been corrupted for the sake of a meaning into Machilipatam, which means *fish-town*. The Metropolis called Pityndra was seated in the interior.

Kontakossyla transliterates, though not quite correctly, the Sanskrit Kantakasthala, 'place of thorns'. In Yule's map it is placed inland near the Krishnā, in the neighbourhood of Kondapallo, in which its name seems to be partly preserved.

Koddoura has been identified with Gudur a town near Masulipatam.

Allosygnē may perhaps be now represented by Korin ga (Koranja) a port situated a little beyond Point Gôdâvarî. Its distance from the point next mentioned in the Tables may be roughly estimated at about 230 miles, but Ptolemy makes it to be only  $\frac{2}{3}$  of a degree, and thus leaves undescribed an extensive section of the coast comprising the greater part of the sea-board of the Kalingai. A clue to the explanation of this error and omission is supplied by a passage in the *Periplūs*, which runs to the effect that ships proceeding beyond Maisolia stood out from the shore and sailing right across a bay made a direct passage to the ports of Désarénē, i.e. Orissa. It may hence be inferred that navigators who came from a distance to trade in those seas would know little or nothing of a coast which they were

careful to avoid, and that Ptolemy in consequence was not even so much as aware of its existence

The point whence ships took their departure for Khrysē Yule places at the mouth of a little river called the Baroua (the Puacotta of Lindschoten) lying under Mt Mahendra in lat  $18^{\circ} 54' N$  This *aphetérion*, he points out, was not a harbour as Lassen supposed, from which voyages to Khrysē were made, but the point of departure from which vessels bound thither struck off from the coast of India, while those bound for the marts of the Ganges renewed their coasting. The course of navigation here described continued to be followed till modern times, as Yule shows by a quotation from Valentijn's book on the Dutch East Indies (1727) under a notice of Bimlipatam — “In the beginning of February, there used to ply to Pegu, a little ship with such goods as were in demand, and which were taken on board at Masulipatam. From that place it used to run along the coast up to  $18^{\circ} N$  Lat., and then crossed sea-wards, so as to hit the land on the other side about  $16^{\circ}$ , and then, on an offshore wind, sailed very easily to the Peguan River of Syriang” (Syriam below Rangun)

#### 16 In the Gangetic Gulf

Paloura or Pakoura, a town		$136^{\circ} 40'$	$11^{\circ} 20'$
Nanigaina		$136^{\circ} 20'$	$12^{\circ}$
Katikardama .	.	$136^{\circ} 20'$	$12^{\circ} 40'$
Kannagara .	.	$136^{\circ} 30'$	$13^{\circ} 30'$
Mouth of the River Manada		$137^{\circ}$	$14^{\circ}$
Kottobara . . . ..		$137^{\circ} 15'$	$14^{\circ} 40'$

Sippara . . . .	137° 40'	15° 30'
Mouth of the River Tyndis . .	138° 30'	16°
17 Mapoura . . . .	139°	16° 30'
Minagara . . . .	140°	17° 15'
Mouth of the Dôsarôn . .	141°	17° 40'
Kôkala . . . .	142°	18°
Mouth of the River Adamas . .	142° 40'	18°
Kôsamba or Kôsaba . . . .	143° 30'	18° 15'

**P aloura** —Ptolemy, as we have seen, placed this town at the extremity of a great peninsula projecting to the south-east, which had no existence however, except in his own imagination. The following passage, quoted by Yule from Lindschoten, shows that the name of Paloura survived till modern times, and indicates at the same time where its site is to be looked for — “From the river of Puacota to another called Paluor or Palura, a distance of 12 leagues, you run along the coast with a course from S W to E. Above this last river is a high mountain called Serra de Palura, the highest mountain on the coast. This river is in 19 $\frac{1}{2}$ °.” The Palura River must be the river of Ganjâm, the latitude of which is at its mouth 19° 23'. Ptolemy fixes at Paloura the beginning of the Gangetic Gulf.

**Nanigaina** may perhaps be placed at Puri, famous for the temple of Jagannâtha.

**Katikardama** the first part of the name points to the identification of this place with Katak, the capital of Orissa.

**Kannagara** —There can be little doubt that we have here the Kanarak of modern times, called also the Black Pagoda.

Mouth of the Manada —Ptolemy enumerates four rivers which enter the Gulf between Kannagara and the western mouth of the Ganges, the Manada, the Tyndis, the Dôsarôñ and the Adamas These would seem to be identical respectively with the four great rivers belonging to this part of the coast which succeed each other in the following order —The Mahânadî, the Brâhmañî, the Vaitaranî and the Suvarnarêkhâ, and this is the mode of identification which Lassen has adopted With regard to the Manada there can be no doubt that it is the Mahânadî, the great river of Orissa at the bifurcation of which Katak the capital is situated The name is a Sanskrit compound, meaning 'great river' Yule differs from Lassen with regard to the other identifications, making the Tyndis one of the branches of the Mahânadî, the Dôsarôñ,=the Brâhmañî the Adamas,=the Vaitaranî, and the Kambyson (which is Ptolemy's western mouth of the Ganges)=the Suvarnarêkhâ

The Dôsarôñ is the river of the region inhabited by the Dasârnas, a people mentioned in the *Vishnu Purâna* as belonging to the south-east of Madhya-dêsa in juxtaposition to the Sabaras, or Suars The word is supposed to be from *daśan* 'ten,' and *râna* 'a fort,' and so to mean 'the ten forts'

*Adamas* is a Greek word meaning *diamond* The true Adamas, Yule observes, was in all probability the Sank branch of the Brâhmañî, from which diamonds were got in the days of Mogul splendour

Sippara —The name is taken by Yule as

representing the Sanskrit *Śūrpāraka Pāra* in Sanskrit means 'the further shore or opposite bank of a river'

**M i n a g a r a** —The same authority identifies this with Jajhpûr In Arrowsmith's map I find, however, a small place marked, having a name almost identical with the Greek, Mungrapûr, situated at some distance from Jajhpûr and nearer the sea

**K ô s a m b a** is placed by Yule at Balasôr, but by Lassen at the mouth of the Subanrêkhâ which, as we have seen, he identifies with the Adamas There was a famous city of the same name, Kausâmbî, in the north-west of India, on the River Jamnâ, which became the Pândû capital after Hastinâpura had been swept away by the Ganges, and which was noted as the shrine of the most sacred of all the statues of Buddha It is mentioned in the *Râmâyana*, the *Mahâvânta*, and the *Méghadûta* of Kâlidâsa It may thus be reasonably concluded that the Kôsamba of Ptolemy was a seat of Buddhism established by propagandists of that faith who came from Kausâmbî

### 18 Mouths of the G a n g e s

The Kambyson mouth, the most western . . . .	144° 30'	18° 15'
Poloura, a town . . . .	145°	18° 30'
The second mouth, called Mega . . . .	145° 45'	18° 30'
The third called Kambêri- khon . . . .	146° 30'	18° 40'
Tilogrammon, a town . . . .	147° 20'	18°

The fourth mouth, Pseudosto-

mon . . . . .  $147^{\circ} 40'$   $18^{\circ} 30'$

The fifth mouth, Antibolê . . . . .  $148^{\circ} 30'$   $18^{\circ} 15'$

Ptolemy appears to have been the first writer who gave to the western world any definite information concerning that part of the Bengal Coast which receives the waters of the Ganges. His predecessors had indeed excelled him in the fulness and accuracy with which they had described the general course of the river, but they did not know, except in the very vaguest way, either where or how it entered the sea. Strabo, for instance, was not even aware that it had more than a single mouth. Ptolemy, on the other hand, mentions by name five of its mouths, and his estimate of the distance between the most western and the most eastern of these (4 degrees of latitude) is not very wide of the mark. Some traces also of his nomenclature are still to be found. It is difficult, however, to identify the mouths he has named with those now existing, as the Ganges, like the Indus, has shifted some of its channels, and otherwise altered the hydrography of its delta. Opinions differ regarding the western mouth, called the Kambysom. One would naturally take it to be the Hughli river, on which Calcutta stands, and V de Saint-Martin accordingly adopts this identification. It is impossible to doubt, he says, that the Kambysum is the Hughli river, which must have been at all times one of the principal outlets, as is proved historically by the mention of Tamraliptâ, 600 years before our æra, as one of the most frequented ports of Eastern India. It would be possible enough, he continues, that

below Diamond Point, the principal channel, instead of passing as now in front of Kalpi remounted to the west in front of Tamluk (the ancient Tamraliptâ) by the mouth of Tingorecally, and came thus to touch at a locality of which the actual name Nungabusan recalls that of Kambysum or Kambusum Wilford and Yule, on the other hand, agree in identifying the Kambyson with the Subaurêkhâ river, which was formerly but erroneously supposed to be a branch of the Ganges, and they are thus free to take the Hughli river as representing the second mouth called by Ptolemy the Mega, the Greek word for 'great' Saint-Martin identifies this estuary with the River Matlâ to which in recent years an attempt was made to divert the commerce of Calcutta, in consequence of the dangers attending the navigation of the Hughli With regard to the K a m b ê r i - k h o n, or third mouth, there is no difference of opinion "It answers," says Saint-Martin, "to the Barabangâ, a still important estuary, which receives the river of Kobbadak (or rather Kohbarak), which traverses the whole extent of the delta The *Kshîtra Samâsa*, a modern treatise of Sanskrit Geography, which Wilford has often quoted in his Memoir on the Ancient Geography of the Gangetic basin, calls this river Koumâraka Here the Kambêrikhon of the Greek navigators is easily recognized" The fourth mouth was called *Pseudostomon*, that is, 'false mouth,' because it lay concealed behind numerous islands, and was often mistaken for the easternmost mouth of the Ganges Thus Ptolemy calls A n t i b o l â, a name which has not yet been explained It

is the Dhakka or old Ganges river, and seems to have been the limit of India and the point from which measurements and distances relating to countries in India were frequently made.

In connexion with the river-mouths Ptolemy mentions two towns, Polonra and Tilogrammon. The former is placed in Yule's map at Jelasur, near the Subanrakhā, and the latter at Jesor. Its name seems to be compounded of the two Sanskrit words *tila*, 'sesamum,' and *grāma*, 'a village or township.'

Ptolemy having thus described the whole sea-coast of India, from the mouths of the Indus to those of the Ganges, gives next a list of its mountain ranges, together with figures of Latitude and Longitude, showing the limits of the length of each range as well as the direction.

19 The mountains belonging to Intragangetic India are named as follows —

The Apokopa, called *Poinai Theōn*, which extend from long  $116^{\circ}$  to  $124^{\circ}$  and from lat  $23^{\circ}$  at their western limit to  $26^{\circ}$  at the eastern.

20 Mount Sardonyx, in which is found the precious stone of the same name, and whose middle point is in long  $117^{\circ}$  and lat  $21^{\circ}$ .

21 Mount Ouindion (Vindion) which extends from  $126^{\circ}$  to  $135^{\circ}$ , and preserves from its western to its eastern limit a uniform latitude of  $27^{\circ}$ .

22 Bēttigō, which extends from  $123^{\circ}$  to  $130^{\circ}$ , and whose western limit is in lat  $21^{\circ}$  and its eastern in  $20^{\circ}$ .

23 Adeisathron, whose middle point is in long  $132^{\circ}$  and in lat  $23^{\circ}$ .

24 Ouxenton, which extends from  $136^{\circ}$  to  $143^{\circ}$ , and whose western limit is in lat  $22^{\circ}$  and its eastern in  $24^{\circ}$

25 The Oroudian Mountains, which extend from  $138^{\circ}$  to  $133^{\circ}$ , and whose eastern limit is in  $18^{\circ}$  lat and its western  $16^{\circ}$

Ptolemy enumerates seven of these, probably following some native list framed in accordance with the native idea that seven principal mountains existed in each division of a continent. A Paurânik list gives us the names of the seven which pertained to India, Mahêndra, Malaya, Sahya, Suktimat, Riksha, Vindhya and Pâmpâtra or Pâriyâtra. This can hardly be the list which Ptolemy used, as only two of his names appear in it, Ouxenton (—) Riksha, and Ouindion (—) Vindhya. As his views of the configuration of India were so wide of the mark, his mountain ranges are of course hopelessly out of position, and the latitudes and longitudes assigned to them in the tables afford no clue to their identification. Some help however towards this, as Yule points out, lies in the river-sources ascribed to each, which were almost certainly copied from native lists, in which notices of that particular range are often to be found.

The Apokopa, or '*punishment of the gods*' —There is a consensus of the authorities in referring the range thus named to the Aravali mountains. Mount Arbuda (Abu) which is by far the most conspicuous summit, is one of the sacred hills of India. It was mentioned by Megasthenes in a passage which has been preserved by Pliny (N H lib VI, c xxi) who calls it Mons Capitalia, i.e.

the 'Mount of Capital Punishment,' a name which has an obvious relation to the by-name which Ptolemy gives it, 'the punishment of the gods' The word *apokopa* is of Greek origin, and means primarily 'what has been cut off,' and is therefore used to denote 'a cleft,' 'a cliff,' 'a steep hill' It occurs in the *Periplús* (sec 15) where it designates a range of precipitous hills running along the coast of Azania, i.e of Ajan in Africa Its Sanskrit equivalent may have been given as a name to Mount Arbuda because of its having been at some time rent by an earthquake In point of fact the *Mahābhārata* has preserved a tradition to the effect that a cleft (*chhidra*) had here been made in the earth Such an alarming phenomenon as the cleaving of a mountain by an earthquake would naturally in superstitious times be ascribed to the anger of the gods, bent on punishing thereby some heinous crime (See Lassen's *Ind Alt* vol III, pp 121-2 )

Mount Sardonyx is a short range, a branch of the Vindhya, now called Sātpura, lying between the Narmadā and the Tāpti it is mentioned by Ktēsias (frag 8) under the name of Mount Sardous It has mines of the carnelian stone, of which the sardian is a species The *Periplús* (sec 49) notices that onyx-stones were imported into Barygaza from the interior of the country, and that they were also among the articles which it exported

Mount O u i n d i o n —This is a correct transliteration of *Vindhya*, the native name of the extensive range which connects the northern extremities

of the Western and Eastern Ghâts, and which separates Hindûstân proper—the Madhya-dêsa or middle region, regarded as the sacred land of the Hindûs—from the Dekhan Ptolemy, as Lassen remarks (*Ind Alt* vol III, p 120), is the only geographer of classical antiquity in whose writings the indigenous name of this far-spread range is to be found His Vindion however does not embrace the whole of the Vindhya system, but only the portion which lies to the west of the sources of the Sôn Sanskrit writers speak of the Vindhyas as a family of mountains They extended from Baroda to Mirzapur, and were continued thence to Chunar

Mount Bêttigô —As the rivers which have their sources in this range—the Pseudostomos, the Baris, and the Sôlén or Tâmrâparnî, all belong to South Malabar, there can be no doubt that Bêttigô denotes the southern portion of the Western Ghâts extending from the Koimbatur gap to Cape Comorin—called Malaya in the Paurânik list already quoted One of the summits of this range, famous in Indian mythology as the abode of the Rishi Agastya, bears the name in Tamil of Podigei, or as it is pronounced Pothigei It is visible from the mouth of the Tâmrâparnî which has its sources in it, and from Kolkhoi, and the Greeks who visited those parts, and had the mountain pointed out to them would no doubt apply the name by which they heard it called to the whole range connected with it (See Caldwell's *David Gram* Introd p 101)

**Adeisathron**—If we take Ptolemy's figures as our guide here, we must identify this range with the chain of hills which Lassen describes in the following passage—"Of the mountain system of the Dekhan Ptolemy had formed an erroneous conception, since he represented the chain of the Western Ghâts as protruded into the interior of the country, instead of lying near to the western coast with which it runs parallel, and he was misled thereby into shortening the courses of the rivers which rise in the Western Ghâts. The chain which he calls Adeisathron begins in the neighbourhood of Nâgpur and stretches southward to the east of the rivers Wain + Gangâ and Pranitâ, separates the Gôdâvari from the Krishnâ, and comes to an end at the sources of the Kâvîrî. This view of his meaning is confirmed by the fact that he locates the two cities Baithana or Pratishthâna which lies to the east of the Western Ghâts, on the Gôdâvari, and Tagara both to the west of Adeisathron. He was led into this misrepresentation partly through the incompleteness and insufficiency of the accounts which he used, and partly through the circumstance that the Eastern Ghât does not consist of a single chain, but of several parallel chains, and that to the south of the sources of the Kâvîrî the Eastern Ghât is connected with the Western Ghât through the Nilgiri Mountains. The name Adeisathron, one sees can only refer to the West Ghât in which the Kâvîrî rises" (*Ind. Alt.* vol III, pp 162-3) Yule explains the source of Ptolemy's error thus "No doubt his Indian lists showed him Kâvîrî rising in Sâhyâdri (as does Wilford's list from the

*Brahmanda Pârâna, As Res* vol VIII, p 335f) He had no real clue to the locality of the Saliyâdri, but found what he took for the same name (*Adisathra*) applied to a city in the heart of India, and there he located the range" Adeisathron must therefore be taken to denote properly that section of the Western Ghâts which is immediately to the north of the Koimbatur gap, as it is there the Kâvêrî rises The origin of the name Adeisathron will be afterwards pointed out

Ouxenton designates the Eastern continuation of the Vindhya-s All the authorities are at one in referring it to the mountainous regions south of the Sôn, included in Chhutia Nâgpûr, Râmgarh, Sirgûjâ, &c Ptolemy places its western extremity at the distance of one degree from the eastern extremity of the Vindhya-s The rivers which have their sources in the range are the Tündis, the Dôsarôn, the Adamas and an unnamed tributary of the Ganges The name itself represents the Sanskrit Rikshavat, which however did not designate the Eastern Vindhya-s but a large district of the central This difference in the application of the names need not invalidate the supposition of their identity The authors whom Ptolemy consulted may have misled him by some inaccuracy in their statements, or the Hindûs themselves may have intended the name of Rikshavat to include localities further eastward than those which it primarily denoted *Riksha* means 'a bear,' and is no doubt connected with the Greek word of the same meaning, *arktos*

The Oroudiañ Mountains — "This we take,"

says Yule, "to be the Vaidūrya just mentioned, as the northern section of the Western Ghâts, though Ptolemy has entirely misconceived its position. We conceive that he found in the Indian lists that the great rivers of the eastern or Maesolian Coast rose in the Vaidūrya, and having no other clue he places the Orûdia (which seems to be a mere metathesis of Odûrya for Vaidūrya) near and parallel to that coast. Hence Lassen and others (all, as far as is known) identify these Oroudian Mountains with those that actually exist above Kaliṅga. This corresponds better, no doubt, with the position which Ptolemy has assigned. But it is not our business to map Ptolemy's errors, he has done that for himself, we have to show the real meaning and application of the names which he used, whatever false views he may have had about them."

26 The rivers which flow from Mount Imaōs into the Indus are arranged as follows —

Sources of the River Kôa	120°	37°
Sources of the River Souastos	122° 30'	36°
Sources of the River Indus	125°	37°
Sources of the River Bi-		
daspêš .	127° 30'	36° 40'
Sources of the River Sandabal	129°	36°
Sources of the River Adris		
or Rouadis	130°	37°
Sources of the River Bibasis	131°	35° 30'

Regarding the origin and meaning of the name Indus, Max Müller (*India, what it can teach us*) says "In the Védas we have a number of names of the rivers of India as they were known to one single

poet, say about 1000 B C We then hear nothing of India till we come to the days of Alexander, and when we look at the names of the Indian rivers represented by Alexander's companions in India, we recognize without much difficulty nearly all of the old Vedic names In this respect the names of rivers have a great advantage over the names of towns in India I do not wonder so much at the names of the Indus and the Ganges being the same The Indus was known to early traders, whether by sea or land Skylax sailed from the country of the Paktys, i.e the Pushtus, as the Afghans still call themselves, down to the mouth of the Indus That was under Darius Hy- staspes (B C 521-486) Even before that time India and the Indians were known by their name, which was derived from Sindhu, the name of their frontier river The neighbouring tribes who spoke Iranic languages all pronounced, like the Persian, the s as an h (Pliny, lib VI, c xx, 7) 'Indus incolis Sindus appellatus' Thus Sindhu became Hindhu (Hindu) and as h's were dropped, even at that early time, Hindhu became Indu Thus the river was called Indus, the people Indo by the Greeks, who first heard of India from the Persians Sindhu probably meant originally the divider, keeper and defender from sikh to keep off No more telling name could have been given to a broad river, which guarded peaceful settlers both against the inroads of hostile tribes and the attacks of wild animals Though Sindhu was used as an appellative noun for river in general, it remained throughout the whole history of India, the name of its powerful guardian river,

the Indus." For a full discussion of the origin of the name I may refer the reader to Benfey's *Indien*, pp. 1—2, in the *Encyclopædia* of Ersch and Grüber.

The Indus being subject to periodic inundations, more or less violent, has from time to time undergone considerable changes. As has been already indicated it not unfrequently shifts the channels by which it enters the sea, and in the upper part of its course it would seem to be scarcely less capricious. Thus while at the time of the Macedonian invasion it bifurcated above Her, the capital of the Sogdi, to run for about the distance of 2 degrees in two beds which enclosed between them the large island called by Pliny (lib. VI, c. xx, 23) *Prasimake*, the *Pratjuna* of the inscription on the Allahibād column, it now runs at that part in a single stream having forsaken the eastern bed and left there the once flourishing country

this mistake, for Arrian places the sources in the lower spurs of the Paropanisos, and he is here at one with Mela (lib III, c vii, 6), Strabo (lib XV, c n, 8), Curtius (lib VIII, c ix, 3) and other ancient writers. In fact, it was not ascertained until modern times whence the Indus actually came. His next error has reference to the length of the Indus valley as measured from the mouth of the Indus to its point of junction with the Kâbul river. This he makes to be 11 degrees, while in point of fact it is somewhat less than 10. This error is, however, trivial as compared with the next by which the junction of the Indus with the united stream of the Panjâb rivers is made to take place at the distance of only one degree below its junction with the Kâbul river, instead of at the distance of six degrees or halfway between the upper junction and the sea. This egregious error not only vitiates the whole of his delineation of the river system of the Panjâb, but as it exaggerates by more than 300 miles the distance between the lower junction and the sea, it obscures and confuses all his geography of the Indus valley, and so dislocates the positions named in his tables, that they can only in a few exceptional cases be identified.<sup>22</sup>

<sup>22</sup> "It is hard enough," says Major-General Haig, "to have to contend with the vagueness, inconsistencies and contradictions of the old writers but these are as nothing compared with the obstacles which the physical characteristics of the country itself oppose to the enquirer. For ages the Indus has been pushing its bed across the valley from east to west, generally by the gradual process of erosion which effectually wipes out every trace of town and village on its banks, but at times also by a more or less sudden shifting of its waters into

All the large tributaries of the Indus, with the exception of the Kâbul river, join it on its left or eastern side. Their number is stated by Strabo (lib XV, c 1, 33) and by Arrian (lib V, c vi) to be 15, but by Pliny (lib VI, c xx, 23) to be 19. The most of them are mentioned in one of the hymns of the *Rig Veda* (X, 75) of which the following passages are the most pertinent to our subject —

1 "Each set of seven [*streams*] has followed a threefold course. The Sindhu surpasses the other rivers in impetuosity.

2 Varuna hollowed out the channels of thy course, O Sindhu, when thou didst rush to thy contests. Thou flowest from [*the heights of*] the earth, over a downward slope, when thou leadest the van of those streams

4 To thee, O Sindhu, the [*other streams*] rush

Like a warrior king [*in the centre of his army*] thou leadest the two wings of thy host when thou strugglest forward to the van of these torrents

5 Receive favourably this my hymn, O Gaṅgâ, Yamunâ, Sarasvatî, Śutudrî, Parashnî, hear, O Marudvridhâ, with the Asiknî, and Vitastâ, and thou Arjikiyâ with the Sushomnâ

entirely new channels, leaving large tracts of country to go to waste, and forcing the inhabitants of many a populous place to abandon their old homes, and follow the river in search of new settlements. Perhaps the retiring stream will leave behind it vast quantities of drift sand which is swept by the high winds over the surrounding country where the explorer may search in vain for any record of the past. I have had, as an enquirer, experience of the difficulties here described" (*J R A S N S* vol XVI, p 281)

6 Unite first in thy course with the Trishtâmâ, the Sasartû, the Rasâ and the Švîti, thou meetest the Gomati, and the Krumu, with the Kubhâ, and the Mehatnû, and with them are borne onward as on the same ear" (See *Journ R A S, N S*, Vol XV, pp 359-60)

As Ptolemy makes the Kôa join the Indus, it must be identified with the Kabul river, the only large affluent which the Indus receives from the west Other classical writers call it the Kôphê or Kôphîs, in accordance with its Sanskrit name the Kubhâ Ptolemy's name, it must however be noted, is not applicable to the Kâbul river throughout its whole course, but only after it has been joined by the River Kâmah, otherwise called the Kunâr This river, which is inferior neither in size nor in length to the arm which comes from Kâbul, is regarded as the main stream by the natives of the country, who call the course of the united streams either the Kâmah or the Kunâr indifferently, as far as the entrance into the plain of Peshâwar The Kâmah has its sources high up in the north at the foot of the plateau of Pâmîr, not far from the sources of the Oxus, and this suits Ptolemy's description of the Kôa as a river which has its sources in the eastern extremity of Paropanisos, and which joins the Indus after receiving the Souastos or the river of Swât Kôa is very probably a curtailed form of the name The Persians appear to have called it the Khoaspê, that being the name of the river on which Susa, their capital city, stood Under this name it is mentioned by Aristotle (*Meteorolog lib I, c xiii*) who lived long enough to enter in his

later writings some of the new knowledge which the expedition of his illustrious pupil had opened up regarding Eastern Countries It is mentioned also by Strabo (lib XV, c 1, 26) who followed here the authority of Aristoboulos, one of the companions and one of the historians of the expedition of Alexander, and by Curtius (lib VIII, c x), Strabo *l c* states that it joins the Kôphêš near Plemyrion, after passing by another city, Gorys, in its course through Bandobêñ and Gandaritis The Kôa of Ptolemy is not to be confounded with the Khôës of Arrian (lib IV, c xxiii, 2), which must be identified with a river joining the Kôphêš higher up its course, viz that which is formed by the junction of the Alshang and the Alingar The Euaspla of the latter writer (lib IV, c xxiv, 1) is probably only an altered form of Khoaspêš

The identification of the Kôphêš and its numerous affluents has been a subject that has much exercised the pens of the learned They are now unanimous in taking the Kôphêš to be the Kabul river<sup>23</sup> but there are still some important points on which they differ In the foregoing notice I have adopted as preferable the views of Saint-Martin (*Étude*, pp 26-34) *Conf* Lassen, *Ind Alt* vol III, pp 127-8, Wilson, *Ariana Antiqua*, pp 138-188 Benfey's *Indien*, pp 44-46, Cunningham, *Geog of Anc India*, pp 37, 38

Souastos —All the authorities are at one in identifying the Souastos with the Swât river—the principal tributary of the Landai or river of Pañjkora (the Gaurî of Sanskrit), which is the

---

<sup>23</sup> Rennell identified it with the Gomul and D'Anville with the Argandâb

last of the great affluents that the Kâbul river receives from the east before it falls into the Indus. The Souastos, though a small stream, is yet of old renown, being the *Svētî* of the Vedic hymn already quoted, and the *Suvâstu* of the *Mahâbhârata* (VI, ix, 333), where it is mentioned in conjunction with the Gaurî. Its name figures also in the list of Indian rivers which Arrian (*Indika*, sec 4) has preserved from the lost work of Megasthenes. Here it is mentioned in conjunction with the Malamantos and the Garoia, which latter is of course the Gaurî. Arrian thus makes the Souastos and the Gouraios to be different rivers, but in another passage of his works (*Anab* lib IV, c xxv) he seems to have fallen into the mistake of making them identical. It is surprising, as Lassen has remarked, that Ptolemy should notice the Souastos, and yet say nothing about the Garoia, especially as he mentions the district of Goryaia, which is called after it, and as he must have known of its existence from the historians of Alexander. He has also, it may be noted, placed the sources of the Souastos too far north.

The five great rivers which watered the region of the Panjâb bear the following names in Ptolemy: Bidaspê, Sandabal, Adris or Rhouadis, Bibasis and Zaradros. This region in early times was called the country of the seven rivers—*Sapta Sindhu*, a name which, as Sir H Rawlinson has pointed out, belonged primarily to the seven head streams of the Oxus. As there were only five large streams in the locality in India to which the name was applied, the number was made up to seven by adding smaller affluents or lower branches of combined

streams, to which new names were given. The Vedic Aryans, however, as Mr Thomas remarks, could never satisfactorily make up the sacred seven without the aid of the comparatively insignificant Sarasvatî, a river which no longer exists. These rivers are notably erratic, having more than once changed their bed since Vedic times.

**Bidaspê**s — This is now the Jhelam or river of Behat, the most western of the five rivers. It drains the whole of the valley of Kasmîr, and empties into the Akesinê or Chenâb. Ptolemy, however, calls their united stream the Bidaspê. By the natives of Kasmîr it is called the Bedasta, which is but a slight altered form of its Sanskrit name the Vitastâ, meaning 'wide-spread.' The classical writers, with the sole exception of our author, call it the Hydaspê, which is not so close to the original as his Bidaspê. It was on the left bank of this river that Alexander defeated Pôros and built (on the battle field) the city of Nikâia in commemoration of his victory.

**Sandabal** is an evident mistake of the copyist for Sandabaga. The word in this corrected form is a close transliteration of Chandrabhâgâ (*lunae portio*), one of the Sanskrit names of the River Chenâb. In the Vedic hymn which has been quoted it is called the Asiknî, 'dark-coloured,' whence the name given to it by the Greeks in Alexander's time, the Akesinê. It is said that the followers of the great conqueror discerned an evil omen in the name of Chandrabhâgâ on account of its near similarity to their own word *Androphagos* or *Alexandrophagos*, 'devourer of Alexander' and hence

preferred calling it by the more ancient of its two names. It is the largest of all the streams of the Panchanada. Vigne says that Chandrabhinga is the name of a small lake from which the river issues. Pliny has distorted the form Chandrabhaga into Chantabha or Cantaba (lib VI, c xx). According to the historians of Alexander the confluence of this river with the Hydaspes produced dangerous rapids, with prodigious eddies and loud roaring waves, but according to Burnes their accounts are greatly exaggerated. In Alexander's time the Akesines joined the Indus near Uchli, but the point of junction is now much lower down.

The Adris or Rhouadis is the Ravi, a confluent of the Akesines, but according to Ptolemy of the Bidaspes. The name Ravi is an abridged form of the Sanskrit Airavati. It is called by Arrian (*Anab* lib VI, c viii), the Hydraotēs, and by Strabo (lib XV, c i, 21) the Hyarōtis. Arrian (*Indik* sec 4) assigns to it three tributaries—the Hyphasis, the Saranges and Neudros. This is not quite correct, as the Hyphasis joins the Akesines below the junction of the Hydraotēs.

The Bibasis is the river now called the Beinā, the Vipāsa of Sanskrit. This word "Vipasi" means 'uneorded,' and the river is said to have been so called because it destroyed the cord with which the sage Vasishtha had intended to hang himself. It is called the Hyphasis by Arrian (*Anab* lib VI, c viii), and Diodōros (lib XVII, c xviii), the Hypasis by Pliny (lib VII, c xvii, 20) and Curtius (lib IX, c i), and the Hypanis by Strabo (lib XV, c i, 17) and some other writers.

It falls into the Śatadru. It was the river which marked the limit of Alexander's advance into India.

### 27 Sources of the River

Zaradros	132°	36°.
Confluence of the Kōa and Indus	124°	31°
Confluence of the Kōa and Souastos	122° 30'	31° 40'
Confluence of the Zaradros and Indus ..	124°	30°
Confluence of the Zaradros and Bidaspēs	125°	30°
Confluence of the Zaradros and Bibasis	131°	34°
Confluence of the Bidaspēs and Adris	126° 30'	31° 30'
Confluence of the Bidaspēs and Sandabal	126° 40'	32° 40'

The Zaradros is the Satlaj, the most easterly of the five rivers. It is called in Sanskrit the Satadru, i.e., *flowing in a hundred (branches)*. Pliny (lib VI, c xvii) calls it the Hesydrus, Zadrades is another reading of the name in Ptolemy. The Satlaj, before joining the Indus, receives the Chennāb, and so all the waters of the Pañchanada.

With regard to the nomenclature and relative importance of the rivers of the Panjāb the following remarks of V de Saint-Martin may be cited —

"As regards the Hyphasis, or more correctly the Hypasis, the extended application of this name till the stream approaches the Indus, is

contrary to the notions which we draw from Sanskrit sources, according to which the Vipâsâ loses its name in the Śatadru (Satlaj), a river which is otherwise of greater importance than the Vipâsâ Nevertheless the assertion of our author by itself points to a local notion which is confirmed by a passage in the chronicles of Sindh, where the name of the Beiah which is the form of the Sanskrit Vipâsâ in Musalmân authors and in actual use, is equally applied to the lower course of the Satlaj till it unites with the Chenâb not far from the Indus Arrian, more exact here, or at least more circumstantial than Strabo and the other geographers, informs us that of all the group of the Indus affluents the Akesinêš was the most considerable It was the Akesinêš which carried to the Indus the combined waters of the Hydas-pés of the Hydraôtês and of the Hyphasis, and each of these streams lost its name in uniting with the Akesinêš (Arr *Anab* lib VI, c v) This view of the general hydrography of the Panjâb is in entire agreement with facts, and with the actual nomenclature It is correctly recognized that the Chenâb is in effect the most considerable stream of the Panjâb, and its name successively absorbs the names of the Jhelam, the Râvî, and the Gharra or lower Satlaj, before its junction with the Indus opposite Mittankôt Ptolemy here differs from Arrian and the current ideas on the subject With him it is not the Akesinêš (or, as he calls it, the Sandabala for Sandabaga) which carries to the Indus the waters of the Panjâb It is the Bidaspés (*Vitastâ*) Ptolemy departs again in another point from the nomen-

clature of the historians who preceded him in applying to the Gharra or lower Satlaj the name of Zaradros, and not, as did Arrian that of Hyphasis Zadadros is the Śutudrī or Śatadru of the Sanskrit nomenclature, a name which common usage since the Musalmān ascendancy has strangely disfigured into Satlaj No mention is made of this river in the memoirs relating to the expedition of Alexander, and Megasthenēs, it would appear, was the first who made its existence known The application moreover of the two names of Zadadros and Bibasis to the united current of the Śatadru and the Vipāsā is justified by the usage equally variable of the natives along the banks, while in the ancient Sanskrit writings the Satadru goes, as in Ptolemy, to join the Indus It may be added that certain particularities in the texts of Arrian and Ptolemy suggest the idea that formerly several arms of the Hyphasis existed which went to join, it may be, the Hydraôtēs, or, it may be, the lower Akesinēs above the principal confluent of the Hyphasis, an idea which the actual examination of the locality appears to confirm This point merits attention because the obscurities or apparent contradictions in the text of the two authors would here find an easy explanation" (pp 129–131, also pp 396–402)

Junction of the Kōa and Indus —Ptolemy fixes the point of junction in latitude  $31^{\circ}$ , but the real latitude is  $33^{\circ} 54'$  Here the Indus is 872 miles distant from its source, and 942 miles from the sea The confluence takes place amidst numerous rocks and is therefore turbulent and attended with great noise

Junction of the Zaradros and Indus.—Ptolemy fixes this great junction in latitude  $30^{\circ}$ , the real latitude being however  $28^{\circ} 55'$ . It takes place about 3 miles below Mitankot, at a distance of about 490 miles below the junction with the Kâbul River.

Divarication of the Indus towards Mt Vindion.—The Indus below its junction with the Kâbul river frequently throws out branches (e.g. the Nara) which join it again before reaching the sea, and to such branches Ptolemy gives the name of ἐκτροπαι "It is doubtful," Saint Martin observes, "whether Ptolemy had formed quite a clear idea of this configuration of the valley, and had always distinguished properly the affluents from the branches. Thus one does not quite precisely see what he means by the expression which he frequently employs η πηγὴ τῆς ἐκτροπῆς. What he designates thereby must be undoubtedly the streams or currents which descend from the lateral region, and which come to lose themselves in the branches of the river. But the expression, which is familiar to him, is not the less ambiguous and altogether improper"—(p 235 n.) The branch here mentioned, Lassen (*Ind Alt* vol III, pp 121, 120) takes to be the Lavani river "Ptolemy," he says, "in contradiction to fact makes a tributary flow to it from the Vindhya Mountains. His error is without doubt occasioned by this, that the Lavani river, which has its source in the Arâvalî chain falls into the salt lake, the Ran or Irina, into which also the eastern arm of the Indus discharges."

Divarication of the Indus into Arakhôsia —

Lassen (vol III, p 128), takes this to be the Gomal rather than the Korum river. These rivers are both mentioned in the Vedic hymn, where the former appears as the Gômatî and the latter as the Krumu.

Branch of the Kôa towards the Paropanisadai — This is probably the upper Kôphén, which joins the Kôa (Kunîr river) from Kâbul.

Divarication of the Indus towards the Arbita mountains — Between the Lower Indus and the river called anciently the Arabis or Arbis, was located a tribe of Indian origin called variously the Arabii, the Arbies, the Arabitae, the Ambritae and the Arbiti. There can be no doubt therefore that by the Arbita Mountains Ptolemy designates the range of hills in the territory of that tribe, now called the Hâla Mountains. Towards the northern extremity of this range the Indus receives a tributary called the Gandava, and this we may take to be what Ptolemy calls the divarication of the Indus towards the range. It may perhaps, however, be the Western Nara that is indicated.

Divarication of the Indus into the Paropanisadai — To judge from the figures in the table this would appear to be a tributary of the Indus joining it from the west a little above its junction with the Kôa or Kâbul river. There is, however, no stream, even of the least note, answering to the description.

28 Divarication ( $\epsilon\kappa\tau\rho\omega\pi\eta$ ) from the Indus running towards Mt Ouindion	123°	29° 30'
The source of (tributary joining) the Divarication	127°	27°

Divarication of the Indus towards Arakhôsia . . . . .	121° 30'	27° 30'
Divarication of the Kôa to- wards the Paropanisadai . . . . .	121° 30'	33°
The source of (tributary join- ing) the Divarication.. . . . .	115°	24° 30'
Divarication of the Indus to- wards the Arbita Mountains . . . . .	117°	25° 10'
Divarication of the Indus towards the Paropanisadai . . . . .	124° 30'	31° 20'
Divarication of the Indus into the Sagapa mouth . . . . .	113° 40'	23° 15'
From the Sagapa into the Indus .. . . . .	111°	21° 30'
Divarication of the Indus into the Khrysoun (or Golden) mouth . . . . .	112° 30'	22°
Divarication of the Indus into the Khariphon mouth . . . . .	113° 30'	22° 20'
From the Khariphon to the Sapara . . . . .	112° 30'	21° 45'
Divarication of the same River Khariphon into the Sabalaessa mouth . . . . .	113°	21° 20'
Divarication from the River Khariphon into the Lôn- bare mouth . . . . .	113° 20'	21° 40'
29 Of the streams which join the Gangêś the order is this —		
Sources of the River Dia- mouna. . . . .	134° 30'	36°

Sources of the Ganges itself . . .	136°	37°
Sources of the River Sarabos . . .	140°	36°
Junction of the Diamouna and Ganges . . .	136°	34°
Junction of the Sarabos and Ganges . . . . .	136° 30'	32° 30

Ptolemy's description of the Ganges is very meagre as compared with his description of the Indus He mentions by name only 3 of its affluents, although Arrian (quoting from Megasthenes) enumerates no fewer than 17, and Pliny 19. The latitude of its source, Gangotri, which is in the territory of Garhwal, is 30° 54', or more than 6 degrees further south than its position as given in the table. The name of the river, the Gangâ, is supposed to be from a root *gam*, 'to go,' reduplicated, and therefore to mean the 'Go—go.' The tributaries mentioned by Arrian are these the Kainas, Erannobos, Kossoanos, Sônos, Sittokatis, Solomatis, Kondokhates Sambos, Magon, Agoranis, Omalis, Kommenases, Kakouthis, Andomacis, Amystis, Ovymagis and the Errhenysis. The two added by Pliny are the Prinas and Jomanes. Regarding these names the following remarks may be quoted from Yule — "Among rivers, some of the most difficult names are in the list which Pliny and Arrian have taken from Megasthenes, of affluents of the Gangâ. This list was got apparently at Palibothra (Patna), and if streams in the vicinity of that city occupy an undue space in the list, this is natural. Thus Magona and Errhenysis,—Mohana and Nirañjana, join to form the river flowing past Gayâ, famous

in Buddhist legend under the second name The navigable Prinas or Pinnas is perhaps Punyā, now Pūnpūn, one of the same cluster Sonus instead of being a duplicate of Erannohoaś, may be a branch of the Gayā river, still called Sonā. Andomatis flowing from the Madiandīni, i.e., "Meridionales" is perhaps the Andhela, one of the names of the Chandan river of Bhāgalpūr Kainas, navigable, is not likely to be the Ken of Bundelkhand, the old form of which is Karnavatī, but more probably the Kayāna or Kohāna of Gorakhpūr It is now a tributary of the lower Ghagrā, but the lower course of that river has shifted much, and the map suggests that both the Raptī (Solomatis of Lassen) and Kayāna may have entered the Ganges directly" For the identification of the other rivers in the list see my article in the *Indian Antiquary*, vol V, p 331

**D i a m o u n a** —In this it is easy to recognize the Yamunā, the river which after passing Dehlī, Mathurā, Āgrā, and other places, joins the Ganges, of which it is the largest affluent at Allāhābād It rises from hot springs amid Himālayan snows, not far westward from the sources of the Ganges Arrian singularly enough has omitted it from his list of the Ganges affluents, but it is no doubt the river which he subsequently mentions as the J o b a r e s and which flows, he says, through the country of the Sourasenoi, an Indian tribe possessing two large cities, Methora and Kleisobara (Krishnapura ?) Pliny (lib VI, c xix) calls it the Jomanes, and states that it flows into the Ganges through the Palibothri, between the towns of Methora and Chrysobara (Krishnapura ?) The

Ganges at its junction with the Jamnâ and a third but imaginary river called the Sarasvatî, which is supposed to join it underground is called the Trivenî, i.e., 'triple plait' from the intermingling of the three streams

**Sarabos** — This is the great river of Kôsala, that is now called the Sarayu or Sarju, and also the Gharghara or Ghogra. It rises in the Himalayas, a little to the north-east of the sources of the Ganges, and joins that river on its left side in latitude  $25^{\circ} 46'$ , a little above the junction of the Sôn with their united stream. Cunningham regards the Solomatis mentioned in Arrian's list of the tributaries of the Ganges as being the Sarayu under a different name, but Lassen takes it to be the Rapti, a large affluent of the same river from Gôrakhpur. The name, he thinks, is a transliteration or rather abbreviation of Saravatî, the name of a city of Kôsala mentioned by Kalidâsa. The river on which the city stood is nowhere mentioned, but its name was in all probability the same as that of the city (*Ind. Alt.*, vol II, p 671)

**Mouth of the River Sôa** — This river can be no other than the Sôn (the Sônos of Arrian's list) which falls into the Ganges about 16 miles above Patna in lat  $25^{\circ} 37'$ . It rises in Gôndwana in the territory of Nagpur, on the elevated table-land of Amarakantaka, about 4 or 5 miles east of the source of the Narmadâ. It would appear that in former times it joined the Ganges in the immediate neighbourhood of Patna, the modern representative of the Palibothra or Palimbothra of the classical writers. The lat of the source is  $22^{\circ} 41'$ , in Ptolemy  $28^{\circ}$

30 Divarication from the Ganges towards the Ouindion range to the mouth of the River Sôa .....	136° 10'	31° 30'
The sources of the river.. . .	131°	28°
Divarication of the Ganges		
towards the Ouxenton range .	142°	28°
The sources of the divarication	137°	23°
Divarication from the Ganges		
into the Kambyson Mouth	146°	22°
Divarication from the Ganges		
into the Pseudostomos . . .	146° 30'	20°
Divarication from the Gan-		
ges into the Antibolê Mouth....	146° 30'	21°
Divarication from the Kamby-		
son River into the Mega		
Mouth . . . . .	145°	20°
Divarication from the Mega		
Mouth into the Kambêr-		
khon Mouth. . .	145° 30'	19° 30'

The divarication towards the Ouxenton range —By this unnamed river, as Lassen has pointed out (*Ind Alt*, vol III pp 130, 131) Ptolemy must have meant the Dharmôdaya of the Hindus, although he has assigned far too high a latitude for its junction with the Ganges, 28° instead of only 22° 13'. It is, however, the only considerable stream which flows to the Ganges from the Bear Mountains. It passes Ramgarh and Bardhwân, and joins the Hughli not far from the sea, a little to, the east of Tamluk. It is commonly called the Damuda River.

The mouths of the Ganges —In addition to

the remarks already made regarding these mouths I may here quote a passage from Wilford on this topic "Ptolemy's description," he says (*Asiat Researches*, vol XIV, pp 464-6) "of the Delta of the Ganges is by no means a bad one, if we reject the latitudes and longitudes, which I always do, and adhere solely to his narrative, which is plain enough He begins with the western branch of the Ganges or Bhāgīrathī, and says that it sends one branch to the right or towards the west, and another towards the east, or to the left This takes place at Trivēnī, so called from three rivers parting, in three different directions, and it is a most sacred place The branch which goes towards the right is the famous Sarasvatī, and Ptolemy says that it flows into the Kambyson mouth, or the mouth of 'he Jelasor river, called in Sanskrit Śaktimatī, synonymous with Kambu or Kambuj, or the river of shells This communication does not exist, but it was believed to exist, till the country was surveyed This branch sends another arm, says our author, which affords a passage into the great mouth, or that of the Bhāgīrathī or Ganges This supposed branch is the Rūpanārāyana, which, if the Sarasvatī ever flowed into the Kambyson mouth, must of course have sprung from it, and it was then natural to suppose that it did so M D'Anville has brought the Sarasvatī into the Jelasor river in his maps, and supposed that the communication took place a little above a village called Danton, and if we look into the *Bengal Atlas*, we shall perceive that during the rains at least, it is possible to go by water, from Hughlī, through

the Sarasvatî, and many other rivers, to within a few miles of Danton, and the Jelasor river The river, which according to Ptolemy branches out towards the east, or to the left, and goes into the Kambarikan mouth is the Jumnâ, called in Bengal Jubunâ For the Ganges, the Jumnâ and the Sarasvatî unite at the Northern Trivêni or Allâhâbâd, and part afterwards at this Trivêni near Hughli      called in the spoken dialects Terboni Though the Jumnâ falls into the Kambarikan mouth, it does by no means form it, for it obviously derives its name from the Kambâdârâ or Kambâraka river, as I observed before Ptolemy says that the Ganges sends an arm towards the east or to the left, directly to the false mouth or Harinaghattâ From this springs another branch to Antibolê, which of course is the Dhâkkâ branch called the Padmâ or Puddâgangâ This is a mistake, but of no great consequence, as the outlines remain the same It is the Paddâ or Dhâkkâ branch, which sends an arm into the Harinaghattâ The branching out is near Kasti and Komarkalli, and under various appellations it goes into the Harinaghattâ mouth ”

Besides the tributaries of the Ganges already mentioned, Ptolemy refers to two others which it receives from the range of Bêpyrrhos These are not named, but one is certainly the Kauśikî and the other ought to be either the Gandakî or the Tistâ

31 And of the other rivers the positions are thus

The sources of the River Na-

mados in the Ouindion range .127°

26° 30'

The bend of the river at Scripala . . . . .	116° 30'	22°
Its confluence with the River Môphis . . . . .	115°	18° 30'
32 Sources of the River Nanagouna from the Ouindion range . . . . .	132°	26° 30'
Where it bifurcates into the Goaris and Binda . . . . .	114°	16°
33 Sources of the Pseudos- tomos from the Béttigô range . .	123°	21°
The point where it turns . . . . .	118° 30'	17° 15'
34 Sources of the River Baris in the Béttigô range . . . .	127°	26° 30'
Sources of the River Sôlén in the Béttigô range . . . . .	127°	20° 30'
The point where it turns . . . . .	124°	18°
35 Sources of the River Khabêros in the Adeisathros range . . . . .	132°	22°
36 Sources of the River Tyna in the Oroudian (or Arouédan) Mountains . . . . .	133°	17°
37 Sources of the River Maisôlos in the same moun- tains . . . . .	134° 30'	17° 30'
38 Sources of the River Manda in the same moun- tains . . . . .	136° 30'	16° 30'
39 Sources of the River Toundis in the Ouxenton range	137°	22° 30'

40 Sources of the River			
Dôsarôn in the same range ..	140°	24°	
41 Sources of the River			
Adamas in the same range ..	142°	24°	

These rivers have been all already noticed, with the exception of the Môphîs. This is now the Mahî, a considerable river which flows into the Gulf of Khambât at its northern extremity at a distance of about 35 miles north from the estuary of the Narmâda. Ptolemy is in error in making the two rivers join each other. The Môphîs is mentioned in the *Periplûs* as the Maïs. In this list the spelling of the names of two of the rivers of Orissa has been slightly changed, the Manada into Manda and Tyndis into Toundis.

Ptolemy proceeds now (following as much as possible the order already observed) to give a list of the different territories and peoples of India classified according to the river-basins, together with the towns belonging to each territory and each people (§§42—93), and closes the chapter by mentioning the small islands that lay adjacent to the coast. He begins with the basin of the Kôphêis, part of which he had already described in the 6th Book.

42. The order of the territories in this division (India intra Gangem) and of their cities or villages is as follows —

Below the sources of the Kôa are located the Lambatai, and their mountain region extends upwards to that of the Kômêdai.

Below the sources of the Souastos is Souastêne

Below those of the Indus are the Daradrai, in whose country the mountains are of surpassing height

Below the sources of the Bidaspê and of the Sandabal and of the Adris is Kaspeiria

Below the sources of the Bibasis and of the Zaradros and of the Diamouna and of the Ganges is Kylindrinê, and below the Lambatai and Souastêne is Gôryaya

Ptolemy's description of the regions watered by the Kôphén and its tributaries given here and in the preceding book may well strike us with surprise, whether we consider the great copiousness of its details, or the way in which its parts have been connected and arranged. It is evident that he was indebted for his materials here chiefly to native sources of information and itineraries of merchants or caravans, and that he did not much consult the records, whether historical or geographical, of Alexander's expedition, else he would not have failed to mention such places as Alexandria, under Kaukasos, Massaga, Nysa, Bazira, the rock Aôrmos, and other localities made memorable by that expedition.

In describing the basin of the Kôphén he divides it into two distinct regions—the high region and the lower, a distinction which had been made by the contemporaries of Alexander. The high region formed the country of the Paropanisadaï, and this Ptolemy has described in the 18th chapter of the 6th Book. He now describes the

lower region which he regards as a part of India  
(V Saint Martin, *Étude*, pp 62-3)

The Lambatai were the inhabitants of the district now called Lamghān, a small territory lying along the northern bank of the Kâbul river bounded on the west by the Alingâr and Kunâr rivers, and on the north by the snowy mountains Lamghān was visited in the middle of the 7th century by Huen Tsiang, who calls it Lan-po, and notes that its distance eastward from Kapiséné, to which before his time it had become subject, was 600 *li* (equal to 100 miles) The name of the people is met with in the *Mahâbhârata* and in the *Paurântik* lists under the form Lampâka Cunningham would therefore correct Ptolemy's Lambatai to Lambagai by the slight change of *L* for *T* A minute account of this little district is given in the *Memoirs of the Emperor Baber*, who states that it was called after Lamech, the father of Noah The *Dictionary of Hêmachandra*, which mentions the Lampâka, gives as another name of the people that of the Muranda Their language is Pushtu in its basis (See Cunningham's *Geog of Anc India*, pp 42-3, Saint-Martin, *Étude*, pp 74-5, also his *Lasic Central*, p 48, Lassen, *Ind Alt*, vol I, p 422)

Souastêne designates the basin of the Sounstos, which, as has already been noticed, is the river now called the river of Swât The full form of the name is Śubhvastu, which by the usual mode of contraction becomes Subhâstu or Suvâstu Souastêne is not the indigenous name of the district, but one evidently formed for it by the Greeks It is the country now inhabited

by the warlike tribes of the Yuzofzaïs which appears to have been called in ancient times with reference to the rich verdure and fertility of its valleys Udyâna, that is, 'a garden' or 'park'. It was visited by Hiuen Tsiang, who calls it the kingdom of U-chang-na.

The D a r a d r a i — Ptolemy has somewhat disfigured the name of these mountaineers, who are mentioned in the *Mahâbhârata* and in the *Chronicle of Kasmîr* as the Darada. They inhabited the mountain-region which lay to the east of the Lambatai and of Souastêne, and to the north of the uppermost part of the course of the Indus along the north-west frontier of Kasmîr. This was the region made so famous by the story of the gold-digging ants first published to the west by Hérodotos (lib III, c cn), and afterwards repeated by Megasthenës, whose version of it is to be found in Strabo (lib XV, c 1, 44) and in Arrian's *Indika* (sec 15) and also in Pliny (lib VI, c xxii and lib XI, c xxxvi). The name of the people in Strabo is Derdai, in Pliny Dardae, and in Dionys Periég (v 1138) Dardanoi. Their country still bears their name, being called Dardistân. The Sanskrit word *darad* among other meanings has that of 'mountain'. As the regions along the banks of the Upper Indus produced gold of a good quality, which found its way to India and Persia, and other countries farther west, it has been supposed that the Indus was one of the four rivers of Paradise mentioned in the book of *Genesis*, viz., the Pishon, "which compasseth the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold, and the gold of that land is good". This opinion has been advocated by

scholars of high name and authority. Havilah they take to be in a much altered form, the Sanskrit *saróvara*, 'a lake,' with reference perhaps to the lake in Tibet called *Manasaróvara*. Boscawen, however, has pointed out that there was a river called the Pisanu, belonging to the region between Nineveh and Babylon, where he locates paradise.

**Kaspuria** —The name and the position concur in indicating this to be the valley of Kasmir, a name which, according to Burnouf, is a contraction of *Kasyapamira*, which is thought with good reason to be the original whence came the Kaspapyros of the old Geographer Hekataios and the Kaspatyros of Hérodotos (lib III, c cu), who tells us (lib IV, c xliv) that it was from the city of that name and from the Paktykan land that Skylax the Karyandian started on his voyage of discovery down the Indus in order to ascertain for Darius where that river entered the sea. It cannot be determined with certainty where that city should be located, but there can be no good reason, as Wilson has shown (in opposition to the views of Wilford, Heeren, Mannert, and Wahl) for fixing it on any other river than the Indus. "We have no traces," he says, "of any such place as Kaspatyrus west of the Indus. Alexander and his generals met with no such city, nor is there any other notice of it in this direction. On the east of the river we have some vestige of it in oriental appellations, and Kaspatyrus is connected apparently with Kasmir. The preferable reading of the name is Kaspa-pyrus. It was so styled by Hecataeus, and the alteration is probably

an error. Now Kaśyapa-pur, the city of Kaśyapa, is, according to Sanskrit writers, the original designation of Kaśmīr, not of the province of the present day, but of the kingdom in its palmy state, when it comprehended great part of the Panjab, and extended no doubt as far as, if not beyond, the Indus"—*Ar Antq*, p 137

In the time of Ptolemy the kingdom of Kaśmīr was the most powerful state in all India. The dominions subject to its sceptre reached as far south as the range of the Vindhya and embraced, together with the extensive mountain region wherein the great rivers of the Panjab had their sources, a great part of the Panjab itself, and the countries which lay along the courses of the Jamnā and the Upper Ganges. So much we learn from Ptolemy's description which is quite in harmony with what is to be found recorded in the *Rājatarangini*, regarding the period which a little preceded that in which Ptolemy wrote—that the throne of Kasmīr was then occupied by a warlike monarch called Mēghāvahana who carried his conquests to a great distance southward (*Rājatar* vol III, pp 27 sqq.) The valley proper of Kasmīr was the region watered by the Bidaspūs (Jhelam) in the upper part of its course. Ptolemy assigns to it also the sources of the Sandabal (Chenāb) and of the Rhouadis (Rāvī) and thus includes within it the provinces of the lower Himālayan range that lay between Kasmīr and the Satlaj.

K y l i n d r i n ē designated the region of lofty mountains wherein the Vipāsā, the Śatadru, the Jamnā and the Ganges had their sources. The

inhabitants called K u l i n d a are mentioned in the *Mahâbhârata* in a long list there given of tribes dwelling between Mêru and Mandara and upon the Śailôdâ river, under the shadow of the Bambu forests, whose king presented lumps of ant-gold at the solemnity of the inauguration of Yudhishthîra as universal emperor Cunningham would identify Kylindrinê with "the ancient kingdom of Jâlandhara which since the occupation of the plains by the Muhammadans has been confined almost entirely to its hill territories, which were generally known by the name of Kângra, after its most celebrated fortress" Saint-Martin, however, is unable to accept this identification A territory of the name of K u l u t a, which was formed by the upper part of the basin of the Vipâsâ, and which may be included in the Kylin drinê of Ptolemy, is mentioned in a list of the *Varâha Samhitâ* Kuluta was visited by the Chinese pilgrim, Huen Tsiang, who transcribes the name K'iu-lu-to, a name which still exists under the slightly modified form of Koluta (See Lassen, *Ind Alt* vol I, p 547, Wilson, *Ar Antiq* p 135 n , Saint-Martin, *Étude*, 217, Cunningham, *Geog* pp 136—138)

G ô r y a i a designates the territory traversed by the Gouraios or river of Ghor, which, as has already been noticed, is the affluent of the Kâbul river now called the Landâi, formed by the junction of the river of Pañkora and the river of Swât Alexander on his march to India passed through Gôryaya, and having crossed the River Gouraios entered the territory of the Assakênoi The passage of the river is thus de-

scribed by Arrian (*Anab lib IV, c xxv*) "Alexander now advanced with a view to attack the Assakēnoi, and led his army through the territory of the Gouraiοi. He had great difficulty in crossing the Gouraiοs, the eponymous river of the country, on account of the depth and impetuosity of the stream, and also because the bottom was so strewn with pebbles that the men when wading through could hardly keep their feet." It can scarcely be doubted that the Gouraiοs is the Gaurī mentioned in the 6th Book of the *Mahābhārata* along with the Suvastu and the Kampanā. Arrian's notion that it gave its name to the country by which it flowed has been assented to by Lassen but has been controverted by Saint-Martin, who says (p 33), "the name of the Gouraiοi did not come, as one would be inclined to believe, and as without doubt the Greeks thought, from the river of Gur which watered their territory, the numerous and once powerful tribe of Ghorī, of which a portion occupies still to this day the same district, to the west of the Landāi, can advance a better claim to the attribution of the ancient classical name." In a note to this passage he says "Kur, with the signification of 'river,' *courant*, is a primitive term common to most of the dialects of the Indo-Germanic family. Hence the name of Kur (Greek, *Kύpos*, *Kύppos*, Lat Cyrus) common to different rivers of Asia. This name (of Ghorīs or Gūrs) ought to have originally the signification of 'mountaineers.' It is at least a remarkable fact that all the mountain region adjacent to the south of the Western Hindū-kōh and its prolongation in the direction of Herāt

have borne or still bear the names of Gûr, Ghôr, or Ghaur, Gurkân, Gurjistân, &c Let us add that *garayo* in Zend signifies 'mountains' ”

43 And the cities are these —

Kaisana . . . . .	120°	34° 20'
Barborana . . . . .	120° 15'	33° 40'
Gôrya . . . . .	122°	34° 45'
Nagara or Dionysopolis . . . . .	121° 45'	33°
Drastoka . . . . .	120° 30'	32° 30'

Kaisana, Barborana and Drastoka are places unknown, but as the same names occur in the list of the towns of the Paropanisadai (lib VI, c xviii, 4) it is not improbable, as Saint-Martin conjectures, that the repetition was not made by Ptolemy himself, but through a careless error on the part of some copyist of his works Cunningham thinks that Drastoka may have designated a town, in one of the *darâs* or 'valleys' of the Koh-Dâman, and that Baborana may be Parwân, a place of some consequence on the left bank of the Ghorband river in the neighbourhood of Opiân or Alexandria Opiane Kaisana he takes to be the Cartana of Pliny (lib VI, c xxii) according to whom it was situated at the foot of the Caucasus and not far from Alexandria, whilst according to Ptolemy it was on the right bank of the Pânjshir river These data, he says, point to Bêgrâm, which is situated on the right bank of the Pânjshir and Ghorband rivers immediately at the foot of the Kohistân hills, and within 6 miles of Opiân Bêgrâm also answers the description which Pliny gives of Cartana as *Tetragonis*, or the 'square,' for Masson, in his account of the ruins especially

notices "some mounds of great magnitude, and accurately describing a square of considerable dimensions" A coin of Eukratidēs has on it the legend Karisiyo Nagarā or city of Karisi (*Geog of Anc Ind*, pp 26-29)

Gōryā —Saint-Martin thinks that the position of this ancient city may be indicated by the situation of Mola-gouri, a place on the right or western bank of the River Landāī, as marked in one of Court's maps in the *Jour Beng As Soc*, vol VIII, p 34)

Nagarā or Dionysopolis —Lassen has identified this with Nanghenhar, the Nagarāhāra of Sanskrit, a place mentioned under this name in the *Paurāṇik Geography*, and also in a Buddhistic inscription thought to belong to the 9th century which was found in Behar. The city was visited by Hiuen Tsiang, who calls it Nakie-lo-ho. It was the capital of a kingdom of the same name, which before the time of the pilgrim had become subject to Kapisa, a state which adjoined it on the west. Its territory consisted of a narrow strip of land which stretched along the southern bank of the Kābul river from about Jagdalak as far westward as the Khaibar Pass. The city was called also Udyana-pura, that is, 'the city of gardens,' and this name the Greeks, from some resemblance in the sound translated into Dionysopolis (a purely Greek compound, signifying 'the city of Dionysos,' the god of wine), with some reference no doubt to legends which had been brought from the regions of Paropanisos by the companions of Alexander. This name in a mutilated form is found in-

scribed on a medal of Dionysios, one of the Greek kings, who possessed the province of what is now called Afghanistan in the 2nd century B.C. Some traces of the name of Udyanapura still exist, for, as we learn from Masson, "tradition affirms that the city on the plain of Jalâlabâd was called Ajûna," and the Emperor Baber mentions in his *Memoirs* a place called Adinapur, which, as the same author has pointed out, is now Bala-bâgh, a village distant about 13 miles westward from Jalâlabâd near the banks of the Surkhrud, a small tributary of the Kâbul river.

As regards the site of Nagarâhâra, this was first indicated by Masson, and afterwards fixed with greater precision by Mr. Simpson, who having been quartered for four months at Jalâlabâd during the late Afghan war took the opportunity of investigating the antiquities of the neighbourhood, which are chiefly of a Buddhist character. He has given an account of his researches in a paper read before the Royal Asiatic Society, and published in the Society's *Journal* (Vol. XIII, pp. 183-207). He there states that he found at a distance of 4 or 5 miles west from Jalâlabâd numerous remains of what must have been an ancient city, while there was no other place in all the vicinity where he could discover such marked evidences of a city having existed. The ruins in question lay along the right bank of a stream called the Surkhâb, that rushed down from the lofty heights of the Sufaid koh, and reached to its point of junction with the Kâbul river. The correctness of the identification he could not doubt, since the word 'Nagrak'

'Nagarat,' or 'Nagara' was still applied to the ruins by the natives on the spot, and since the site also fulfilled all the conditions which were required to make it answer to the description of the position of the old city as given by Hiuen Tsiang (See Lassen, *Ind Alt*, vol II, p 335, Saint-Martin's *Asie Centrale*, pp 52-56, Cunningham, *Geog of Anc Ind*, pp 44-46, Masson, *Various Journeys*, vol III, p 164)

44 Between the Souastos and the Indus  
the Gandarai and these cities —

Proklaīs	123°	32°
Naulibī	124° 20'	33° 20'

The Gandarai —Gandhāra is a name of high antiquity, as it occurs in one of the Vedic hymns where a wife is represented as saying with reference to her husband, "I shall always be for him a Gandhāra ewe" It is mentioned frequently in the *Mahābhārata* and other post-Vedic works, and from these we learn that it contained the two royal cities of Takshasilā (Taxila) and Pushkarāvatī (Peukelaōtis) the former situated to the east and the latter to the west of the Indus It would therefore appear that in early times the Gandhāric territory lay on both sides of that river, though in subsequent times it was confined to the western side According to Strabo the country of the Gandarai, which he calls Gadaritis, lay between the Khoaspēs and the Indus, and along the River Kōphēs The name is not mentioned by any of the historians of Alexander, but it must nevertheless have been known to the Greeks as early as the times of Hekataios, who as we

learn from Stephanos of Byzantium, calls Kaspa-pyros a Gandarie city H̄irodotos mentions the Gandarioi (Book III, c xxi) who includes them in the 7th Satrapy of Darius, along with the Sattagyda, the Dadikai and the Aparyta. In the days of Asōka and some of his immediate successors Gandhāra was one of the most flourishing seats of Buddhism. It was accordingly visited both by Fa-hian and Hiuen Tsiang, who found it to contain in a state of ruin many monuments of the past ascendancy of their faith. From data supplied by the narratives of these pilgrims Cunningham has deduced as the boundaries of Gandhāra, which they call Kien to-lo, on the west Lamghān and Jalalābād, on the north the hills of Swāt and Buner, on the east the Indus, and on the south the hills of Kālabāgh. "Within these limits," he observes, "stood several of the most renowned places of ancient India, some celebrated in the stirring history of Alexander's exploits, and others famous in the miraculous legends of Buddba, and in the subsequent history of Buddhism under the Indo-Seythian prince Kanishka" (*Geog. of Ind.*, p 48) Opinions have varied much with regard to the position of the Gandarioi. Rennell placed them on the west of Baktria in the province afterwards called Margiana, while Wilson (*Ar. Antiq.*, p 131) took them to be the people south of the Hindū-kush, from about the modern Kandahār to the Indus, and extending into the Panjāb and to Kasmīr. There is, however, no connexion between the names of Gandaria and Kandahār.

Proklaīs is the ancient capital of Gandhāra

situated to the west of the Indus, which was mentioned in the preceding remarks under its Sanskrit name P u s h k a l a v a t i , which means 'abounding in the lotus' Its name is given variously by the Greek writers as Peukelaōtis, Peukolaitis, Peukelas, and Proklaīs, the last form being common to Ptolemy with the author of the *Periplūs* The first form is a transliteration of the Pāli Pukhalaoti, the form Peukelas which is used by Arrian is taken by Cunningham to be a close transcript of the Pāli Pukkala, and the Proklaīs of Ptolemy to be perhaps an attempt to give the Hindi name of Pokhar instead of the Sanskrit Pushkara Arrian describes Peukelas as a very large and populous city lying near the Indus, and the capital of a prince called Astēs Ptolemy defines its position with more accuracy, as being on the eastern bank of the river of Souastēnē The *Periplūs* informs us that it traded in spikenard of various kinds, and in kostus and bdellium, which it received from different adjacent countries for transmission to the coast of India It has been identified with Hasht-nagar (*i.e.*, eight cities) which lies at a distance of about 17 miles from Parashāwar (Peshawar) Perhaps, as Cunningham has suggested, Hasht-nagar may mean not 'eight cities' but 'the city of Astēs'

**N a u l i b i** — "It is probable," says Cunningham, 'that Naulibi is Nilāb, an important town which gave its name to the Indus, but if so it is wrongly placed by Ptolemy, as Nilāb is to the South of the Kōphēs" (*Geog of Anc Ind*, p 48)

45 Between the Indus and the Bidaspēs

towards the Indus the Arsa territory and these cities —

Ithagouros	...	125° 40'	33° 20'
Taxiala .	.	125°	32° 15'

Arsa represents the Sanskrit *Urasa*, the name of a district which, according to Cunningham, is to be identified with the modern district of Rash in Dhantawar to the west of Muzafarabad, and which included all the hilly country between the Indus and Kasmir as far south as the boundary of Atak. It was visited by Hiuen Tsiang, who calls it U-la-shi and places it between Taxila and Kasmir. Pliny, borrowing from Megasthenes, mentions a people belonging to these parts called the *Arasagalatae*. The first part of the name answers letter for letter to the name in Ptolemy, and the latter part may point to the tribe Ghilet or Ghilgit, the Gahalata of Sanskrit (V Saint-Martin, *Étude*, pp 59-60). *Urasa* is mentioned in the *Mahâbhârata* and once and again in the *Râjatarangini*.

Ithagouros — The Ithagouroi are mentioned by Ptolemy (lib VI, c xvi) as a people of Sêrika, neighbouring on the Issêdones and Throanoi. Saint-Martin takes them to be the Dagors or Dangors, one of the tribes of the Daradas.

Taxiala is generally written as Taxila by the classical authors. Its name in Sanskrit is *Taksha-silâ*, a compound which means 'hewn rock' or 'hewn stone'. Wilson thinks it may have been so called from its having been built of that material instead of brick or mud, like most other cities in India, but Cunningham prefers to ascribe

to the name a legendary origin The Pâli form of the name as found in a copper-plate inscription is Tâkhasila, which sufficiently accounts for the Taxila of the Greeks The city is described by Arrian (*Anab lib V, c viii*) as great and wealthy, and as the most populous that lay between the Indus and the Hydaspes Both Strabo and Huen Tsiang praise the fertility of its soil, and the latter specially notices the number of its springs and watercourses Pliny calls it a famous city, and states that it was situated on a level where the hills sunk down into the plains It was beyond doubt one of the most ancient cities in all India, and is mentioned in both of the great national Epics At the time of the Makedonian invasion it was ruled by a prince called Taxiles, who tendered a voluntary submission of himself and his kingdom to the great conqueror About 80 years afterwards it was taken by Asóka, the son of Vindusâra, who subsequently succeeded his father on the throne of Magadha and established Buddhism as the state religion throughout his wide dominions In the early part of the 2nd century BC it had become a province of the Græco-Baktrian monarchy. It soon changed masters however, for in 126 BC the Indo-Skythian Sus or Abars acquired it by conquest, and retained it in their hands till it was wrested from them by a different tribe of the same nationality, under the celebrated Kanishka Near the middle of the first century A.D. Apollonius of Tyana and his companion Damis are said to have visited it, and described it as being about the size of Nineveh, walled like a Greek city, and as

the residence of a sovereign who ruled over what of old was the kingdom of Pôros Its streets were narrow, but well arranged, and such altogether as reminded the travellers of Athens Outside the walls was a beautiful temple of porphyry, wherein was a shrine, round which were hung pictures on copper tablets representing the feats of Alexander and Pôros (Priaule's *Apollon*, pp 13 sqq) The next visitors we hear of were the Chinese pilgrims Fa hian in 400 and Huen Tsiang, first in 630, and afterwards in 643 To them, as to all Buddhists, the place was especially interesting, as it was the scene of one of Buddha's most meritorious acts of alms-giving, when he bestowed his very head in charity After this we lose sight altogether of Taxila, and do not even know how or when its ruin was accomplished Its fate is one of the most striking instances of a peculiarity observable in Indian history, that of the rapidity with which some of its greatest capitals have perished, and the completeness with which even their very names have been obliterated from living memory That it was destroyed long before the Muhammadan invasion may be inferred from the fact that its name has not been found to occur in any Muhammadan author who has written upon India, even though his account of it begins from the middle of the tenth century Even Albîrûnî, who was born in the valley of the Indus, and wrote so early as the time of Mahmûd of Ghaznî, makes no mention of the place, though his work abounds with valuable information on points of geography The site of Taxila has been identified by

Cunningham, who has given an account of his explorations in his *Ancient Geography of India* (pp 104-124) The ruins, he says, cover an area of six square miles, and are more extensive, more interesting, and in much better preservation than those of any other ancient place in the Panjâb. These ruins are at a place called Shâh-dhêri, which is just one mile from Kâla-ka-scrâi, a town lying to the eastward of the Indus, from which it is distant a three days' journey Pliny says only a two days' journey, but he under-estimated the distance between Peukelaôtis and Taxila, whence his error

46	Around the Bidaspés, the country of the Pāndoōuoi, in which are these cities —
Labaka .. . . . .	..127° 30' 34° 15'
Sagala, otherwise called Euthymédia .. . . . .	.126° 20' 32°
Boukephala .. . . . .	125° 30' 20° 20'
Iômousa .. . . . .	124° 15' 30°

The Country of the Pāndoōuoi —The Pāndya country here indicated is that which formed the original seat of the Pāndavas or Lunar race, whose war with the Kauravas or Solar race is the subject of the *Mahâbhârata*. The Pāndavas figure not only in the heroic legends of India, but also in its real history,—princes of their line having obtained for themselves sovereignties in various parts of the country, in Pâjpâtâna in the Panjâb, on the banks of the Ganges, and the very south of the Peninsula. From a passage in the *Lalitavistara* we learn that at the time of the birth of Sâkamuni a Pângâra

dynasty reigned at Hastinâpura, a city on the Upper Ganges, about sixty miles to the north-east of Dehlî Megasthenê, as cited by Pliny, mentions a great Pândava kingdom in the region of the Jamnâ, of which Mathurâ was probably the capital According to Râjput tradition the celebrated Vikramâditya, who reigned at Ujjain (the Ozênnê of the Greeks) about half a century B C , and whose name designates an epoch in use among the Hindûs was a Pândava prince From the 8th to the 12th century of our æra Pândavas ruled in Indraprastha, a city which stood on or near the site of Dchh When all this is considered it certainly seems surprising, as Saint-Martin has observed (*Etude*, 206 n ) that the name of the Pandus is not met with up to the present time on any historic monument of the north of India except in two votive inscriptions of Buddhist *stûpas* at Bhilsa See also *Étude*, pp 205, 206

L a b a k a —“This is, perhaps,” says the same author (p 222), “the same place as a town of Lohkot (Lavakôta in Sanskrit) which makes a great figure in the Râjput annals among the cities of the Panjâb, but its position is not known for certain Wilford, we know not on what authority identified it with Lâhor, and Tod admits his opinion without examining it.”

S a g a l a, called also E u t h y m ê d i a —Sagala or Sangala (as Arrian less correctly gives the name) is the Sanskrit Sâkala or Sakala, which in its Prakrit form corresponds exactly to the name in Ptolemy This city is mentioned frequently in the *Mahâbhârata*, from which we learn that it was the



fication The Makedonians destroyed Sagala, but it was rebuilt by Dēmetrios, one of the Græco-Baktrian kings, who in honour of his father Euthydēmos called it *Euthydemia*. From this it would appear that the reading *Euthymidia* as given in Nobbe's and other texts, is erroneous—(see Cunningham's *Geog. of Anc. Ind.*, pp 180–187) cf Saint-Martin, pp 103–108)

**Boukephala** —Alexander, after the battle on the western bank of the Hydaspēs in which he defeated Pōros, ordered two cities to be built, one *Nikaiā*, so called in honour of his victory (*nikē*), and the other Boukephala, so called in honour of his favourite horse, Boukephalos, that died here either of old age and fatigue, or from wounds received in the battle. From the conflicting accounts given by the Greek writers it is difficult to determine where the latter city stood. If we follow Plutarch we must place it on the eastern bank of the Hydaspēs, for he states (*Vita Alexandre*) that Boukephalos was killed in the battle, and that the city was built on the place where he fell and was buried. If again we follow Strabo (lib XV, c 1, 29) we must place it on the west bank at the point where Alexander crossed the river which in all probability was at Dilāwar. If finally we follow Arrian we must place it on the same bank, but some miles farther down the river at Jalālpur, where Alexander had pitched his camp, and this was probably the real site. Boukephala seems to have retained its historical importance much longer than its sister city, for besides being mentioned here by Ptolemy it is

noticed also in Pliny (lib VI, c xx) who says that it was the chief of three cities that belonged to the Asini, and in the *Periplûs* (sec 47) and elsewhere Nikaia, on the other hand, is not mentioned by any author of the Roman period except Strabo, and that only when he is referring to the times of Alexander. The name is variously written Boukephala, Boukephalos, Boukephalia, and Boukephaleia. Some authors added to it the surname of Alexandria, and in the *Peutinger Tables* it appears as Alexandria Bucefalos. The horse Boukephalos was so named from his 'brow' being very broad, like that of an 'ox'. For a discussion on the site of Boukephala see Cunningham's *Geog of Anc Ind*, pp 159 sqq.

Iômousa is probably Jamma, a place of great antiquity, whose chiefs were reckoned at one time among the five great râjas of the north. It doubtless lay on the great highway that led from the Indus to Palibothra.

47 The regions extending thence towards the east are possessed by the Kaspeiraioi, and to them belong these cities —

48	Salagissa		129° 30'	34° 30'
Astrassos	.		131° 15'	34° 15'
Labokla	..		128°	33° 20'
Batanagra			130°	33° 30'
Arispara			130°	32° 50'
Amakatis	..		128° 15'	32° 20'
Ostobalasara	..		129°	32°
49	Kaspeira	..	127°	31° 15'
Pasikana	..		128° 30'	31° 15'
Daidala	.		128°	30° 30'
Ardonê			126° 15'	30° 10'

Indabara . . . . .	127° 15'	30°
Liganeira . . . . .	125° 30'	29°
Khonnamagara . . . . .	128°	29° 20'
50 Modoura, the city of the gods . . . . .	125°	27° 30'
Gagasmira . . . . .	126° 40'	27° 30'
Erarasa, a Metropolis. . . .	123°	26°
Kognandaua . . . . .	124°	26°

List of cities of the Kaspeiraios — This long list contains but very few names that can be recognized with certainty. It was perhaps carelessly transcribed by the copyists, or Ptolemy himself may have taken it from some work the text of which had been already corrupted. Be that as it may, we may safely infer from the constancy with which the figures of latitude in the list decrease, that the towns enumerated were so many successive stages on some line of road that traversed the country from the Indus to Mathurā on the Jamnā. Salagissa, Arispara, Pasikana, Liganeira, Khonnamagara and Kognandaua are past all recognition, no plausible conjecture has been made as to how they are to be identified.

Astrassos — This name resembles the Atrasa of Idrisi, who mentions it as a great city of the Kanauj Empire (*Ltude*, p 226)

La bokla — Lassen identified this with Lâhor, the capital of the Panjab (*Ind Alt*, vol III, p 152) Thornton and Cunningham confirm this identification. The city is said to have been founded by Lava or Lo, the son of Râma, after whom it was

named Lohâwar. The *Labo* in Labo-kla must be taken to represent the name of Lava. As for the terminal *kla*, Cunningham (*Geog. of Anc. Ind.*, p. 198) would alter it to *laka* thus, making the whole name Labolaka for Lavâlaka or 'the abode of Lava.'

**B a t a n a g r a** —Ptolemy places this 2 degrees to the east of Labokla, but Saint-Martin (p. 226) does not hesitate to identify it with Bhatnair (for Bhattachanagara) 'the town of the Bhatis' though it lies nearly three degrees south of Lâhor. Yule accepts this identification. A different reading is K a t a n a g a r a.

**A m a k a t i s** (v. l. Amakastis) —According to the table this place lay to the S E of Labokla but its place in the map is to the S W of it. Cunningham (pp. 195-197) locates it near Shekohpur to the south of which are two ruined mounds which are apparently the remains of ancient cities. These are called Amba and Kâpi respectively, and are said to have been called after a brother and a sister, whose names are combined in the following couplet —

Amba-Kapa paî larai

Kalpi bahin chlurâwan ai

When strife arose 'tween Amb and Kâp

Their sister Kalpi made it up

"The junction of the two names," Cunningham remarks, "is probably as old as the time of Ptolemy, who places a town named Amakatis or Amakapis to the west of the Râvi, and in the immediate neighbourhood of Labokla or Lâhor." The distance of the mounds referred to from Lâhor is about 25 miles.

**Ostobalasara** (v 1 Stobolasara) Saint-Martin has identified this with Thanesar (Sthānēśvara in Sanskrit) a very ancient city, celebrated in the heroic legends of the Pāndavas Cunningham however thinks that Thanesar is Ptolemy's Batangkaisara and suggests that we should read Satanaisara to make the name approach nearer to the Sanskrit Sthānēśvara—the Sa-ta-nī shi-fa lo of Hiuen Tsang (p 331)

**Kaspēira**—"If this name," says Saint-Martin, (p 226) "is to be applied, as seems natural, to the capital of Kasmir, it has been badly placed in the series, having been inserted probably by the ancient Latin copyists"

**Daidala**—An Indian city of this name is mentioned by Stephanos of Byzantion, but he locates it in the west Curtius also has a Daedala (lib VIII, c x), a region which according to his account was traversed by Alexander before he crossed the Khoaspēs and laid siege to Mazaga Yule in his map places it doubtfully at Dudhal on the Khaghar river to the east of Bhatneer, near the edge of the great desert

**Ardonē**—Ahroni, according to Yule, a place destroyed by Timūr on his march, situated between the Khaghar and Chitang rivers, both of which lose themselves in the great desert

**Indabara** is undoubtedly the ancient Indraprastha, a name which in the common dialects is changed into Indabatta (Indopat), and which becomes almost Indabara in the cerebral pronunciation of the last syllable The site of this city was in the neighbourhood of Dehli It was the capital city of the Pāndavas The Prākrit

form of the name is Indrabattha (Lassen, vol III, p 151)

*Modoura*, the city of the gods — There is no difficulty in identifying this with Mathurâ (Muttra) one of the most sacred cities in all India, and renowned as the birthplace of Krishna. Its temples struck Mahmûd of Ghaznî with such admiration that he resolved to adorn his own capital in a similar style. The name is written by the Greeks *Methora* as well as *Modoura*. It is situated on the banks of the Jamnâ, higher up than Agra, from which it is 35 miles distant. It is said to have been founded by Satrughna, the younger brother of Râma. As already mentioned it was a city of the Pândavas whose power extended far to westward.

*Gagasmira* — Lassen and Saint Martin agree in recognizing this as Ajmîr. Yule, however, objects to this identification on the ground that the first syllable is left unaccounted for, and proposes Jajhar as a substitute. Gegasius, he argues, represents in Plutarch Yayâti, the great ancestor of the Lunar race, while Jajhpûr in Orissa was properly Yayâtipûra. Hence probably in Jajhar, which is near Delhi, we have the representative of Gagasmira.

*Erarasasa* — Ptolemy calls this a metropolis. It appears, says Yule, to be Girirîja, 'royal hill,' and may be Goverdhan which was so called, and was a capital in legendary times (*Ind Antq* vol I, p 23). Saint-Martin suggests Varârasî, now Banâras, which was also a capital. He thinks that this name and the next, which ends the list were additions of the Roman copyists.

51 Still further to the east than the Kas  
pciraiοι are the Gymnosophistaι, and  
after these around the Ganges further north  
are the Daitikhaι with these towns —

Konta	133° 30'	34° 40'
Margara	135°	34°
Batangkaisara the river	132° 40'	33° 20'
Passala	137°	34° 15'
Orza	136°	33° 20'

Gymnosophistaι —This Greek word means  
Naked philosophers,' and did not designate any  
ethnic or political section of the population, but  
a community of religious ascetics or hermits  
located along the Ganges probably, as Yule thinks  
in the neighbourhood of Hardwār and also accord-  
ing to Benfey, of Dehli, *Indien*, p 95 For an  
account of the Gymnosophists see *Ind Antq*  
vol VI, pp 242-244

Daitikhaι —This name is supposed to repre-  
sent the Sanskrit jaṭha, which means 'wearing  
twisted or plaited hair'. The name does not occur  
in the lists in this form but Kern, as Yule states,  
has among tribes in the no-th-cast "Demons  
with elf locks" which is represented in Wilford  
by Jai dhara

Konta, says Saint-Martin (*Etude*, p 321) is  
probably Kunda on the left bank of the Jamnā  
to the south east of Saharanpur

Margara —Perhaps, according to the same  
authority, Marhāra near the Kalndi River to the  
north-east of Agra

**Batangkaissa**—Yule objecting to Saint Martin's identification of this place with Bhatkashaur in Saharanpur pargana, on the ground of its being a modern combination, locates it, but doubtfully, at Kesarwa east of the Jamnâ, where the position suits fairly

**Passala**—Pliny mentions a people called **Passale**, who may be recognized as the inhabitants of Pañchâla or the region that lay between the Ganges and the Jamnâ, and whose power, according to the *Mahâbhârata*, extended from the Himalayas to the Chambal River Passala we may assume was the capital of this important state, and may now, as Saint-Martin thinks, be represented by Bisauli This was formerly a considerable town of Rohilkhand, 30 miles from Sambhal towards the south east, and at a like distance from the eastern bank of the Ganges

**Orza** is perhaps Sarsi situated on the Râm-gangâ river in the lower part of its course

52 Below these are the **Anikhai** with these towns —

Persakra	134°	32° 40'
Sannabi	135°	32° 30'
Tosna to the east of the river	136° 30'	32°

53 Below these **Prasikhe** with these towns —

Sambalaka	132° 15'	31° 50'
Adisvara	136°	31° 30'
Kanagora	135°	30° 40'
Kindia	137°	30° 20'
Sagala, and east of the river	139°	30° 20'

Aninakha .. . . .	137° 20'	31° 40'
Koangka .. . . . .	138° 20'	31° 30'

**A n i k h a i** (v l. *Nanikhai*, *Manikhai*) — This name cannot be traced to its source. The people it designated must have been a petty tribe, as they had only 3 towns, and their territory must have lain principally on the south bank of the *Jamnâ*. Their towns cannot be identified. The correct reading of their name is probably *Manikhai*, as there is a town on the Ganges in the district which they must have occupied called *Manikpur*. There is further a tribe belonging to the Central Himalaya region having a name slightly similar, *Manga* or *Mangars*, and the *Āīn-i-Albari* mentions a tribe of *Manneyeh* which had once been powerful in the neighbourhood of *Dehlî* (*Étude*, p 322). The form *Nanikha* would suggest a people named in the *Mahâbhârata* and the *Purânas*, the *Naimishas* who lived in the region of the *Jamnâ*.

**P r a s i a k ê** — This word transliterates the Sanskrit *Prâchyala* which means ‘eastern’ and denoted generally the country along the Ganges. It was the country of the *Prasî*, whose capital was *Palibothra*, now *Pâtnâ*, and who in the times immediately subsequent to the Makedonian invasion had spread their empire from the mouths of the Ganges to the regions beyond the Indus. The *Prasiakê* of Ptolemy however was a territory of very limited dimensions, and of uncertain boundaries. Though seven of its towns are enumerated *Palibothra* is not among them, but is mentioned afterwards as the capital of the *Mandalai* and placed more than 3 degrees farther south than

the most southern of them all Yule remarks upon this "Where the tables detail cities that are in Prasiakê, cities among the Poruari, &c, we must not assume that the cities named were really in the territories named, whilst we see as a sure fact in various instances that they were not. Thus the Mandalae, displaced as we have mentioned, embrace Palibothra, which was notoriously the city of the Prasii, while Prasiakê is shoved up stream to make room for them Lassen has so much faith in the uncorrected Ptolemy that he accepts this, and finds some reason why Prasiakê is not the land of the Prasii but something else"

S a m b a l a k a is Sambhal, already mentioned as a town of Rohilkhand Sambalaka or Sambhala is the name of several countries in India, but there is only this one town of the name that is met with in the Eastern parts It is a very ancient town and on the same parallel as Dehlî

A d i s d a r a —This has been satisfactorily identified with A h i c h h a t r a, a city of great antiquity, which figures in history so early as the 14th century BC At this time it was the capital of Northern Pañchâla The form of the name in Ptolemy by a slight alteration becomes *Adisadra*, and this approximates closely to the original form Another city so called belonged to Central India, and this appears in Ptolemy as A de i s a t h r a, which he places in the country of the Bêttigoi The meaning of the name Ahî-chhattra is 'serpent umbrella' and is explained by a local legend concerning Âdi-Râjâ and the serpent demon, that while the Râjâ was asleep a serpent formed

a canopy over him with its expanded hood. The fort is sometimes called Adikot, though the commoner name is Ahichhatra, sometimes written Ahikshatra. The place was visited by Hiuen Tsiang. In modern times it was first visited by Captain Hodgson, who describes it as the ruins of an ancient fortress several miles in circumference, which appears to have had 34 bastions, and is known in the neighbourhood by the name of the Pându's Fort. It was visited afterwards by Cunningham (*Anc Geog of Ind*, pp 359—363).

**Kanagora** — This, as Saint-Martin points out, may be a corruption for Kanagoza, a form of Kanyâkubja or Kanauj. This city of old renown was situated on the banks of the Kalinadi, a branch of the Ganges, in the modern district of Farrukhâbâd. The name applies not only to the city itself but also to its dependencies and to the surrounding district. The etymology (*kanya*, 'a girl,' and *kubja* 'round-shouldered' or 'crooked') refers to a legend concerning the hundred daughters of Kusânâbha, the king of the city, who were all rendered crooked by Vâyu for non-compliance with his licentious desires (see also Beal, *Buddhist Records*, vol I, p 209). The ruins of the ancient city are said to occupy a site larger than that of London. The name recurs in another list of towns under the form Kanogiza, and is there far displaced.

**Kindia** may be identified with Kant, an ancient city of Rohilkhand, the Shâhjahânpur of the present day. Yule hesitates whether to identify it thus or with Mirzapur on the Ganges.

**Sagala** — "Sagala," says Saint-Martin (*Étude*,

p 326) "would carry us to a town of Sakula or Saghēla, of which mention is made in the Buddhist Chronicles of Ceylon among the royal cities of the North of India, and which Turnour believes to be the same town as Kusinagara, celebrated as the place where Buddha Sākyamuni obtained *Nirvāna*. Such an identification would carry us to the eastern extremity of Kōsala, not far from the River Gandakī.

Koangka ought to represent the Sanskrit *kanaka*, 'gold'. Mention is made of a town called in the Buddhistic legends Kanakavatī (abounding in gold), but no indication is given as to where its locality was (*Étude*, p 326).

54 South of this Saurabatis with these towns —

Empēlathra	130°	30°
Nadoubandagar	138° 40'	29°
Tamasis	133°	29°
Kouraporeina	130°	29°

Saurabatis — This division is placed below Prasiakē. The ordinary reading is Sandrabatis, which is a transliteration of the Sanskrit Chandravatī. The original, Saint-Martin suggests, may have been Chhattravatī, which is used as a synonym of Ahikshētra, and applies to that part of the territory of Pañchāla which lies to the east of the Ganges. He thinks it more than probable that Sandrabatis, placed as it is just after a group of towns, two of which belong to Ahikshētra, does not differ from this Chhattravatī, the only country of the name known to Sanskrit Geography in the Gangetic region. None of the

four towns can be identified. (See Lassen, Ind Alt vol I, p 662, *Etude*, p 326) Yule, however, points out that this territory is one of those which the endeavour to make Ptolemy's names cover the whole of India has greatly dislocated, transporting it from the SW of Rājputāna to the vicinity of Bahār His map locates Sandrahitis (Chandravati) between the River Mahī and the Ārāvalli mountains

55 And further, all the country along the rest of the course of the Indus is called by the general name of Indo-Skythia Of this the insular portion formed by the bifurcation of the river towards its mouth is Patalēnē, and the region above this is Abirria, and the region about the mouths of the Indus and the Gulf of Kanthi is Syrastrēnē The towns of Indo-Skythia are these at some distance therefrom —

56 Artoarta

Andrapana

Sabana

Banagara

Kodrana

Ptolemy from his excursion to the Upper Ganges now reverts to the Indus and completes its geography by describing Indo-Skythia, a vast region which comprised all the countries traversed by the Indus, from where it is joined by the river of Kâbul onward to the ocean We have already pointed out how Ptolemy's description is here vitiated by his making the combined stream of the Panjâb

121° 30' 31° 15'  
121° 15' 30° 40'

122° 20' 32°  
122° 15' 30° 40'

121° 15' 29° 20'

rivers join the Indus only one degree below its junction with the Kâbul, instead of six degrees, or half way between that point and the ocean. The egregious error he has here committed seems altogether inexcusable, for whatever may have been the sources from which he drew his information, he evidently neglected the most accurate and the most valuable of all—the records, namely, of the Makedonian invasion as transmitted in writings of unimpeachable credit. At best, however, it must be allowed the determination of sites in the Indus valley is beset with peculiar uncertainty. The towns being but very slightly built are seldom of more than ephemeral duration, and if, as often happens they are destroyed by inundations, every trace is lost of their ever having existed. The river besides frequently changes its course and leaves the towns which it abandons to sink into decay and utter oblivion.<sup>24</sup> Such places again as still exist after escaping these and other casualties, are now known under names either altogether different from the ancient, or so much changed as to be hardly recognizable. This instability of the nomenclature is due to the frequency with which the valley has been conquered by foreigners. The period at

<sup>24</sup> Aristoboulos as we learn from Strabo (lib XV, c 1 19) when sent into this part of India saw a tract of land deserted which contained 1,000 cities with their dependent villages the Indus having lost its proper channel, was diverted into another on the left hand much deeper, and precipitated itself into it like a cataract so that it no longer watered the country by the usual inundation on the right hand, from which it had receded, and this was elevated above the level not only of the new channel of the river, but above that of the (new) inundation.

which the Skythians first appeared in the valley which was destined to bear their name for several centuries has been ascertained with precision from Chinese sources. We thence gather that a wandering horde of Tibetan extraction called Yuei-chi or Ye-tha in the 2nd century BC left Tangut, their native country, and, advancing westward found for themselves a new home amid the pasture lands of Zungaria. Here they had been settled for about thirty years when the invasion of a new horde compelled them to migrate to the Steppes which lay to the north of the Jaxartes. In these new seats they halted for only two years, and in the year 128 BC they crossed over to the southern bank of the Jaxartes where they made themselves masters of the rich provinces between that river and the Oxus, which had lately before belonged to the Grecian kings of Baktriana. This now conquest did not long satisfy their ambition, and they continued to advance southwards till they had overrun in succession Eastern Baktriana, the basin of the Kôphêš, the basin of the Etymander with Ara khôsia, and finally the great valley of the Indus and Syrastrêne. This great horde of the Yetha was divided into several tribes, whereof the most powerful was that called in the Chinese annals Kwei-shwang. It acquired the supremacy over the other tribes, and gave its name to the kingdom of the Yetha. They are identical with the Kushâns. The great King Kanishka, who was converted to Buddhism and protected that faith was a Kushan. He reigned in the first century of the Christian era and ruled from Baktriana to

Kaśmîr, and from the Oxus to Surâshtra These Kushans of the Panjâb and the Indus are no others than the Indo Skythians of the Greeks In the *Rājataranginî* they are called Sâka and Turushka (Turks) Their prosperity could not have been of very long duration, for the author of the *Periplûs*, who wrote about half a century after Kanishka's time mentions that "Minnagar, the metropolis of Skythia, was governed by Parthian princes" and this statement is confirmed by Parthian coins being found everywhere in this part of the country Max Müller, in noticing that the presence of Turanian tribes in India as recorded by Chinese historians is, fully confirmed by coins and inscriptions and the traditional history of the country such as it is, adds that nothing attests the presence of these tribes more clearly than the blank in the Brahmanical literature of India from the first century before to the 3rd after our era He proposes therefore to divide Sanskrit literature into two—the one (which he would call the ancient and natural) *before*, and the other (which he would call the modern and artificial) *after* the Turanian invasion In his Indo-Skythia Ptolemy includes Patalêñê, A bîria, and Syras-trêñê The name does not occur in Roman authors

Patalêñê, so called from its capital Patala, was the delta at the mouth of the Indus It was not quite so large as the Egyptian delta with which the classical writers frequently compare it Before its conquest by the Skythians it had been subject to the Græco-Baktrian kings. Its reduction to

their authority is attributed by Strabo (lib XI, c xii, 1) to Menander or to Démétrios, the son of Euthydêmos

**A b i r i a** —The country of the **A b h i r a s** (the Ahirs of common speech) lay to the east of the Indus, above where it bifurcates to form the delta In Sanskrit works their name is employed to designate generally the pastoral tribes that inhabit the lower districts of the North-West as far as Sindh That **Abiria** is the **O p h i r** of Scripture is an opinion that has been maintained by scholars of eminence

**S y r a s t r ê n ê** represents the Sanskrit **Surâshtra** (the modern Sorath) which is the name in the *Mahâbhârata* and the *Purânae* for the Peninsula of Gujarât In after times it was called Valabhi Pliny (lib VI, c xx) in his enumeration of the tribes of this part of India mentions the Horatae, who have, he says, a fine city, defended by marshes, wherein are kept man-eating crocodiles that prevent all entrance except by a single bridge The name of this people is no doubt a corruption of Sorath They have an inveterate propensity to sound the letter *S* as an *H*

Ptolemy distributes into six groups the names of the 41 places which he specifies as belonging to the Indus valley and its neighbourhood The towns of the second group (*sections 57 and 58*) indicate by their relative positions that they were successive stages on the great caravan route which ran parallel with the western bank of the river all the way from the Kôphêis junction downward to the coast The towns of the fourth group (*section 61*) were in like manner

successive stages on another caravan route, the which on the eastern side of the river traversed the country from the great confluence with the combined rivers of the Panjâb downward to the Delta. The towns of the first group (5 in number) belonged to the upper part of the valley, and were situated near the Kôphê junction. They are mentioned in a list by themselves, as they did not lie on the great line of communication above mentioned. The third group consists of the two towns which were the chief marts of commerce in the Delta. The towns of the fifth group (7 in number) lay at distances more or less considerable from the eastern side of the Delta. The towns of the sixth group (*section 64*) were included in the territory of the *Khatrias*, which extended on both sides of the river from its confluence with the Panjâb rivers as far as the Delta. None of them can now be identified (See *Etude*, pp 234 sqq) and of the first group—*Artoartsa*, *Sabana*, *Kodrana* cannot be identified.

*Andrapana*—Cunningham (p 86) thinks this is probably Draband, or Derâband, near Dera-Ismail-Khan.

*Banagara* (for *Bana-nagara*)—Banna or Banu is often cited as the name of a town and a district that lay on the line of communication between Kâbul and the Indoos. It was visited both by Fa-hien and Huen Tsang. The former calls the country Po-na : e, Baza. The latter calls it Fa-la-na whence Cunningham conjectures that the original name was Varana or Parza. It consisted of the lower half of the valley of the Kuram river, and was distant from Lamghân a

15 days' journey southward It is one of the largest, richest and most populous districts to the west of the Indus—(See Geog. of Anc. Ind., pp 84-86)

	57 And along the river —	124°	31°
Embolma	...	124°	30° 20'
Pentagramma	..	123°	29° 30'
Asigramma	..	121° 30'	28° 50'
Tiausa	.	120°	27° 30'
Aristobathra	.	119° 20'	27°
Azika	.	117°	23° 30'
58 Pardabathra	...	116° 30'	25°
Piska	....	114° 30'	24°
Pasipecta	...	112°	22° 20'
Sousikana	...	111°	21° 30'
Bônis	...	110° 30'	20° 40'
Kôlaka	...		

Embolima was situated on the Indus at a point about 60 miles above Attak, where the river escapes with great impetuosity from a long and narrow gorge, which the ancients mistook for its source. Here, on the western bank, rises the fort of Amb, now in ruins, crowning a position of remarkable strength, and facing the small town of Derbend, which lies on the opposite side of the river. The name of Amb suggested that it might represent the first part of the name of Embolima, and this supposition was raised to certitude when it was discovered that another ruin not far off, crowning a pinnacle of the same hill on which Amb is seated, preserves to this day in the tradition of the inhabitants the

name of Balimah Embolima is mentioned by Arrian (lib IV, c xxvii) who represents it as situated at no great distance from the rock of Aornos—which as Abbott has shown, was Mount Mahāban, a hill abutting on the western bank of the Indus, about eight miles west from Embolima. It is called by Curtius Ecbolima (*Anab* lib VIII, c xii) but he gives its position wrongly—at sixteen days' march from the Indus. Ptolemy assigns to it the same latitude and longitude which he assigns to the point where the Kabul river and Indus unite. It was erroneously supposed that Embolima was a word of Greek origin from ἐκβολή, 'the mouth of a river' (cf Cunningham, *Geog of Anc Ind*, pp 52 ff.)

**Pentagramma** —To the north of the Kōphēs at a distance of about forty miles SW from Embolima is a place called Panjpūr, which agrees closely both in its position and the signification of its name (5 towns) with the Pentagramma of Ptolemy.

**Asigramma** and the five towns that come after it cannot be identified.

**Pasipēda** —Saint-Martin thinks this may be the Besmeid of the Arab Geographers, which, as they tell us was a town of considerable importance, lying east of the Indus on the route from Mansūra to Multān. Its name is not to be found in any existing map, but as the Arab itineraries all concur in placing it between Rond (now Roda) and Multān, at a three days' journey from the former, and a two days' journey from the latter, we may determine its situation to have been as far down the river as Mithankot, where the great con-

fluence now takes place. If the fact that Besmeid was on the eastern side of the river staggers our faith in this identification, Saint-Martin would remind us that this part of the tables is far from presenting us with a complete or systematic treatment of the subject, and that the only way open to us of restoring some part at least of these lists is to have recourse to synonyms. He contends that when we find in the Arab itineraries (which are documents of the same nature precisely as those which Ptolemy made use of) names resembling each other placed in corresponding directions, we ought to attach more weight to such coincidences than to the contradictions real, or apparent, which present themselves in the text of our author. Analogous transpositions occur in other lists, as, for instance, in the list of places in the Narmada basin Cunningham, thinking it strange that a notable place of great antiquity like Sehwân, which he identifies with Sindomanâ, should not be mentioned by Ptolemy under any recognizable name, hazards the conjecture that it may be either his Piska or Pasipêda. "If we take," he says, "Haïdarâbâd as the most probable head of the Delta in ancient times, then Ptolemy's Sydros, which is on the eastern bank of the Indus, may perhaps be identified with the old site of Mattali, 12 miles above Haïdarâbâd and his Pasipêda with Sehwân. The identification of Ptolemy's Oskana with the Oxykanus or Portikanus of Alexander and with the great mound of Mahorta of the present day is I think almost certain. If so, either Piska or Pasipêda must be Sehwân."

**Sousikana** — It is generally agreed that this

is a corrupt reading for Musikanā, the royal city of Musikanos, who figures so conspicuously in the records of the Makedonian Invasion, and whose kingdom was described to Alexander as being the richest and most populous in all India Cunningham (p 257) identifies this place with Alôr, which was for many ages the capital of the powerful kingdom of Upper Sindh Its ruins, as he informs us, are situated to the south of a gap in the low range of limestone hills which stretches southwards from Bakhar for about 20 miles until it is lost in the broad belt of sand-hills which bound the Nâra or old bed of the Indus on the west Through this gap a branch of the Indus once flowed which protected the city on the north-west To the north-east it was covered by a second branch of the river which flowed nearly at right angles to the other at a distance of three miles When Alôr was deserted by the river, it was supplanted by the strong fort of Bakhar (p 258) The same author thinks it probable that Alôr may be the Binagara of Ptolemy, as it is placed on the Indus to the eastward of Oskana, which appears to be the Oxykanus of Arrian and Curtius

Bônîs —The table places this at the point of bifurcation of the western mouth of the river and an interior arm of it Arab geographers mention a town called Bania in Lower Sindh, situated at the distance of a single journey below Mansurâ This double indication would appear to suit very well with Banna, which stands at the point where the Pinnarî separates from the principal arm about 25 miles above Thattha Its

position is however on the eastern bank of the river (*Étude*, pp 238, 239) Kôlaka or Kôlala is probably identical with the Krôkala of Arrian's *Indika* (sec 21), which mentions it as a small sandy island where the fleet of Nearkhos remained at anchor for one day. It lay in the bay of Karâchi, which is situated in a district called Karkalla even now.

59 And in the islands formed by the river  
are these towns —

Patala .

Barbarei .

60 And east of the river at some distance  
therefrom are these towns —

Xodrakê

Sarbana

Auxoamis

Asinda

Orbadarou or Ordabari

Theophila

Astakapra

$112^{\circ} 30'$        $21^{\circ}$

$113^{\circ} 15'$        $22^{\circ} 30'$

$116^{\circ}$        $24^{\circ}$

$116^{\circ}$        $22^{\circ} 50'$

$115^{\circ} 30'$        $22^{\circ} 20'$

$114^{\circ} 15'$        $22^{\circ}$

$115^{\circ}$        $22^{\circ}$

$114^{\circ} 15'$        $21^{\circ} 10'$

$114^{\circ} 40'$        $20^{\circ} 15'$

Patala as we learn from Arrian was the greatest city in the parts of the country about the mouths of the Indus. It was situated, he expressly states, at the head of the Delta where the two great arms of the Indus dispart. This indication would of itself have sufficed for its identification, had the river continued to flow in its ancient channels. It has, however, frequently changed its course, and from time to time shifted the point of bifurcation. Hence the question regarding the site of Patala has occasioned much

controversy Rennell and Vincent, followed by Burnes and Ritter, placed it at Thiattha, Droyesen, Bensey, Saint-Martin and Cunningham, at Haidarâbâd (the Nirankot of Arab writers), and McMурdo, followed by Wilson and Lassen, at a place about 90 miles to the north-east of Haidarâbâd. The last supposition is quite untenable, while the arguments in favour of Haidarâbâd which at one time was called Patalapur<sup>25</sup> appear to be quite conclusive (See Sant-Martin, pp 180 ff., Cunningham, pp 279-287). Patala figures conspicuously in the history of the Macedonian invasion. In its spacious docks Alexander found suitable accommodation for his fleet which had descended the Indus, and here he remained with it for a considerable time. Seeing how advantageously it was situated for strategy as well as commerce, he strengthened it with a citadel, and made it a military centre for controlling the warlike tribes in its neighbourhood. Before finally leaving India he made two excursions from it to the ocean sailing first down the western and then down the eastern arm of the river. Patâla in Sanskrit mythology was the name of the lowest of the seven regions in the interior of the earth and hence may have been applied to denote generally the parts where the sun descends into the under world, the land of the west, as in contrast to Prâchayaka, the land of the east. *Pâtala* in Sanskrit means 'the

---

<sup>25</sup> The Brahmins of Schwan have stated to us that according to local legends recorded in their Sanskrit books Kaboul is the ancient *Chichapalapoura* Multân, Prahlâdpur, Tattha, Dîval, Haidarâbâd, Niran, and more anciently *Patalpuri*" Dr J Wilson, *Journ Bombay Asiat Soc*, vol III, 1850, p 77

trumpet-flower,' and Cunningham thinks that the Delta may have been so called from some resemblance in its shape to that of this flower. The classic writers generally spell the name as Patala.

**B**arbarei.—The position of Barbarei, like that of Patala, has been the subject of much discussion. The table of Ptolemy places it to the north of that city, but erroneously, since Barbarei was a maritime port. It is mentioned in the *Periplūs* under the name of Barbārikōn, as situated on the middle mouth of the Indus, D'Anville in opposition to all the data placed it at Debal Sindhi, the great emporium of the Indus during the middle ages, or at Karāchi while Elliot, followed by Cunningham, placed it at an ancient city, of which some ruins are still to be found, called Bambhara, and situated almost midway between Karāchi and Thattha on the old western branch of the river which Alexander reconnoitred. Burnes again, followed by Ritter, placed it at Richel, and Saint-Martin a little further still to the east at Bandar Vikkar on the Hajamari mouth, which has at several periods been the main channel of the river.

**Xodrakē and Sarbana or Sardana**—As the towns in this list are given in their order from north to south, and as Astakapra, the most southern, was situated on the coast of the peninsula of Gujarāt right opposite the mouth of the river Narmadā, the position of Xodrakē and the other places in the list must be sought for in the neighbourhood of the Rān of Kachh. Xodrakē and Sarbana have not been identified, but Yule doubt-

ingly places the latter on the Sambhar Lake Lassen takes Xodrakē to be the capital of the Xudraka, and locates it in the corner of land between the Vîrstâ and Chandrabhâgâ (*Ind Alt*, vol III, p 145)

**Aśinda**, according to Saint-Martin, may perhaps be Siddipur (Siddhipura), a town on the river Sarasvatî, which rising in the Aravalîs empties into the Gulf of Kachch (pp 246 247)

**Auxoamis or Axumis** —The same authority would identify this with Sûmî, a place of importance and seat of a Muhammadian chief, lying a little to the east of the Sarasvatî and distant about twenty-five miles from the sea Yule however suggests that Ajmir may be its modern representation

**Orbadarou or Ordabari** —Yule doubtfully identifies this with Arbuda or Mount Abû, the principal summit of the Arâvalîs Pliny mentions alongside of the Horatae (in Gujarat) the Odombocerae which may perhaps be a different form of the same word The name Udumbara is one well-known in Sanskrit antiquity, and designated a royal race mentioned in the *Hariyânsa*

**Theophila** —This is a Greek compound meaning ‘dear to God,’ and is no doubt a translation of some indigenous name Lassen has suggested that of Sardhur, in its Sanskrit form Surâdara, which means ‘adoration of the gods’ Sardhur is situated in a valley of the Rêvata mountains so celebrated in the legends of Krishna Yule suggests Dowaliya, a place on the isthmus, which connects the peninsula with the mainland Dr Burgess, Thân, the chief town of a district

traditionally known as Deva-Pāñchâl, lying a little further west than Dewaliya Col Watson writes —“The only places I can think of for Theophila are—1 Gûndî, the ancient Gundigadh, one and a half or two miles further up the Hathap river, of which city Hastakavapra was the port This city was one of the halting-places of the Bhaunagar Brâhmans ere they came to Gogha It was no doubt by them considered dear to the gods It was connected with Hastakavapra and was a city of renown and ancient 2 Pardwa or Priya dêva, an old village, about four or five miles west of Hathap It is said to have been contemporary with Valabhî, and there is an ancient Jain temple there, and it is said that the Jains of Gundigadh had their chief temple there 3 Dêvagana, an ancient village at the foot of the west slopes of the Khôkras about 18 milcs from Hâthap to the westward ”

A stakapra —This is mentioned in the *Periplûs* (sec 41), as being near a promontory on the eastern side of the peninsula which directly confronted the mouth of the Narmadâ on the opposite side of the gulf It has been satisfactorily identified with Hastakavapra, a name which occurs in a copper-plate grant of Dhruvasêna I, of Valabhî, and which is now represented by Hathab near Bhavnagar Bühler thinks that the Greek form is not derived immediately from the Sanskrit, but from an intermediate old Prakrit word Hastakampra (See *Ind Ant*, vol V, pp 204, 314 )

61 Along the river are these towns —

Panasa	.	.	.	122° 30' 29"
Boudaia	.	.	.	121° 15' 28° 15'

Naagramma	...	.120°	27°
Kamigara	.	119°	26° 20'
Binagira	.	118°	25° 20'
Parabali	.	116° 30'	24° 30'
Sydras	...	114°	21° 20'
Epitausi		113° 45'	22° 30'
Xorna		.113° 30'	21° 30'

Panasa —The table places Panasa one degree farther south than the confluence of the Zardros and the Indus Ptolemy, as we have seen, egregiously misplaced this confluence, and we cannot therefore from this indication learn more than that Panasa must have been situated lower down the Indus than Pasipida (Besmaid) and Alexandria of the Malli which lay near the confluence A trace of its name Saint-Martin thinks is preserved in that of Osanpur, a town on the left of the river, 21 miles below Mittankot

Bondaria —According to Saint-Martin this is very probably the same place as a fort of Budhya or Bodhpur, mentioned in the Arab chronicles of the conquest of Upper Sindh and situated probably between Alor and Mittankot Yule identifies it with Budhia, a place to the west of the Indus and south from the Belan Pass

Nangramma —This Yule identifies with Naoshera, a place about 20 miles to the south of Besmaid Both words mean the same, 'new town'

Kamigara —The ruins of Arer which are visible at a distance of four miles to the south-east of Kori, are still known in the neighbourhood under the name of Kaman If to this word we add

the common Indian affix *nagar*—‘city,’ we have a near approach to the Kamigara of Ptolemy

**B i n a g a r a** —This some take to be a less correct form than *M i n n a g a r* given in the *Periplûs*, where it is mentioned as the metropolis of Skythia, but under the government of Parthian princes, who were constantly at feud with each other for the supremacy. Its position is very uncertain. Cunningham would identify it with Alôr Yule, following McMurdo, places it much further south near Brâhmanabâd, which is some distance north from Haiderâbâd. The *Periplûs* states that it lay in the interior above Barbarikon (sec 38)

**X o a n a** —Yule suggests that this may be Sewana, a place in the country of the Bhaulingas, between the desert and the Arâvalîs

62 The parts east of Indo-Skythia along the coast belong to the country of Larike, and here in the interior to the west of the river Namados is a mart of commerce, the city of Barygaza . . . . .  $113^{\circ} 15'$   $17^{\circ} 20'$

63 To the east of the river —

Agrinagara	$118^{\circ} 15'$	$22^{\circ} 30'$
Siripalla	$118^{\circ} 30'$	$21^{\circ} 30'$
Baminogoura	$116^{\circ}$	$20^{\circ} 45'$
Sazantion	$115^{\circ} 30'$	$20^{\circ} 30'$
Zêrogerei	$116^{\circ} 20'$	$19^{\circ} 50'$
Ozêne, the capital of Tias-		
tanes	$117^{\circ}$	$20^{\circ}$
Minagara ,	$115^{\circ} 10'$	$19^{\circ} 30'$
Tiatoura	$115^{\circ} 50'$	$18^{\circ} 50'$
Nasika	$114^{\circ}$	$17^{\circ}$

Larikô — Lârdesa was an early name for the territory of Gujârât and the Northern Konkan. The name long survived, for the sea to the west of that coast was in the early Muhaminadan time called the sea of Lar, and the language spoken on its shores was called by Mas'ûdi, Lîrî (Yule's *Marco Polo*, vol II, p 353, n.) Ptolemy's Larike was a political rather than a geographical division and as such comprehended in addition to the part of the sea board to which the name was strictly applicable, an extensive inland territory, rich in agricultural and commercial products, and possessing large and flourishing towns, acquired no doubt

Greek corruption of Bhrigukshtêtra (the territory of Bhrigu) or Bhrigukachiha, ‘the tongue-land’ of Bhrigu” The illiterate Gujarâtis pronounce Bhrigukshêtra as Bargacha, and hence the Greek form of the name

**A grin a g a r a** —This means ‘the town of the Agri’ Yule places it at Âgar, about 30 miles to the N E of Ujjain

**Siripalla** —A place of this name (spelt Sêripala) has already been mentioned as situated where the Namados (Narmadâ) changes the direction of its course Lassen therefore locates it in the neighbourhood of Haump, where the river turns to southward

**Bam m o g ou r a** —In Yule’s map this is identified with Pavangarh, a hill to the north of the Narmadâ

**Sazantion** —This may perhaps be identical with Sajuntra, a small place some distance north from the upper extremity of the Bay of Khambât

**Zêrogerei** —This is referred by Yule to Dhâr, a place S W of Ozêne, about one degree

**Ozêne** —This is a transliteration of Ujjayinî, the Sanskrit name of the old and famous city of Avanti, still called Ujjain It was the capital of the celebrated Vikramâditya, who having expelled the Skythians and thereafter established his power over the greater part of India, restored the Hindû monarchy to its ancient splendour It was one of the seven sacred cities of the Hindûs, and the first meridian of their astronomers We learn from the *Mahâvansha* that Asôka, the grandson of Chandragupta (Sandrakottos), was sent by his father the king of

Pâtaliputra (Patna) to be the viceroy of Ujjain, and also that about two centuries later (B.C 95) a certain Buddhist high priest took with him 40,000 disciples from the Dakkhinagiri temple at Ujjain to Ceylon to assist there in laying the foundation stone of the great Dârâsha at Anurâdhapura. Half a century later than this is the date of the expulsion of the Skythians by Vikramâditya, which forms the era in Indian Chronology called *Samrat* (57 B.C.) The next notice of Ujjain is to be found in the *Periplus* where we read (See 48) "Eastward from Barjuras is a city called Ozene, formerly the capital where the king resided. From this place is brought down

Minagara is mentioned in the *Periplūs*, where its name is more correctly given as Minagar, i.e., 'the city of the Min' or Skythians. This Minagara appears to have been the residence of the sovereign of Barygaza. Ptolemy places it about 2 degrees to the SW of Ozêne. Yule remarks that it is probably the Manekir of Mas'ûdi, who describes it as a city lying far inland and among mountains. Benfey doubts whether there were in reality two cities of this name, and thinks that the double mention of Minnagar in the *Periplūs* is quite compatible with the supposition that there was but one city so called (*Indien*, p. 91).

Tiatoura — This would transliterate with Chittur, which, however, lies too far north for the position assigned to Tiatoura. Yule suggests, but doubtfully, its identity with Chandur. This however lies much too far south.

Nasika has preserved its name unaltered to the present day, distant 116 miles NE from Bombay. Its latitude is 20° N., but in Ptolemy only 17°. It was one of the most sacred seats of Brâhmanism. It has also important Buddhistic remains, being noted for a group of rock-temples. The word *nâsikâ* means in Sanskrit 'nose'.

64 The parts farther inland are possessed by the Pouindai Agriophagoi, and beyond them are the Khatriaioi, to whom belong these cities, lying some east and some west of the Indus —

Nigranigramma	124°	28° 15'
Antakhara	122°	27° 20'
Soudasanna	123°	26° 50'

Syrmisika	.	121°	26° 30'
Patistama	...	121°	25°
Tisapatinga		123°	24° 20'

The 'Poulindai' Agriophagoi are described as occupying the parts northward of those just mentioned. Pulinda is a name applied in Hindû works to a variety of aboriginal races. Agriophagoi is a Greek epithet, and indicates that the Pulinda was a tribe that subsisted on raw flesh and roots or wild fruits. In Yule's map they are located to the N E of the Ran of Kachh, lying between the Khatrīaī in the north and Larič in the south. Another tribe of this name lived about the central parts of the Vindhya.

Khatrīaī.—According to Greek writers the people that held the territory comprised between the Hydراōtēs (Rāvī) and the Hyphasis (Biyas) were the Kāthāī, whose capital was Sangala. The *Mahābhārata*, and the Pāli Buddhist works speak of Sangala as the capital of the Madras, a powerful people often called also the Brūkas. Lassen, in order to explain the substitution of name, supposes that the mixture of the Madras with the inferior castes had led them to assume the name of Khatrīas (Kshatriya, the warrior caste), in token of their degradation, but this is by no means probable. The name is still found spread over an immense area in the N W of India, from the Hindû-kōh as far as Bengal, and from Népal to Gujarat, under forms slightly variant Kathīs, Kattīs, Kathīas, Kattīs, Khatrīs, Khetārs, Kattaour, Kattair, Kattāls, and others.

One of these tribes, the Kâthîs, issuing from the lower parts of the Panjâb, established themselves in Surâshtra, and gave the name of Kâthnâvad to the great peninsula of Gujârât (*Étude*, p 104)

The six towns mentioned in section 64 can none of them be identified

65 But again, the country between Mount Sardônyx and Mount Bêttigô belongs to the Tabasoi, a great race, while the country beyond them as far as the Vindhya range, along the eastern bank of the Namados, belongs to the Prâpiôtaî, who include the Rhamnai, and whose towns are these —

Kognabanda	120° 15'	23°
Ozoabis .	120° 30'	23° 40'
Ostha .	122° 30'	23° 30'
Kôsa, where are diamonds	121° 20'	22° 30'

Tabasoi is not an ethnic name, but designates a community of religious ascetics, and represents the Sanskrit *Tâpasâs*, from *tapas* 'heat' or 'religious austerity'. The haunts of these devotees may be assigned to the valley of the Taptî or Tâpi (the Nanagouna of Ptolemy) to the south of the more western portion of the Vindhya that produced the sardonyx.

Prâpiôtaî — Lassen locates this people, including the subject race called the Rhamnai, in the upper half of the Narmadâ valley. From the circumstance that diamonds were found near Kôsa, one of their towns, he infers that their territory extended as far as the Upper Varadâ, where diamond mines were known to have existed. Kôsa was probably situated in the

neighbourhood of Baital, north of the sources of the Tâptî and the Varadâ

Rhamnai — The name of this people is one of the oldest in Indian ethnography. Their early seat was in the land of the Oreitai and Arabitai beyond the Indus, where they had a capital called Rhambakia. As they were connected by race with the Brahui, whose speech must be considered as belonging to the Dekhan group of languages, we have here says Lassen (*Ind Alt* vol III p 174), a fresh proof confirming the view that before the arrival of the Aryans all India, together with Gedrôsia, was inhabited by the tribes of the same widely diffused aboriginal race, and that the Rhamnai who had at one time been settled in Gedrôsia, had wandered thence as far as the Vindhya mountains. Yule conjectures that the Rhamnai may perhaps be associated with Râmagiri, now Râmtek a famous holy place near Nâgpûr. The towns of the Prapitai, four in number cannot with certainty be identified.

66 About the Nanagouna are the Phylitai and the Bettigoi including the Kandaloi along the country of the Phylitai and the river and the Ambastai along the country of the Bettigoi and the mountain range, and the following towns.—

67	Agara .....	12° 26'	25°
	Adeisathra .....	12° 35'	24° 55'
	Soara .....	12° 23'	24°
	Nygdosora .....	12°	23°
	Anara .....	12° 33'	22° 23'

The Phyllitai occupied the banks of the Taptî lower down than the Rhamnai, and extended northward to the Sâtpura range Lassen considers their name as a transliteration of Bhilla, with an appended Greek termination The Bhills are a well-known wild tribe spread to this day not only on the Upper Narmadâ and the parts of the Vindhya chain adjoining, but wider still towards the south and west In Ptolemy's time their seats appear to have been further to the east than at present Yule thinks it not impossible that the Phyllitai and the Drilo-phyllitai may represent the Pulinda, a name which, as has already been stated, is given in Hindû works to a variety of aboriginal races According to Caldwell (*Drav Gram.*, p 464) the name *Bhilla* (*vil, bil*) means 'a bow'

Bettigoi is the correct reading, and if the name denotes, as it is natural to suppose, the people living near Mount Bettigô, then Ptolemy has altogether displaced them, for their real seats were in the country between the Kombatur Gap and the southern extremity of the Peninsula

Kandaloi —Lassen suspects that the reading here should be Gondaloï, as the Gonds (who are nearly identical with the Khands) are an ancient race that belonged to the parts here indicated Yule, however, points out that Kuntaladêsa and the Kantalas appear frequently in lists and in inscriptions The country was that, he adds, of which Kalyân was in after days the capital (Elliot, *Jour R As S* vol IV, p 3)

Ambastai —These represent the Ambashtha

of Sanskrit, a people mentioned in the Epics, where it is said that they fought with the club for a weapon In the *Laws of Manu* the name is applied to one of the mixed castes which practised the healing art A people called Ambautai are mentioned by our author as settled in the east of the country of the Paropanisadai Lassen thinks these may have been connected in some way with the Ambastai Their locality is quite uncertain In Yule's map they are placed doubtfully to the south of the sources of the Mahânadî of Orissa.

Of the four towns, Agara, Soara, Nygdosora and Anara, in section 67, nothing is known

**Adeisathra** —It would appear that there were two places in Ancient India which bore the name of Ahichhatra, the one called by Ptolemy Adisdara (for Adisadra), and the other as here, Adeisathra Adisdara, as has been already shown, was a city of Rohilkhand Adeisathra, on the other hand, lay near to the centre of India Yule quotes authorities which seem to place it, he says, near the Vindhya or the Narmadâ He refers also to an inscription which mentions it as on the Sindhu River, which he takes to be either the Kâli-sindh of Mâlwâ, or the Little Kâli-sindh further west, which seems to be the Sindhu of the *Méghadûta* Ptolemy, singularly enough, disjoins Adeisathra from the territory of the Adeisathroi, where we would naturally expect him to place it Probably, as Yule remarks, he took the name of the people from some Pauranik ethnic list and the name of the city from a traveller's route, and thus failed to make them fall into proper relation to each other

68 Between Mount Bēttigō and Adeisathros are the Sôrai nomads, with these towns —

Sangamarta . . .	133°	21°
Sôra, the capital of Arkatos	130°	21°

69 Again to the east of the Vindhya range is the territory of the (Biolingai or) Bôlingai, with these towns —

Stagabaza or Bastagaza	.133°	28° 30'
Bardaôtis .	137° 30'	28° 30'

Sôra designates the northern portion of the Tamil country. The name in Sanskrit is Chôla, in Telugu Chola, but in Tamil Sôra or Chôra. Sôra is called the capital of Arkatos. This must be an error, for there can be little doubt that Arkatos was not the name of a prince, but of a city, the Ârkâd of the present day. This is so suitably situated, Caldwell remarks, as to suggest at once this identification, apart even from the close agreement as far as the sound is concerned. The name is properly Âr-kâd, and means 'the six forests'. The Hindûs of the place regard it as an ancient city, although it is not mentioned by name in the *Purânas* (*Drav Gram*, Introd pp 95, 96). There is a tradition that the inhabitants of that part of the country between Madras and the Ghâts including Ârkâd as its centre were Kurumbars, or wandering shepherds, for several centuries after the Christian æra. Cunningham takes Arkatos to be the name of a prince, and inclines to identify Sôra with Zora or Jora ('the Jorampur of the maps') an old town lying immediately under the walls of

Karnul The Sôrai he takes to be the Suari (*Geog.* p. 517)

**Bîolîngâi or Bôlîngâi**—Ptolemy has transplanted this people from their proper seats, which lay where the Arâvalli range slopes westward towards the Indus, and placed them to the east of the Vindhya. He has left us however the means of correcting his error, for he makes them next neighbours to the Pôrvaroi, whose position can be fixed with some certainty. Pliny (lib. VI, c. xx) mentions the Bolingae and locates them properly. According to Panini, Bhîolîngâi was the seat of one of the branches of the great tribe of the Salvas or Silvas.

**Stagabîza**—Yule conjectures this may be Bhôjaput, which he says was a site of extreme antiquity, on the upper stream of the Betwa where are remains of vast hydraulic works ascribed to a king Bhoja (*J. A. S. Beng.* vol. XVI, p. 740). To account for the first part of the name *stagâ* he suggests the query Tataka-Bhoja, the 'tank' or 'lake' of Bhoja?

**Bardaois**—This may be taken to represent the Sanskrit Bhadrâvati, a name, says Yule, famed in the Epic legends, and claimed by many cities. Cunningham, he adds, is disposed to identify it with the remarkable remains (pre-Ptolemaic) discovered at Bharod, west of Rêwâ.

70 Beyond these is the country of the Pôrvaroi with these towns —

Bridama	.	134° 30'	27° 30'
Tholoubana	.	136° 20'	27°
Malanta	...	136° 30'	25° 50'

71. Beyond these as far as the Ouxentos range are the Adeisathroi with these towns —

Maleiba	.. .	140°	27° 20'
Aspathis	. . .	138° 30'	25° 20'
Panassa ....	. . .	137° 40'	24° 30'
Sagêda, the Metropolis	.	133°	23° 30'
Balantipyrgon	. .	136° 30'	23° 30'

Pôrouaroi (Pôrvaroi) — This is the famous race of the Pauravas, which after the time of Alexander was all predominant in Râjasthâna under the name of the Pramâras. The race figures conspicuously both in the legendary and real history of the North of India. It is mentioned in the hymns of the *Veda*, and frequently in the *Mahâbhârata*, where the first kings of the Lunar race are represented as being Pauravas that reigned over the realms included between the Upper Ganges and the Yamunâ. The later legends are silent concerning them, but they appear again in real history and with fresh distinction, for the gallant Pôros, who so intrepidly contended against Alexander on the banks of the Hydaspes, was the chief of a branch of the Paurava whose dominions lay to the west of that river, and that other Pôros who went on an embassy to Augustus and boasted himself to be the lord paramount of 600 vassal kings was also of the same exalted lineage. Even at the present day some of the noblest houses reigning in different parts of Râjasthân claim to be descended from the Pauravas, while the songs of the national bards still extol the vanished grandeur and the

power and glory of this ancient race Saint-Martin locates the Pôrouaroï of the text in the west of Upper India, in the very heart of the Râjput country, though the table would lead us to place them much farther to the east In the position indicated the name even of the Pôrouaroï is found almost without alteration in the Purvar of the inscriptions, in the Pôravars of the Jain clans, as much as in the designation spread everywhere of Povars and of Pouârs, forms variously altered, but still closely approaching the classic Paurava (*Étude*, pp 357 sqq.)

The names of the three towns assigned to the Pôrvaroi,—Bridama, Tholouhana and Malaita designate obscure localities, and their position can but be conjectured Saint-Martin suggests that the first may be Dildana, the second Doblana, and the third Plaita, all being places in Râjputâna Yule, however, for Bridama proposes Bardâwad, a place in a straight line from Indôr to Nimach, and for Malaita,—Maltaun, this place is in the British territory of Sagâr and Narmadâ, on the south declivity of the Naral Pass

**Adeisathroi** —It has already been pointed out that as Ptolemy has assigned the sources of the Khabêris (the Kâvêri) to his Mount Adeisathros, we must identify that range with the section of the Western Ghâts which extends immediately northward from the Koimbatur Gap He places Adeisathros however in the central parts of India, and here accordingly we must look for the cities of the eponymous people Five are mentioned, but Sagêda only, which was the metropolis, can be identified with some certainty The name

represents the Sâkêta of Sanskrit Sâkêta was another name for A yôdhyâ on the Sarayû, a city of vast extent and famous as the capital of the kings of the Solar race and as the residence for some years of Śâkyamuni, the founder of Buddhism The Sagêda of our text was however a different city, identified by Dr F Hall with Têwar, near Jabalpûr, the capital of the Chêdi, a people of Bandêlakhand renowned in Epic poetry Cunningham thinks it highly probable that the old form of the name of this people was Changûdi and may be preserved in the Sagêda of Ptolemy and in the Chi-ki-tho of Hiuen Tsêang in Central India, near the Narmadâ He says — “The identification which I have proposed of Ptolemy’s Sagêda Metropolis with Chêdi appears to me to be almost certain In the first place, Sagêda is the capital of the Adeisathroi which I take to be a Greek rendering of Hayakshêtra or the country of the Hayas or Haihayas It adjoins the country of the Bêttigoi, whom I would identify with the people of Vakâtaka, whose capital was Bhândak One of the towns in their country, situated near the upper course of the Sôn, is named Balantipyrgon, or Balampyrgon This I take to be the famous Fort of Bândogarh, which we know formed part of the Chêdi dominions To the north-east was Panassa, which most probably preserves the name of some town on the Parnâsâ or Banâs River, a tributary which joins the Sôn to the north-east of Bândogarh To the north of the Adeisathroi, Ptolemy places the Pôrouaroi or Parihârs, in their towns named Tholoubana, Bridama, and Malaîta The

first I would identify with Boribān (Bahurīband) by reading Oōloubana or Voloubana. The second must be Bilhārī, and the last may be Lameta, which gives its name to the Ghāt on the Narmadā opposite Tēwar, and may thus stand for Tripura itself. All these identifications hold so well together, and mutually support each other, that I have little doubt of their correctness" *Archæolog Surv of Ind* vol IX, pp 55-57

P a n a s s a — This in Yule's map is doubtfully placed at Panna, a decaying town in Bandelakhand with diamond mines in the neighbourhood. In the same map Baland is suggested as the representative of Balantipyrgon

72 Farther east than the Adeisathroi towards the Ganges are the M a n d a l a i with this city —  
Asthagoura .. 142° 25°

73 And on the river itself these towns —

Sambalaka	.. ..	141°	29° 30'
Sigalla	. .	142°	28°
Palimbothra, the Royal resi-			
dence		143°	27°
Tamalitēs	. .	144° 30'	26° 30'
Oreophanta.	. . . .	146° 30'	24° 30'

74 In like manner the parts under Mount Bēttigō are occupied by the Br a k h m a n a i M a g o i as far as the Batai with this city —  
Brakhmē .. 128° 19°

75 The parts under the range of Adeisa-thros as far as the Arourairoi are occupied by the B a d i a m a i o i with this city —  
Tathilba .. 134° 18° 50'

76. The parts under the Ouxentos range are occupied by the *Driophyllita*, with these cities --

Sibrion	.....	.....	$139^{\circ}$	$22^{\circ} 20'$
Opotoura	.....	.....	$137^{\circ} 30'$	$21^{\circ} 40'$
Ozoana	.....	..	$138^{\circ} 15'$	$20^{\circ} 30'$

Mandalai — The territory of the Mandalai lay in that upland region where the Sôñ and the Narmadâ have their sources. Here a town situated on the latter river still bears the name Mandalâ. It is about 50 miles distant from Jabalpûr to the south-east, and is of some historic note. Ptolemy has, however, assigned to the Mandalai dominions far beyond their proper limits, for to judge from the towns which he gives them they must have occupied all the right bank of the Ganges from its confluence with the Jamnâ downwards to the Bay of Bengal. But that this is improbable may be inferred from the fact that Palimbothra (Pâtnâ) which the table makes to be one of their cities, did not belong to them, but was the capital of Prasiakê which, as has already been remarked, is pushed far too high up the river Tamalitê, moreover, which has been satisfactorily identified with Tamluk, a river port about 35 miles S W from Calcutta possessed, according to Wilford, a large territory of its own. The table also places it only half a degree more to the southward than Palimbothra, while in reality it is more than 3 or 4 deg. Cunningham inclines to identify with the Mandalai the Mundas of Chutia Nâgpur, whose language and country, he says, are called

Mundala, and also with the Malli of Pliny (lib VI c xxii)—*Anc Geog of Ind*, pp 508, 509

Sambalaka—A city of the same name attributed to Prasiakê (sec 53) has been already identified with Sambhal in Rohilkhand. The Sambalaka of the Mandalai may perhaps be Sambhalpur on the Upper Mahânadî, the capital of a district which produces the finest diamonds in the world.

Sigalla—This name has a suspicious likeness to Sagala, the name of the city to the west of Lâhor, which was besieged and taken by Alexander, and which Ptolemy has erroneously placed in Prasiakê (sec 53).

Palimbothra—The more usual form of the name is Palibothra, a transcription of Pâliputra, the spoken form of Pâtaliputra, the ancient capital of Magadha, and a name still frequently applied to the city of Pâtñâ which is its modern representative. In the times of Chandragupta (the Sandrokottos of the Greeks) and the kings of his dynasty, Palibothra was the capital of a great empire which extended from the mouths of the Ganges to the regions beyond the Indus. Remains of the wooden wall by which the city, as we learn from Strabo, was defended, were discovered a few years ago in Pâtñâ (by workmen engaged in digging a tank) at a depth of from 12 to 15 feet below the surface of the ground. Palimbothra, as we have noticed, did not belong to the Mandalai but to the Prasiori.

Tamalitê represents the Sanskrit Tâmraliptî, the modern Tamluk, a town lying in a low

and damp situation on a broad reach or bay of the Rūpnārāyan River, 12 miles above its junction with the Hughli mouth of the Ganges. The Pâli form of the name was Tâmalitti, and this accounts for the form in Greek. Pliny mentions a people called Taluctae belonging to this part of India, and the similarity of the name leaves little doubt of their identity with the people whose capital was Tamluk. This place, in ancient times, was the great emporium of the trade between the Ganges and Ceylon. We have already pointed out how wide Ptolemy was of the mark in fixing its situation relatively to Palimbothra.

**B r a k h m a n a i M a g o i** — Mr J Campbell has suggested to me that by Brakhmanai Magoi may be meant 'sons of the Brâhmans,' that is, Canarese Brâhmans, whose forefathers married women of the country, the word *magoi* representing the Canarese *maga*, 'a son.' The term, he says, is still in common use, added to the name of castes, as Haiga-Makalu (*makalu*—plural of *maga*) i.e. Haiga Brâhmans. Lassen supposed that Ptolemy, by adding *Magoi* to the name of these Brâhmans, meant to imply either that they were a colony of Persian priests settled in India, or that they were Brâhmans who had adopted the tenets of the Magi, and expresses his surprise that Ptolemy should have been led into making such an unwarrantable supposition. The country occupied by these Brâhmans was about the upper Kâvêri, and extended from Mount Bêttigô eastward as far as the Batai.

**B r a k h m ê** — "Can this," asks Caldwell, "be Brahmadêsam, an ancient town on the Tâmra-

parni, not far from the foot of the Podigci Mount (Mt Bēttigō) which I have found referred to in several ancient inscription?"

**Bādīamāioi** — There is in the district of Belgaum a town and hill-fort on the route from Kalādgī to Balārī, not far from the Mälprabhā, a tributary of the Krishnā, called Badāmī, and here we may locate the Bādīamāioi Tāthilbā, their capital, cannot be recognized

**Driophyllitai** — These are placed by Ptolemy at the foot of the Ouventos, and probably had their seats to the south-west of that range. Their name indicates them to have been a branch of the Phyllitai, the Bhills, or perhaps Pulindas. Lassen would explain the first part of their name from the Sanskrit *dṛidha* (strong) by the change of the *dh* into the liquid *Ozoana*, one of their three towns is, perhaps, Seoni, a place about 60 miles N E from Nāgpur

77 Further east than these towards the Ganges are the Kokkonagai with this city —

Dōsara ..	142° 30'	22° 30'
-----------	----------	---------

78 And on the river farther west —

Kartnaga ..	146°	23°
Kartasina ..	146°	21° 40'

79 Under the Maisolai the Salakēnoi towards the Oroudian (or Arebraian) Mountains with these cities —

Bēnagouron ..	140°	20° 15'
Kastrā ..	138°	19° 30'
Magaris ..	137° 30'	18° 20'

80 Towards the Ganges River the Sabārāi, in whose country the diamond is found in great abundance, their towns are —

Tasopion . . . . .	.140° 30'	22°
Karikardama . . . . .	.141°	20° 15'

81 All the country about the mouths of the Ganges is occupied by the Gangāridāi with this city —

Gangē, the Royal residence	146°	19° 15'
----------------------------	------	---------

Kokkona gāi —Lassen locates this tribe in Chutia Nāgpur, identifying Dōsara with Doesā in the hill country, between the upper courses of the Vaitarani and Suvarnatēkha. He explains their name to mean the people of the mountains where the *kōka* grows,—*kōka* being the name of a kind of palm-tree. Yule suggests that the name may represent the Sanskrit Kākamukha, which means 'crow-faced,' and was the name of a mythical race. He places them on the Upper Mahānādī and farther west than Lassen. The table gives them two towns near the Ganges.

Kartinaga and Kartasina —The former, Yule thinks, may be Karnagarh near Bhāgalpur, perhaps an ancient site, regarding which he refers to the *Jour R As Soc* vol XVIII, p 395, Kartasina he takes to be Karnasōnagarh, another ancient site near Berhampur (*J R A S NS*, vol VI, p 248 and *J As S Beng* vol XXII, p 281)

Sālakēnoi —This people may be located to the west of the Gōdāvari, inland on the north-western borders of Maisōlia. Their name, Lassen

thought (*Ind Alt.*, vol III, p 176) might be connected with the Sanskrit word *Sâla*, the *Sâl* tree Yule suggests that it may represent the Sanskrit *Saurikirna* None of their towns can be recognized

**S a b a r a i**—The *Sabarai* of Ptolemy Cunningham takes to be the *Suari* of Pliny, and he would identify both with the aboriginal *Savaras* or *Suars*, a wild race who live in the woods and jungles without any fixed habitations, and whose country extended as far southward as the Pennâr River These *Savaras* or *Suars* are only a single branch of a widely spread race found in large numbers to the SW of Gwalior and Narwar and S Râjputâna, where they are known as *Surrius* Yule places them farther north in Dôs a r ê n é, towards the territory of Sambhalpur, which, as we have already remarked, produced the finest diamonds in the world Their towns have not been identified

**G a n g a r i d a i**—This great people occupied all the country about the mouths of the Ganges Their capital was *Gangê*, described in the *Periplûs* as an important seat of commerce on the Ganges They are mentioned by Virgil (*Geogr* III, l 27), by Valerius Flaccus (*Argon* lib VI, l 66), and by Curtius (lib IX, c ii) who places them along with the *Pharrasii* (*Prasii*) on the eastern bank of the Ganges They are called by Pliny (lib VI, c lxv) the *Gangaridae Calingae*, and placed by him at the furthest extremity of the Ganges region, as is indicated by the expression *gens nonissima*, which he applies to them. They must have been a powerful people, to judge from the military force

which Pliny reports them to have maintained, and their territory could scarcely have been restricted to the marshy jungles at the mouth of the river now known as the Sundarbans, but must have comprised a considerable portion of the province of Bengal. This is the view taken by Saint-Martin. Bengal, he says, represents, at least in a general way, the country of the Gangaridae, and the city which Pliny speaks of as their capital, Parthalis can only be Vardhana, a place which flourished in ancient times, and is now known as Bardhwān. The name of the Gangaridae has nothing in Sanskrit to correspond with it, nor can it be a word, as Lassen supposed, of purely Greek formation, for the people were mentioned under this name to Alexander by one of the princes in the North-west of India. The synonymous term which Sanskrit fails to supply is found among the aboriginal tribes belonging to the region occupied by the Gangaridae, the name being preserved almost identically in that of the Goñghris of S Bahār, with whom were connected the Gaṅgayis of North-western, and the Gangrār of Eastern Bengal, these designations being but variations of the name which was originally common to them all.

G a n g ē — Various sites have been proposed for Gangē. Heeren placed it near Duliapur, a village about 40 miles S E of Calcutta on a branch of the Isamatī River, Wilford at the confluence of the Ganges and Brahmaputra, where, he says, there was a town called in Sanskrit Hastimalla, and in the spoken dialect Hâthimalla, from elephants being picquettet there, Murray at

Chittagong, Taylor on the site of the ancient Hindu Capital of Banga (Bengal) which lies in the neighbourhood of Sonargâon (Suvarnagrâma), a place 12 miles to the S E of Dhakka, Cunningham at Jêsor, and others further west, near Calcutta, or about 30 miles higher up the Hughlî, somewhere near Chinsurâ Another Gangâ is mentioned by Artemidoros above or to the N W of Palibothra, and this Wilford identifies with Prayâg,, i.e., Allahâbâd, but Grosskurd with Anupshahr

*Ptolemy now leaves the Gangetic regions and describes the inland parts of the territories along the Western Coast of the Peninsula*

82 In the parts of Ariakê which still remain to be described are the following inland cities and villages to the west of the Bênda these cities —

Malippala . . .	119° 30'	20° 15'
Sarisabis . . .	119° 30'	20°
Tagara	118°	19° 20'

Baithana (the royal seat of [Siro]

Ptolemaios or Polemaios)	117°	18° 30'
Deopalî or Deopala . . .	115° 40'	17° 50'
Gamaliba . . .	115° 15'	17° 20'
Oménogara	114°	16° 20'

83 Between the Bênda and Pseudostomos

Nagarouris (or Nagarouraris) .	120°	20° 15'
Tabasô	121° 30'	20° 40'
Indê . . . .	123°	20° 45'
Tripangalida . . . ..	221° 15'	19° 40'

Hippokoura, the royal seat of			
Baleokouros .. . . .	119° 45'	19° 10'	
Soubouttou .. . . .	120° 15'	19° 10'	
Sirimalaga .. . . .	119° 20'	18° 30'	
Kalligeris .. . . . .	118°	18°	
Modogoulla .. . . . .	119°	18°	
Petrigala .. . . . .	117° 45'	17° 15'	
Banaouasei .. . . . .	116°	16° 45'	

Seven cities are enumerated in Arizakē, as lying to the west of the Bēnda, and regarding four of these, Malippala, Sarisabīs, Gamaliba and Omēnogara, nothing is known. The *Periplūs* (soc. 51) notices Tagara and Paithana in a passage which may be quoted "In Dakhinabades itself there are two very important seats of commerce, Paithana towards the south of Barygaza, from which it is distant a twenty days' journey, and eastward from this about a ten days' journey is another very large city, Tagara. From these marts goods are transported on waggons to Barygaza through difficult regions that have no road worth calling such. From Paithana great quantities of onyx-stones and from Tagara large supplies of common cotton-cloth, muslins of all kinds, mallow-tinted cottons and various other articles of local production imported into it from the maritime districts."

Paithana is the Paithana of the above extract, and the Paithān of the present day, a town of Haidarābād, or the territory of the Nizam, on the left bank of the river Gōdāvarī, in latitude 19° 29' or about a degree further north than it is placed by Ptolemy. Paithana is the Prākrit form

of the Sanskrit *Pratishthāna*, the name of the capital of Śālivāhana Ptolemy calls it the capital of Siroptolemaios or Siropolemaios, a name which represents the Sanskrit Śrī-Pulōmāvit, the Pulumāyi of the Nasik Cave and Amarāvatī Stūpa Inscriptions, a king of the great Andhra dynasty

**T**agara —The name is found in inscriptions under the form Tagarapura (*J R A S* vol IV, p 34) Ptolemy places it to the north-east of Baithana and the *Periplūs*, as we see from the extract, to the east of it at the distance of a ten days' journey Wilford, Vincent, Mannert, Ritter and others take it to be Dēvagadh, now Daulatābād, which was the seat of a sovereign even in 1293, and is situated not far from Élura, so famous for its excavated temples But if Baithana be Paithan, Tagara cannot be Dēvagadh, unless the distance is wrongly given There is, moreover, nothing to show that Dēvagadh was connected with the Tagarapura of the inscriptions Pandit Bhagvānlāl identified Tagara with Junnar, a place of considerable importance, situated to the north of Pūnā He pointed out that the Sanskrit name of Tagara was Trigiri a compound meaning 'three hills,' and that as Junnar stood on a high site between three hills this identification was probably correct Junnar however lies to the westward of Paithan Yule places Tagara at Kulburga, which lies to the south-east of Paithan, at a distance of about 150 miles, which would fairly represent a ten days' journey, the distance given in the *Periplūs* Grant Duff would identify it with a place near Bhīr on the Gōdāvarī, and Fleet with Kolhāpur The Silahāra

princes or chiefs who formed three distinct branches of a dynasty that ruled over two parts of the Konkan and the country about Kolhâpur style themselves, 'The Lords of the excellent city of Tagara' If, says Prof Bhandârkar, the name of Tagara has undergone corruption, it would take the form, according to the laws of Prâkrit speech, of Târur or Têrur, and he therefore asks 'can it be the modern Dârur or Dhârur in the Nizam's dominions, 25 miles east of Grant Duff's Bhîr, and 70 miles S E of Paîthan?' (see Muller's *Geog Græc Minor* vol I, p 294, n, Elphinstone's *History of India*, p 223, Burgess, *Arch Surv W Ind* vol III, p 54, and *Bombay Gazetteer*, vol XIII, pt II, p 423, n) Mr Campbell is of opinion that the maritime districts from which local products were brought to Tagara and thence exported to Barygaza, lay on the coast of Bengal, and not on the Konkan coast, from which there was easy transit by sea to the great northern emporium in the Gulf of Khambât, while the transit by land through Tagara could not be accomplished without encountering the most formidable obstacles

**Deopalî** —This name means 'the city of God,' and Deopalî may therefore perhaps be Dêvagadh, the two names having the same meaning

**Tabasô** —This would seem to be a city of the Tabasoi, already mentioned as a large community, of Brâhman ascetics

**Hippokoura** —A town of this name has already been mentioned as a seaport to the south of Simylla. This Hippokoura lay inland, and was

the capital of the southern parts of Ariakêś, as Paithana was the capital of the northern. Its position is uncertain. Yule places it doubtfully at Kalyân, a place about half a degree to the west of Bidar, and at some distance south from the river Mañjirâ. Ptolemy calls it the capital of Baleokouros. Bhândârkar conjectures this to have been the Vihvâyakura, a name found upon two other Andhra coins discovered at Kôlhâpur. There is no other clue to its identification, but see Lassen, *Ind Alt* vol III, pp 179, 185.

Sirimalaga may perhaps be Mâlkhêd, a town in Haiderâbâd, situated on a tributary of the Bhîmâ, in lat  $17^{\circ} 8'$  and long  $77^{\circ} 12'$ . The first part of the word *Siri* probably represents the Sanskrit honorific presix *śri*.

Kalligoris —Perhaps Kanhangiri a place about  $\frac{1}{2}$  a degree to the south of Mûdgal.

Modogoulla —There can be little doubt that this is Mûdgal, a town in the Haiderâbâd districts,—lat  $16^{\circ} 2'$ , long  $76^{\circ} 26'$ ,—N W from Balâri. Petrigala cannot be identified.

Banouasei —This place is mentioned in the *Mahâvanso*, in the Pâli form Wanawâsi, by which a city or district is designated. Banouasei must beyond doubt have been the capital of this country, and is identical with the modern Banavâsi, situated on the upper Varadâ, a tributary of the Tungabhadrâ. Saint-Martin thinks that it was the city visited by Hiuen Tsiang, and called by him Kon-kin-na-pu-lo, i.e., Konkanapura. Cunningham is of opinion that both the bearing and the distance point to Ânagundi, but Dr Burgess suggests Kôkanûr for Kôn-kin-na-pu-lo.

84 The inland cities of the Pirates are these —

Olokhoira . . . . .	..	114°	15°
Mousopallē, the metropolis . .	. 115° 30'	15° 45'	

85 Inland cities of L i m y r i k C, to the west of the Pseudostomos are these —

Naroulla .. . . .	. 117° 45'	15° 50'	
Kouba . . . . .	. 117°	15°	
Paloura . . . . .	. 117° 51'	14° 40'	

86 Between the Pseudostomos and the Baris, these cities —

Pasagō . . . . .	124° 50'	19° 50'	
Mastenour . . . . .	121° 30'	18° 40'	
Kourellour . . . . .	. 119°	17° 30'	
Pounnata, where is beryl ....	121° 20'	17° 30'	
Aloō . . . . .	120° 20'	17°	
Karoura, the royal seat of			
Kērobothros . . . . .	.. 119°	16° 20'	
Arembour . . . . .	. 121°	16° 20'	
Bideris . . . . .	119°	15° 50'	
Pantipolis . . . . .	. 118°	15° 20'	
Adarima . . . . .	119° 30'	15° 40'	
Koreour . . . . .	120°	15°	

87 Inland town of the A ī o i —

Morounda . . . . .	. 121° 20'	14° 20'	
--------------------	------------	---------	--

The dominion of the sea appears to have satisfied the ambition of the pirates, as they possessed on shore only a narrow strip of territory enclosed between the line of coast and the western declivities of the Ghâts. Their capital, Mousopallē, Yule places at Miraj, a town near the Krishnâ, but doubtfully. Their other town, Olokhoira,

is probably Khēdā, a town in the district of Ratnagiri in lat  $17^{\circ} 44'$  long  $73^{\circ} 30'$  As Khēdā is the name of several other places in this part of the country, *Olo*, whatever it may mean, may have been in old times prefixed to this particular Khēdā for the sake of distinction

**Kouba** —This is generally taken to be Goa or Govā, the capital of the Portuguese possessions in India, and there can be little doubt of the correctness of the identification. The two towns Naroulla and Paloura, which Ptolemy places with Kouba to the west of the Pseudostomos, cannot be identified. To judge from his figures of longitude, Paloura lay 15' farther east than Kouba, but as he makes the coast run eastward instead of southward, it must be considered to have lain south of Kouba. The name is Tamil, and means, according to Caldwell (*Introd* p 104) ‘Milk town’. It is remarkable, he observes, how many names of places in Southern India mentioned by Ptolemy end in *oūp* or *oūpa*=‘a town’. There are 23 such places in all.

**Pasagē** —According to Yule’s map this represents Palsagi, the old name of a place now called Halsī, south-east of Goa, from which it is distant somewhat under a degree.

**Mastanour** and **Kourellour** cannot be identified

**Pounnata** has not yet been identified, though Ptolemy gives a sort of clue in stating that it produced the beryl. Yule places it in his map near Seringapatam (See *Ind Ant* vol XII, p 13)

**Aloē** —This may be Yellapur, a small town in North Canara, in lat  $14^{\circ} 56'$  long  $74^{\circ} 43'$

Karoura —“Karoura,” says Caldwell, “is mentioned in Tamil traditions as the ancient capital of the Chêra, Kêra, or Kêrala kings, and is generally identified with Karûr, an important town in the Koimbatur district, originally included in the Chêra kingdom. It is situated on the left bank of the river Amarâvatî, a tributary of the Kâvêrî, near a large fort now in ruins. Ptolemy notes that Karoura was the capital of Kêrobothros, i.e., Kêralaputra (Cherapati?) Karûra means ‘the black town,’ and I consider it identical with Kâragam, and Kadâram, names of places which I have frequently found in the Tamil country, and which are evidently the poetical equivalents of Karûr. The meaning of each of the names is the same. Ptolemy’s word Karoura represents the Tamil name of the place with perfect accuracy” (*Introd* pp 96, 97)

Arembour —Lassen compares this name with Oorumparum, but the situation of the place so called (lat  $11^{\circ} 12'$  long  $76^{\circ} 16'$ ) does not suit well the position of Arembour as given by Ptolemy

Bideris —Perhaps Erod or Yirodu in the district of Koimbatur (lat  $11^{\circ} 20'$  long  $77^{\circ} 46'$ ) near the Kâvêrî

Pantipolis, according to Yule, represents the obsolete name Pantiyapura, which he places at Hangal, in the Dhârwâd district

Morounda —This is the only inland city of the Aîoi named by Ptolemy. It has not been identified

*The concluding tables enumerate the inland towns belonging to the districts lying along the Eastern Coast of the Peninsula*

## 88 Inland cities of the K a r e o i —

Mendêla	.	.	..	123°	17° 40'
Sélour	.	.	.	121° 45'	16° 30'
Tittoua	.	..	..	122°	15° 20'
Mantitour			..	123°	15° 10'

## 89 Inland cities of the P a n d i o n o i —

Tainour	.	..	..	124° 45'	18° 40'
Perungkarei	...	..	..	123° 20'	18°
Korindiour	.	..	..	125°	17° 40'
Tangala or Taga	.		..	123° 30'	16° 50'
Modoura, the royal city of Pandion			..	125°	16° 20'
Akour	.	..	..	124° 45'	15° 20'

## 90 Inland cities of the B a t o i —

Kalindoia	.	..		127° 40'	17° 30'
Bata	....	..	..	126° 30'	17°
Talara	..	..	..	128°	16° 45'

Inland cities of the K a r e o i —none of the four named in the table can be identified

Perungkarei —This town has preserved its name almost without change, being now known as Perungari, on the river Vaigai, about 40 miles lower down its course than Madurâ. With regard to this name, Caldwell remarks that if it had been written Perungkarei it would have been perfectly accurate Tamil, letter for letter. The meaning is 'great shore,' and *perum* 'great' becomes *perung* before *k*, by rule. Ptolemy places a town called Tainour at the distance of less than a degree to the north-east of Perungkarei. The direction would suit Tanjor, but the distance is more than a

degree. Ptolemy has however placed his Peringkarei quite in a wrong position with regard to Madurâ.

T a n g a l a or T a g a —There can be little doubt that this is now represented by Dindugal, an important and flourishing town lying at a distance of 32 miles north by west from Madurâ.

M o d o u r a —This is now called Madurâ or Madurai—on the banks of the River Vaigai. It was the second capital of the Southern Pândyas, we have already noticed it in the description of the territory of this people.

B a t a —This may perhaps be Pattukôtta, a small town not very far inland from the northern end of the Argolic Gulf (Palk's Passage). The other two towns of the Batoi cannot be recognized. As Pudukôtta is the capital of the Tondiman Râja, Lassen has suggested its identity with Bata. It is upwards of 20 miles farther inland than Pattukôtta.

91 Inland cities of the Paralia of the Sôrêta i —

Kaliour	.	129°	17° 20'
Tennagora		132°	17°
Eikour		129°	16° 40'
Orthoura, the royal city of			
Sôrnagos		130°	16° 20'
Berê		130° 20'	16° 15'
Abour		129°	16°
Karmara	.	130° 20'	15° 40'
Magour	...	130°	15° 15'

92 The inland cities of the Arvarnoi  
are these —

Kerauge . . . . .	133°	16° 15'
Phrourion . . . . .	132°	15°
Karigê . . . . .	132° 40'	15°
Poleour . . . . .	131° 30'	14° 40'
Pikendaka .. . . .	131° 30'	14°
Iatour . . . . .	132° 30'	14°
Skopoloura . . . . .	134° 15'	14° 35'
Ikarta . . . . .	133° 30'	13° 40'
Malanga, the royal city of		

Basaronagos . . . . .	133°	13°
Kandipatna . . . . .	133° 30'	12° 20'

93 The inland cities of the Maisôloî —

Kalliga . . . . .	138°	17°
Bardamana . . . . .	136° 15'	15° 15'
Koroungkala . . . .	135°	15°
Pharytra or Pharetra . . . .	134° 20'	13° 20'
Pityndra, the metropolis . . .	135° 20'	12° 30'

Orthoura — Of the eight inland cities named as belonging to the maritime territory of the Sôrêtaî, only two—Abour and the capital, have been identified. Abour is Âmbûrdurg in N Arkat, lat 12° 47', long 78° 42'. Regarding Orthoura Cunningham says “Chôla is noticed by Ptolemy, whose *Orthura regia Sornati* must be Uriûr, the capital of Soranâtha, or the king of the Soringae, that is the Sôras, Chôras or Chôlas. Uraiyyûr is a few miles south-south-east of Tiruchchînâpalli. The Soringae are most probably the Syreni of Pliny with their 300 cities, as they occupied the coast

between the Pandae and the Derangae or Dravidians"—*Anc Geog of Ind*, p 551

**Phrourion**—This is a Greek word signifying 'a garrisoned fort,' and may perhaps be meant as a translation of an indigenous name having that signification, as Durga, 'a hill-fort,' a common affix to names of places in the Peninsula

**Karigê**—This should no doubt be read Karipê under which form it can be at once identified with Kadapâ, a place lying 5 miles from the right bank of the Northern Pennâr on a small tributary of that river

**Pikendaka.**—*Konda* is a frequent termination in the names of towns in this part of India. The letters of Pikendaka may have been transposed in copying, and its proper form may have been Pennakonda, the name of a town in the district of Balâri (lat  $14^{\circ} 5'$  long  $77^{\circ} 39'$ )

**Iatour**—From Yule's map it would appear there is a place lying a degree westward from Kadapâ which still bears this name, Yêtûr

**Malanga**—In our notice of Melangê it was pointed out that Cunningham had fixed the locality of Malanga near Élur, a place some distance inland about half way between the Krishnâ and the Gôdâvarî towards their embouchures, and in the neighbourhood of which are the remains of an old capital named Venî. With regard to the king's name Bassaronaga, he thinks that this may be identified with the Pali Majêrika-nâga of the *Mahâwanso* and thus Ptolemy's Malanga would become the capital of the Nâgas of Majerika, *Anc Geo of Ind*, (pp 539, 540) In Yule's

map Malanga is placed conjecturally about two degrees farther south at Velur, near the mouth of the Pennâr

Of the five cities attributed to the *Mānsilas*, only Koroungkala can be recognized. It appears to be the place now known as Woranikal, the mediæval capital of Telengana. It has but few tokens remaining to attest its former grandeur.

Pityndra, the capital of *Mānsila*, was probably Dhanakataka now Dharamnikâla, about 20 miles above Bejwâdâ on the Kri hnâ.

94. Islands lying near the part of India which projects into the ocean in the Gulf of Kanthi —

Barakê ..... 111° 15'

95 And along the line of coast as far as the Kolkîc Gulf:—

Barakē, Dr Burgess says “Yule places Barakē at Jaggat or Dwārakā, Lassen also identifies it with Dwārakā, which he places on the coast between Purbandar and Miyānī, near Śrinagar Mula-Dwārakā, the original site, was further east than this, but is variously placed near Mādhupur, thirty-six miles north-west from Sômanâth-Pattan, or three miles south-west from Kôdinâr, and nineteen miles east of Sômanâth This last spot is called Mula-Dwārakā to this day” (*Târikh-i-Sôraih*, Introd p 7)

*Milizêgyris* occurs in the *Periplûs* as Melizegara, which may be identified with Jayagad or Sidi-Jayagad, which would appear to be the Sigerus of Pliny (lib vi, c 26)

*Heptanê sia* (or group of 7 islands) probably corresponded to the Sesikrienai of the *Periplûs*, which may be the Burnt Islands of the present day, among which the Vingôrlâ rocks are conspicuous

*Trîkadîba* or ‘the island Trika,’—*dîba* being the Sanskrit word *dvîpa*, ‘an island’

*Peperinê* —This, to judge from the name, should be an island somewhere off the coast of Cottonara, the great pepper district, as stated by Pliny (lib VI, c xxvi)

*Trinê sia* (or group of 3 islands) —Ptolemy places it off the coast of Limyrikê between Tyndis and Mouziris, but nearer the former

*Leukê* —This is a Greek word meaning ‘white’ The island is placed in the *Periplûs* off the coast where Limyrikê begins and in Ptolemy near where it ends

*Nanigêris* —To judge from Ptolemy’s

figures he has taken this to be an island lying between Cape Kumâri (Comorin) and Taprobane (Ceylon)

Kôry —It has already been noticed that Kôry was both the name of the Island of Râmêsvaram and of the promontory in which it terminated

## CAP 2

### *Position of India beyond the Ganges*

I India beyond the Ganges is bounded on the west by the river Ganges, on the north by the parts of Skythia and Sérîkê already described, on the east by the Sinai along the Meridîn, which extends from the furthest limits of Sérîkê to the Great Gulf, and also by this gulf itself, on the south by the Indian Ocean and part of the Green Sea which stretches from the island of Menouthias in a line parallel to the equator, as far as the regions which lie opposite to the Great Gulf

India beyond the Ganges comprised with Ptolemy not only the great plain between that river and the Himalayas, but also all south-eastern Asia, as far as the country of the Sinai (China). Concerning these vast regions Ptolemy is our only ancient authority. Strabo's knowledge of the east was limited in this direction by the Ganges, and the author of the *Periplús*, who was a later and intermediate writer, though he was aware that inhabited countries stretched far beyond that limit even onwards to the eastern end of the world, appears to have learned little more

about them than the mere fact of their existence Ptolemy, on the other hand, supplies us with much information regarding them He traces the line of coast as far as the Gulf of Siam (his Great Gulf) enumerating the tribes, the trading marts, the river mouths and the islands that would be passed on the way He has also a copious nomenclature for the interior, which embraces its inhabitants, its towns, its rivers, and its mountain ranges His conceptions were no doubt extremely confused and erroneous, and his data, in many instances, as inconsistent with each other as with the reality Still, his description contains important elements of truth, and must have been based upon authentic information At the same time an attentive study of his nomenclature and the accompanying indications has led to the satisfactory identification of a few of his towns, and a more considerable number of the rivers and mountains and tribes which he has specified

His most notable error consisted in the supposition that the eastern parts of Asia were connected by continuous land with the east coast of Africa, so that, like Hipparkhos, he conceived the Indian Ocean to resemble the Mediterranean in being surrounded on all sides by land He makes accordingly the coast of the Sinai, beyond the Gulf of Siam, turn toward the south instead of curving up towards the north Again he represents the Malay Peninsula (his Golden Khersonese) which does not project so far as to reach the equator, extend to 4 degrees southward from it, and he mentions neither the Straits of Malacca nor the great island of Sumatra, unless indeed

his Iabadios be this island, and not Java, as is generally supposed. By the Green Sea (*Πρασώδης θάλασσα*) which formed a part of the southern boundary is meant the southern part of the Indian Ocean which stretched eastward from Cape Prasum (Cape Delgado) the most southern point on the east coast of Africa known to Ptolemy. The island of Menouthias was either Zanzibar or one of the islands adjacent to it. It is mentioned by the author of the *Periplûs*.

*In his description of India beyond the Ganges Ptolemy adheres to the method which he had followed in his account of India within the Ganges. He therefore begins with the coast, which he describes from the Eastern Mouth of the Ganges to the Great Promontory where India becomes conterminous with the country of the Sinai. The mountains follow, then the rivers, then the towns in the interior, and last of all the islands.*

2 The seacoast of this division is thus described. In the Gangetic Gulf beyond the Mouth of the Ganges called Antibolei —

The coast of the A i r r h a d o i —

Pentapolis	150°	18°
Mouth of River Katabêda	151° 20'	17°
Barakoura, a mart .	152° 30'	16°
Mouth of the River Toko-sanna	153°	14° 30'

Wilford, probably misled by a corrupt reading, took the name of the A i r r h a d o i to be another form of Antibole. He says (*Asiat. Research*, Vol XIV, p 444) "Ptolemy says that the eastern-most branch of the Ganges was called Antibolê

or Airrhadon This last is from the Sanskrit Hradâna, and is the name of the Brahmaputra Antibole was the name of a town situated at the confluence of several large rivers to the SE of Dhakka and now called Feringibazar" By the Airrhadoi, however, are undoubtedly meant the Kirâta With regard to the position here assigned to them Lassen thus writes (*Ind Alt*, vol III, pp 235-237) — "By the name Kirradai Ptolemy designates the land on the coast of further India from the city of Pentapolis, perhaps the present Mirkan-serai in the north, as far as the mouth of the Tokosanna or Arakan river The name of this land indicates that it was inhabited by the Kirâta, a people which we find in the great Epic settled in the neighbourhood of the Lauhitya, or Brahma putra, consequently somewhat further to the north than where Ptolemy locates them Hence arises the question whether the Kirâta who, as we know, belong to the Bhota, and are still found in Nêpâl had spread themselves to such a distance in earlier times, or whether their name has been erroneously applied to a different people The last assumption is favoured by the account in the *Periplûs*, according to which ships sailing northward from Dôsarêñô, or the country on both sides of the Vaitarani, arrived at the land of the wild flat-nosed Kirradai, who like the other savage tribes were men-eaters Since the author of that work did not proceed beyond Cape Comorin, and applied the name of Kirâta to a people which lived on the coast to the SW of the Ganges, it is certain that he had erroneously used this name to denote the wild and fabulous races Ptolemy must have fol-

lowed him or other writers of the kind, and to the name Kiráta has given a signification which did not originate with himself. Although the Kiratas, long before the time in which he lived, had wandered from their northern Fatherland to the Himalaya and thence spread themselves to the regions on the Brahmaputra, still it is not to be believed that they should have possessed themselves of

see no reason to doubt the correctness of this statement, although the trees from which this precious oil and spicè were prepared and which are different kinds of the laurel, do not appear at the present day to be found in this country, since, according to the testimony of the most recent writers the botanical productions of Arakan at least have not as yet been sufficiently investigated It can, however, be asserted that in Silhet, which is not very remote from Chaturgrāma, *Malabathrum* is produced at this very day" Saint-Martin expresses similar views He writes (*Etude*, pp 343, 344) "The Kirrhadia of Ptolemy, a country mentioned also in the *Periplūs* as lying west from the mouths of the Ganges and the Skyratai of Megasthenes are cantons of Kirāta, one of the branches of the aboriginal race the widest spread in Gangetic India, and the most anciently known In different passages of the *Purāṇas* and of the epics their name is applied in a general manner to the barbarous tribes of the eastern frontiers of Āryavarta, and it has preserved itself in several quarters, notably in the eastern districts of Nēpāl There is a still surviving tradition in Tripuri (Tipperah), precisely where Ptolemy places his Kirrhadia, that the first name of the country was Kirāt (*J.A.S. Beng.*, Vol XIX, Long, *Chronicles of Tripurā*, p 536) The Tamerai were a tribe of the same family"

Mouth of the River Katabēda — This may be the river of Chittagong called the Karma-phuli The northern point of land at its mouth is, according to Wilford (*Asiat. Research* vol XIV, p 445) called Pattana, and hence he thinks

that Chatgrām or Chaturgrām (Chittagong) is the Pentapolis of Ptolemy for Pattanphulli, which means 'flourishing seat' The same author has proposed a different identification for the Katabēda River "In the district of Sandowē," he says, "is a river and a town called in modern maps Sedoa for Saindwa (for Sandwipa)" and in Ptolemy Sadus and Sada Between this river and Arakan there is another large one concealed behind the island of Cheduba, and the name of which is Kātābaidā or Kātībaiza This is the river Katabeda of Ptolemy, which, it is true, he has placed erroneously to the north of Arakan, but as it retains its name to this day among the natives, and as it is an uncommon one in that country, we can hardly be mistaken As that part of the country is very little frequented by seafaring people the Kātābaidā is not noticed in any map or sea chart whatever It was first brought to light by the late Mr Burrows, an able astronomer, who visited that part of the coast by order of Government In the language of that country kātū is a fort and Bycitzā or Baidza is the name of a tribe in that country" (*Asiat Res*, vol XIV, pp 452, 453)

**Barakoura** —This mart is placed in Yule's map at Rāmāi, called otherwise Rāmu, a town lying 68 miles SSE of Chittagong

**Mouth of the Tokosanna** —This river Wilford and Lassen (*Ind Alt*, vol III, p 237) identified with the Arakan river Yule prefers the Naf, which is generally called the Teke-nāf, from the name of a tribe inhabiting its banks

## 3 That of the Silver country (A r g y r a)

Sambra, a city	153° 30'	13° 45,
Sada, a city . . .	154° 20'	11° 20,
Mouth of the River Sados .	153° 30'	12° 30'
Bêrabonna, a mart .	155° 30'	10° 20'
The mouth of the River		
Têmala . . .	157° 30'	10°
Têmala, a city	157° 30'	9°
The Cape beyond it	157° 20'	8°

4 That of the Bésyngetai Cannibals  
on the Sarabakic Gulf where are—

Sabara, a city	159° 30'	8° 30'
Mouth of the River Bêsynga	162° 20'	8° 25'
Bêsynga, a mart	162°	9°
Bêrabaî, a city .	162° 20'	6°
The Cape beyond it	159°	4° 40'

Arakan is no doubt the Silver Country, but the reason why it should have been so designated is not apparent, since silver has never so far as is known, been one of its products. It appears to have included part of the province of Pegu, which lies immediately to the south of it.

Sada — This town is mentioned in that part of Ptolemy's introductory book (ch xiii, § 7) of which a translation has been given, as the first port on the eastern side of the Gangetic Gulf at which ships from Paloura on the opposite coast touched before proceeding to the more distant ports of the Golden Khersonese and the Great Gulf. It cannot be with certainty identified. "It may perhaps have been Ezata, which appears in Pegu legend as the name of a port between Pegu

and Bengal"—Yule, quoting *J A S Beng*, vol XXVIII, p 476

**B̄crabonna**—The same authority suggests that this may be Sandowē, which Wilford proposed to identify with Sada

Têmala is the name of a town, a river, and a cape. In the introductory book (e xiii, § 8) it is called Tamala, and said to lie to the south-east of Sada, at a distance of 3500 stadia. Yule would identify it, though doubtfully, with Gwa. Lassen again places it at Cape Negrais, which is without doubt the promontory which Ptolemy says comes after Têmala.

The Sarabakie Gulf is now called the Gulf of Martaban.—The name (Bësyngytai) of the cannibals is partly preserved in that of Bassein, which designates both a town and the river which is the western arm of the Irâwadi. Ptolemy calls this river the Bôsyngä. The emporium of the same name Lassen takes to be Rangûn, but the similarity of name points to its identification with Bassein, an important place as a military position, from its commanding the river.

**B̄crabai**—Beyond this Ptolemy has a promontory of the same name, which may be Barago Point. The names at least are somewhat similar and the position answers fairly to the requirements. Lassen took B̄crabai, the town, to be Martaban.

5 That of the Golden Khersonese  
(*Xρυσῆς Χερσονήσου*)

Takôla, a mart	160°	4° 15'
The Cape beyond it	158° 40'	2° 40'

## Mouth of the River Khrysoa-

nas ..	... . . . .	159°	1°
Sabana, a mart	... . . . .	160°	3° S L
Mouth of the River Palandos	..	161°	2° S L
Cape Maleou Kôlon ..		163°	2° S L'
Mouth of the River Attaba. ...	164°	1° S L	
Kôli, a town	... . . . .	164° 20'	on the equator
Perimoula.	. . . . .	163° 15'	2° 20
Perimoulik Gulf	... . . . .	168° 30'	4° 15'

The Golden Khersonese denotes generally the Malay Peninsula, but more specially the Delta of the Irâwadi, which forms the province of Pegu, the Suvarnabhumi (Pali form,—*Sovannabhumi*) of ancient times. The Golden Region which lies beyond this, in the interior, is Burmâ, the oldest province of which, above Ava, is still, as Yule informs us, formally styled in State documents Sonaparanta, i.e. 'Golden Frontier'<sup>26</sup>

Takôla —Rangûn, as Yule points out, or a port in that vicinity, best suits Ptolemy's position with respect to rivers, &c,<sup>27</sup> while at the same

<sup>26</sup> Thornton notices in his *Gazetteer of India* (s v Burmah) that when Colonel Burney was the resident in Ava, official communications were addressed to him under the authority of the "Founder of the great golden city of precious stones, the possessor of mines of gold, silver, rubies, amber and noble serpentine."

<sup>27</sup> Dr Forchammer in his paper on the *First Buddhist Mission to Suvannabhumi*, pp 7, 16, identifies Takôla with the Burman Kola or Kula taik and the Talaung Taikkulâ, the ruins of which are still extant between the present Ayetthima and Kinyua, now 12 miles from the sea shore, though it was an important seaport till the 16th century —J B

time Thakalai is the legendary name of the founder of Rangûn Pagoda. There was, however, he says, down to late mediæval times, a place of note in this quarter called Takkhala, Takola, or Tagala, the exact site of which he cannot trace, though it was apparently on the Martaban side of the Sitang estuary.

Mouth of the Khrysoana River.—This must be the Eastern or Rangûn mouth of the Irâwadi, for, as Yule states on the authority of Dr F. Mason, Hmâbi immediately north of Rangûn was anciently called Suvarnanadî, i.e. 'Golden River,' and this is the meaning of Khrysoana.

Sabana.—This may be a somewhat distorted form of Suvarna, 'golden-coloured,' and the mart so called may have been situated near the mouth of the Saluen River. Yule therefore identifies it with Satung or Thatung. Lassen assigns it quite a different position, placing it in one of the small islands lying off the southern extremity of the Peninsula.

Cape Malcou Kôlon.—Regarding this Yule says, "Probably the Cape at Amherst Mr Crawford has noticed the singular circumstance that this name is pure Javanese, signifying 'Western Malays.' Whether the name Malay can be so old is a question, but I observe that in Bastian's *Siamese Extracts*, the foundation of Takkhala is ascribed to the Malays." Lassen places it much further south and on the eastern coast of the Peninsula, identifying it with Cape Romania (*Ind Alt.*, vol III, p 232).

Kôli.—In the *Proceedings of the Royal Geographical Society*, vol IV, p 639 ff., Colonel

Yule has thrown much light on Ptolemy's description of the coast from this place to Kattigara by comparing the glimpse which it gives us of the navigation to China in the 1st or 2nd century of our era with the accounts of the same navigation as made by the Arabs seven or eight centuries later. While allowing that it would be rash to dogmatize on the details of the trans-gangetic geography, he at the same time points out that the safest guide to the true interpretation of Ptolemy's data here lies in the probability that *the nautical tradition was never lost*. He calls attention also to the fact that the names on the route to the Sinae are many of them Indian, specifying as instances Sabana, Pagrasa, R. Sôbanos, Tipônobastô, Zaba, Tagora, Balonga, Sinda, Aganagara Brama, Ambastas, Rabana, River Kottiaris, Kolkonegara, &c. At Kôh the Greek and Arab routes first coincide, for, to quote his words, "I take this Kôh to be the Kalah of the Arabs, which was a month's sail from Kaulam (Quilon) in Malabar, and was a place dependent on the Mahârâja of Zâbâj (Java or the Great Islands) and near which were the mountains producing tin. Ko-lo is also mentioned in the Chinese history of the T'ang dynasty in terms indicating its position somewhere in the region of Malaka. Kalah lay on the sea of Shalâhit (which we call Straits of Malaka), but was not very far from the entrance to the sea of Kadranj, a sea which embraced the Gulf of Siam, therefore I presume that Kalah was pretty far down the Malay Peninsula. It may, however, have been Kadah, or Quedda as we write it,

for it was 10 days' voyage from Kalah to Tiyūmah (Batūmah, Koyūmah) Now the Sea of Kadranj was entered, the Perimulie Gulf of Ptolemy"

Perimulie Gulf —Pliny mentions an Indian promontory called Perimula where there were very productive pearl fisheries (lib VI, c 54), and where also was a very busy mart of commerce distant from Patala, 620 Roman miles (hb VI, c 20) Lassen, in utter disregard of Pliny's figures indicating its position to be somewhere near Bombay, placed it on the coast of the Island of Manār In a note to my translation of the *Indika* of Megasthenes I suggested that Perimula may have been in the Island of Salsette Mr Campbell's subsequent identification of it however with Simylla (Tiamula) where there was both a cape and a great mart of trade I think preferable, and indeed quite satisfactory But, it may be asked, how came it to pass that a place on the west coast of India should have the same name as another on the far distant Malay coast It has been supposed by way of explanation that in very remote times a stream of emigration from the south-eastern shores of Asia flowed onward to India and other western countries, and that the names of places familiar to the emigrants in the homes they had left were given to their new settlements There is evidence to show that such an emigration actually took place Yule places the Malay Perimuli at Pahang The Perimulie Gulf is the Gulf of Sīm, called by the Arabs, as already stated, the Sea of Kadranj Lassen takes it to be only an indentation of the

Peninsular coast by the waters of this Gulf, which in common with most other writers he identifies with Ptolemy's Great Gulf

6 That of the Lôsta: (Robber's country)

Samaradô . . . . .	163°	4° 50'
Pagrasa . . . . .	165°	4° 50'
Mouth of the River Sôbanos . .	165° 40'	4° 45'
(Fontes Fluvii) <sup>28</sup> . . . . .	162° 30'	13°
Pithônobastê, a mart . . . . .	166° 20'	4° 45'
Akadra . . . . .	167°	4° 45'
Zabai, the city . . . . .	168° 40'	40° 45'

7 That of the Great Gulf

The Great Cape where the Gulf begins . . . . .	169° 30'	4° 15'
Thagora . . . . .	168°	0°
Balonga, a Metropolis . .	167° 30'	7°
Throana	167°	8° 30'
Mouth of the River Doanas	167°	10°
(Sources of a river) <sup>29</sup> . . .	163°	27°
Kortatha, a metropolis . .	167°	12° 30'
Sinda, a town	167° 15'	16° 40'
Pagrasa	167° 30'	14° 30'
Mouth of the River Dôrins	168°	15° 30'
(Sources of a river) <sup>28</sup>	163°	27°
or (Tab Geog )	162°	20° 2S'
Aganagara . . . . .	169°	16° 20'
Mouth of the River Scros . .	171° 30'	17° 20'
(Sources of a river) <sup>28</sup> -	170° (½ add Tab)	32°
(Another source) <sup>28</sup> . . . . .	173° (½ add Tab)	30°
(The confluence) <sup>28</sup> . . . . .	171°	27°

<sup>28</sup> Additions of the Latin Translator

The end of the Great Gulf

towards the Sinai . . . . . 173° 17° 20'

**Samaradē** — This coincides with Samarat, the Buddhistic classical name of the place commonly called Ligor (*i.e.* *Nagara*, ‘the city’), situated on the eastern coast of the Malay Peninsula and subject to Siam

**Mouth of the River Sôbanos** — Sôbanos is the Sanskrit Suvarna, in its Pali form Sobanna, which means ‘golden’. One of the old cities of Siam, in the Meinam basin was called Sobanapuri, *i.e.* ‘Gold-town’

**Pithônabastê**, Yule thinks, may correspond to the Bungpasoi of our maps at the mouth of the large navigable river Bangpa-Kong. It is at the head of the Gulf of Siam eastward of Bangkok

**Akadra** — Yule would identify this with the Kadranj of the Arabs, which he places at Chantibon on the eastern coast of the gulf

**Zabai** — This city, according to Ptolemy, lay to the west of the Doanas, or Mekong river, and Yule therefore identifies it with the seaport called Sanf or Chanf by the Arab navigators. Sanf or Chanf under the limitations of the Arabic alphabet represents Champâ, by which the southern extremity of Cochinchina is designated. But Champâ lies to the south of the Mekong river, and this circumstance would seem to vitiate the identification. Yule shows, however, that in former times Champâ was a powerful state, possessed of a territory that extended far beyond its present limits. In the travels of Hiuen Tsiang (about A.D. 629) it is called Mahâchampâ. The locality of the

ancient port of Zabai or Champâ is probably therefore to be sought on the west coast of Kam-bôja, near the Kampot, or the Kang-kao of our maps (See *Ind Ant*, vol VI, pp 228-230)

By the Great Gulf is meant the Gulf of Siam; together with the sea that stretches beyond it towards China. The great promontory where this sea begins is that now called Cape Kamboja.

Sinda was situated on the coast near Pulo Condor, a group of islands called by the Arabs Sandar-Fulât and by Marco Polo Sondur and Condur. Yule suggests that these may be the Satyrs' Islands of Ptolemy, or that they may be his Sinda.

8. The mountains in this division are thus named —

Bêpyrrhos, whose extremities lie in	148°	34°
and .. . . . .	154°	26°
and Maiandros, whose extremities lie		
in . . . . .	152°	24°
and . . . . .	160°	16°
and Damassa (or Dobassa), whose		
extremities lie in .	162°	23°
and . . . . .	166°	33°
and the western part of Sêmanthinos,		
whose extremities lie in	170°	33°
and . . . . .	180°	26°

Bêpyrrhos —The authorities are pretty well agreed as to the identification of this range. "Bêpyrrhos," says Lassen (*Ind Alt*, vol I, pp 549-50) "answers certainly to the Himalaya from the sources of the Sarayû to those of the Tista." "Ptolemy," says Saint-Martin (*Etude*, p 337)

"applies to a portion of the Himalayan chain the name of Bopyrthos, but with a direction to the south east which does not exist in the axis of this grand system of mountains. In general, his notions about the Eastern Himalayas are vague and confused. It is the rivers which he indicates as flowing from each group, and not the position which he assigns to the group itself that can serve us for the purpose of identification. He makes two descend from Bopyrthos and run to join the Ganges. These rivers are not named, but one is certainly the Kansiki and the other ought to be either the Gandaki or the Tista." Yule remarks, "Ptolemy shows no conception of the great Brahmaputra valley. His Bopyrthos shuns

the west, contributing the other confluent A single glance at the map, Saint-Martin remarks (*Étude*, p 338), clearly shows that the reference here is to the Brahmaputra river, whose indigenous name, the Dihong, accounts readily for the word Doanas It would be idle, he adds, to explain where errors so abound, what made Ptolemy commit the particular error of making his Doanas run into the Great Gulf instead of joining the eastern estuary of the Ganges The Dobassa Mountains, I therefore conclude, can only be the eastern extremity of the Himâlaya, which goes to force itself like an immense promontory into the grand elbow which the Dihong or Brahmaputra forms, when it bends to the south-east to enter Asâm If the word Dobassa is of Sanskrit origin, like other geographical appellations applied to these eastern regions, it ought to signify the 'mountains that are obscure,'—Tâmasa Parvata. Yule (quoting *JAS Beng* vol XXXVII, pt ii, p 192) points out that the Dimasas are mentioned in a modern paper on Asâm, as a race driven down into that valley by the immigration of the Bhôtiyas This also points to the Bhôtân Himâlayas as being the Damassa range, and shows that of the two readings, Dobassa and Damassa, the latter is preferable

Mount Sêmanthinos is placed 10 degrees further to the east than Maiandros, and was regarded as the limit of the world in that direction Regarding these two Sanskrit designations, Saint-Martin, after remarking that they are more mythic than real, proceeds to observe "These Oriental countries formed one of the

horizons of the Hindu world, one of the extreme regions, where positive notions transform themselves gradually into the creations of mere fancy. This disposition was common to all the peoples of old. It is found among the nations of the east no less than in the country of Homer. Udayagiri,—the mountain of the east where the sun rises, was also placed by the Brahmanik poets very far beyond the mouths of the Ganges. The Sūmananthinôs is a mountain of the same family. It is the extreme limit of the world, it is its very girdle (*Samanta* in Sanskrit). In fine, Purânik legends without number are connected with Mandara, a great mountain of the East. The fabulous character of some of these designations possesses this interest with respect to our subject, that they indicate even better than notions of a more positive kind the primary source of the information which Ptolemy employed. The Maiandros, however, it must be observed, has a definite locality assigned it, and designates in Ptolemy the chain of heights which cover Arakan on the east."

9 From Bêpyrrhos two rivers discharge into the Ganges, of which the more northern has its sources in . . . . .  $148^{\circ} 33'$

and its point of junction with

the Ganges in  $140^{\circ} 15' 30'' 20'$

The sources of the other

river are in  $142^{\circ} 27'$

and its point of junction with

the Ganges in . . . . .  $144^{\circ} 26'$

10 From Maiandros descend the rivers beyond the Ganges as far as the Bêsynga River,

but the river Sêros flows from the range of Sêmanthinos from two sources, of which the most western lies in . . .  $170^{\circ} 30' 32''$   
 and the most eastern in . . .  $173^{\circ} 30' 30''$ ,  
 and their confluence is in .. .  $171^{\circ} 27''$

11 From the Damassa range flow the Daonas and Dôrias (the Doanas runs as far as to Bêpyrrhos)  
 and the Dôrias rises in . . .  $164^{\circ} 30' 28''$

Of the two streams which unite to form the Doanas that from the Damassa range rises in .. . .  $162^{\circ} 27^{\circ} 30'$   
 that from Bêpyrrhos rises in . . .  $153^{\circ} 27^{\circ} 30'$   
 The two streams unite in .. .  $160^{\circ} 20' 19''$

The river Sôbanas which flows from Maiandros rises in . . . . .  $163^{\circ} 30' 13''$

12 The rivers which having previously united flow through the Golden Khersonese from the mountain ridges, without name, which overhang the Khersonese—the one flowing into the Khersonese first detaches from it the Attabas in about . . .  $161^{\circ} 2^{\circ} 20'$   
 and then the Khrysoanas in about . . .  $161^{\circ} 1^{\circ} 20'$   
 and the other river is the Palandas

Nearly all the rivers in the foregoing table have already been noticed, and we need here do little more than remind the reader how they have been identified The two which flow from Bêpyrrhos into the Ganges are the Kausikî and the Tista The Bêsyngâ is the Bassein River or Western branch of the Irâwadi The Sêros enters the

sea further eastward than any of the other rivers, probably in Champâ, the Zata of Ptolemy, while Lassen identifies it with the Mekong. The Daonas is no doubt the Brahmaputra, though Ptolemy, taking the estuary of the Mekong or Kamboja never to be its mouth, represents it as falling into the Great Gulf. It was very probably also, to judge from the close resemblance of the names when the first two letters are transposed, the Odanes of Artemidôros, who, according to Strabo (lib XV, c 1, 72) describes it as a river that bred crocodiles and dolphins, and that flowed into the Ganges. Curtius (lib VIII, c 9) mentions a river called the Dyardanes that bred the same creatures and that was not so often heard of as the Ganges because of its flowing through the remotest parts of India. This must have been the same river as the Odanes or Doanas, and therefore the Brahma-

13 The regions of this Division lying along the course of the Ganges on its eastern side and furthest to the north are inhabited by the Ganganoi, through whose dominions flows the river Sarabos, and who have the following towns —

Sapolos.	.	.	..	..	139° 20'	35°
Storna	....	..	..	..	138° 40'	34° 40'
Heorta	....	..	..	..	138° 30'	34°
Rhappa	...	..	..	..	137° 40'	33° 40'

For Ganganoi should undoubtedly be read Tanganoi, as Tangana was the name given in the heroic ages to one of the great races who occupied the regions along the eastern banks of the upper Ganges. Their territory probably stretched from the Rāmgangā river to the upper Sarayū, which is the Sarabos of Ptolemy. Their situation cannot be more precisely defined, as none of their towns named in the table can with certainty be recognized. "Concerning the people themselves," says Saint-Martin (*Étude*, pp 327, 328) "we are better informed. They are represented in the *Mahābhārata* as placed between the Kirāta and the Kulinda in the highlands which protected the plains of Kōsala on the north. They were one of the barbarous tribes, which the Brahmanic Aryans, in pushing their conquests to the east of the Ganges and Jamnā, drove back into the Hīmālayas or towards the Vindhya regions. It is principally in the Vindhya regions that the descendants of the Tangana of classic times are now to be found. One of the Rājput tribes, well-known in the present day under the name of Tank or Tonk is

settled in Rohulkhand, the very district where the *Mahâbhârata* locates the Tangana and Ptolemy his Tanganoi These Taṅk Râjputs extend westward to a part of the Doâb, and even as far as Gujarât, but it is in the race of the Dangayas, spread over the entire length of the Vindhya Mountains and the adjacent territory from the southern borders of the ancient Magadha to the heart of Mâlwa to the north of the lower Narmadâ, it is in this numerous race, subdivided into clans without number, and which is called according to the districts inhabited Dhangîs, Dhâṅgars, Donga, &c that we must search for the point of departure of the family and its primordial type This type, which the mixture of Aryan blood has modified and ennobled in the tribes called Râjput, preserves its aboriginal type in the mass of mountain tribes, and this type is purely Mongolian, a living commentary on the appellation of Mlechha, or Barbarian, which the ancient Brahmanic books apply to the Tangana" (Conf *Brih Samh* ix, 17, x, 12, XIV, 12, 29, XVI, 6, XVII, 25, XXXI, 15 *Râmâyana* IV, 44, 20)

The towns, we have said, cannot be identified with certainty, but we may quote Wilford's views as to what places now represent them He says (*Asiat Research* vol XIV, p 457) "The Bân or Saraban river was formerly the bed of the Ganges and the present bed to the eastward was also once the Bân or Saraban river This Ptolemy mistook for the Râmagangâ, called also the Bân, Saraban and Šarâvatî river, for the four towns which he places on its banks, are either on the old or the new bed of the Ganges Storna and Sapolos

are Hastnaura, or Hastina-nagara on the old bed, and Sabal, now in ruins, on the eastern bank of the new bed, and is commonly called Sabalgarh. Hastinâpur is 24 miles S W of Dârânagar, and 11 to the west of the present Ganges, and it is called Hastnawer in the *Ayin Akbari*. Heorta is Awartta or Hardwâr. It is called Arate in the *Peulinger* tables, and by the Anonymous of Ravenna."

14 To the south of these are the Maroundai who reach the Gangaridai, and have the following towns on the east of the Ganges —

Boraita . . . .	142° 20'	29°
Kôrygaza . . . .	143° 30'	27° 15'
Kondôta . . . .	145°	26°
Kelydna . . . .	146°	25° 30'
Aganagora . . . .	146° 30'	22° 30'
Talarga. . . .	146° 40'	21° 40'

The Maroundai occupied an extensive territory, which comprised Tirhut and the country southward on the east of the Ganges, as far as the head of its delta, where they bordered with the Gangaridai. Their name is preserved to this day in that of the Mûndas, a race which originally belonged to the Hill men of the North, and is now under various tribal designations diffused through Western Bengal and Central India, "the nucleus of the nation being the Ho or Hor tribe of Singhbhûm."<sup>29</sup> They are probably the Monedes of

<sup>29</sup> *J A S B*, vol XXXV, p 103. The Mûnda tribes as enumerated by Dalton, *id* p 153, are the Kuars of Illichpur, the Korewas of Sirguja and Jaspur, the Kherias of Chutia Nagpur, the Hor of Singhbhûm, the Bhumij of

whom Pliny speaks, in conjunction with the Suari. That they were connected originally with the Muranda, a people of Lampâka (Lamghân) at the foot of the Hindu-Kôh mentioned in the inscription on the Allâhâbâd pillar, along with the Śaka, as one of the nations that brought tributary gifts to the sovereign of India, is sufficiently probable<sup>30</sup>, but the theory that these Muranda on being expelled from the valleys of the Kôphêś by the invasion of the Yetha, had crossed the Indus and advanced southwards into India till they established themselves on the Ganges, in the kingdom mentioned by Ptolemy, is, as Saint-Martin has clearly proved (*Étude*, pp 329,330) utterly untenable, since the sovereign to whom the Muranda of the north sent their gifts was Samudragupta, who reigned subsequently to the time of Ptolemy, and they could not therefore have left their ancestral seats before he wrote. Saint-Martin further observes that not only in the case before us but in a host of analogous instances, it is certain that tribes of like name with tribes in India are met with throughout the whole extent of the region north of the Indus, from the eastern extremity of the Hîmâlaya as far as the Indus and the Hindu-Kôh, but this he points out is attributable to causes more general than the partial migration of certain tribes. The *Vayu Purâna* mentions the Muranda among the Mlechha tribes which gave kings to

---

Mânbhûm Dhalbhûm, and the Sântals of Mânbhûm Singhbhûm, Katak, Hâzâribâgh and the Bhâgalpur hills. The western branches are the Bhills of Mâlwa and Kânhdâs and the Kôlis of Gujarat.

<sup>30</sup> *Mahâbh.* vii, 4847, Reinaud, *Mém sur l'Inde*, p 353, Lassen, *Ind Alt*, vol II, p 877 —ED

India during the period of subversion which followed the extinction of the two great Aryan dynasties See Cunningham, *Anc Geog of Ind*, pp 505-509, also Lassen, *Ind Alt*, vol III, pp 136f 155-157, and vol II, p 877n

Regarding the towns of the Maroundai, we may quote the following general observations of Saint-Martin (*Étude*, pp 331, 332) "The list of towns attributed to the Maroundai would, it might be expected, enable us to determine precisely what extent of country acknowledged in Ptolemy's time the authority of the Muranda dynasty, but the corruption of many of the names in the Greek text, the inexactitude or insufficiency of the indications and, in fine, the disappearance or change of name of old localities, render recognition often doubtful, and at times impossible" He then goes on to say "The figures indicating the position of these towns form a series almost without any deviation of importance, and betoken therefore that we have an itinerary route which cuts obliquely all the lower half of the Gangetic region From Boraita to Kelydna this line follows with sufficient regularity an inclination to S E to the extent of about 6 degrees of a great circle On leaving Kelydna it turns sharply to the south and continues in this direction to Talarga, the last place on the list, over a distance a little under four degrees This sudden change of direction is striking, and when we consider that the Ganges near Rājmahal alters its course just as sharply we have here a coincidence which suggests the enquiry whether near the point where the Ganges so suddenly bends, there is a place having a name something like

Kelydna, which it may be safely assumed is a bad transcription into Greek of the Sanskrit Kâlnâdi ('black river') of which the vulgar form is Kâlîndî. Well then, Kâlîndî is found to be a name applied to an arm of the Ganges which communicates with the Mahânandâ, and which surrounds on the north the large island formed by the Mahânandâ and Ganges, where once stood the famous city of Gâuda or Gaur, now in ruins. Gauda was not in existence in Ptolemy's time, but there may have been there a station with which if not with the river itself the indication of the table would agree. At all events, considering the double accordance of the name and the position, it seems to me there is little room to doubt that we have there the locality of Kelydna. The existing town of Mâldâ, built quite near the site of Gaur, stands at the very confluence of the Kâlîndî and Mahânandâ. This place appears to have preserved the name of the ancient Malada of the Purânik lists, very probably the Molindai of Megasthenes. This point being settled, we are able to refer thereto the towns in the list, both those which precede and those which follow after. We shall commence with the last, the determination of which rests on data that are less vague. These are Aganagara and Talarga. The table, as we have seen, places them on a line which descends towards the sea exactly to the south of Kelydna. If, as seems quite likely, these indications have been furnished to Ptolemy by the designating of a route of commerce towards the interior, it is natural to think that this route parted from the great emporium of the Ganges (the Gange Regia of Ptolemy, the

Ganges emporium of the *Periplūs*) which should be found, as we have already said, near where Hûghli now stands. From Kelydna to this point the route descends in fact exactly to the south, following the branch of the Ganges which forms the western side of the delta. The position of Aghadip (Agadvîpa) on the eastern bank of the river a little below Katwâ, can represent quite suitably Aganagora (Aganagara), while Talarga may be taken to be a place some leagues distant from Calcutta, in the neighbourhood of Hûghli. The towns which precede Kelydna are far from having the same degree of probability. We have nothing more here to serve for our guidance than the distances taken from the geographical notations, and we know how uncertain this indication is when it has no check to control it. The first position above Kelydna is Kondota or Tondota, the distance represented by an arc of two degrees of a great circle would conduct us to the lower Bagamati (Bhagavatî). Korygaza or Sorygaza (distant  $\frac{1}{2}$  degree) would come to be placed perhaps on the Gandakî, perhaps between the Gandakî and the lower Sarayû, last of all Boraita, at two degrees from Korygaza, would conduct us to the very heart of ancient Kôsala, towards the position of the existing town of Bardâ. We need scarcely add, in spite of the connexion of the last two names, that we attach but a faint value to determinations which rest on data so vague." Boraita may be, however, Bharêch in Audh, as Yule has suggested, and with regard to Korygaza, it may be observed that the last part of the name may represent the Sanskrit *kachha*,

which means a *marsh* or *place near a marsh*, and hence Korygaza may be Gorakhpur, the situation of which is notably marshy

15 Between the Imaōs and Bêpyrrhos ranges the Takoraiōi are farthest north, and below them are the Korangkaloī, then the Passalaī, after whom to the north of Maian-dros are the Tiladaī, such being the name applied to the Bêseidai, for they are short of stature and broad and shaggy and broad-faced, but of a fair complexion

Takoraiōi —This tribe occupied the valleys at the foot of the mountains above Eastern Kôsala and adjoined the Tanganoī The Tanganas are mentioned among the tribes of the north in the lists of the *Brihat Sanhitâ* (IX, 17, X, 12, XIV, 29) They have left numerous descendants in different parts of Gangetic India A particular clan in Rohilkhand not far from the seats of the Takoraiōi preserves still the name under the form Dakhaura (Elliot's *Supplementary Glossary of Indian terms*, p 360), and other branches are met with near the Jamnâ and in Râjputâna Towards the east again the Dekra form a considerable part of the population of Western Asâm (J.S. Beng,

In the name is easily to be recognized with Vaisâli of Hiuen Tsiang, which was a small kingdom stretching northward from the Ganges along the banks of the river Gandak. The capital had the same name as the kingdom, and was situated in the immediate neighbourhood of Hâjipur, a station near the junction of the Gandak and Ganges, where a great fair is annually held, distant from Pâtna about 20 miles. "Here we find the village of Besârh, with an old ruined fort, which is still called Raja Bisal-ka-garh, or the fort of Raja Visala, who was the reputed founder of the ancient Vaisâli" (Cunningham, *Anc. Geog. of Ind.*, p 443)

Tiladai.—We here leave the regions adjoining the Ganges, and enter the valleys of the Brahmaputra. The Tiladai are called also Bêsadai or Basadai. Ptolemy places them above the Maiandros, and from this as well as his other indications, we must take them to be the hill-people in the vicinity of Silhet, where, as Yule remarks, the plains break into an infinity of hillocks, which are specially known as *tila*. It is possible, he thinks, that the Tiladai occupied these *tilas*, and also that the Tiladri hills (mentioned in the *Kshetra Samâsa*) were the same *Tilas*. The same people is mentioned in the *Periplûs*, but under the corrupt form of Sêsatâi. The picture drawn of them by the author of that work corresponds so closely with Ptolemy's, that both authors may be supposed to have drawn their information from the same source. We may quote (in the original) what each says of them —

*Periplûs* εθνος τι, τω μεν σώματι κολοβοὶ καὶ

σφόδρα πλατυπρόσωποι, ἔνυοις δὲ λῶστοι αὐτοῖς  
[δὲ] λέγεσθαι [φασί] Σησάτας, παρομοίους ἀνημέροις

Ptolemy εἰσὶ γὰρ κολοβοὶ, καὶ πλατεῖς, καὶ δασεῖς,  
καὶ πλατυτρόσωποι, λευκοὶ μέντοι τὰς χρόας

*Description of the regions which extend from  
the Brahmaputra to the Great Gulf*

16 Beyond Kirrhadia, in which they say the best *Malabathrum* is produced, the Zamirai, a race of cannibals, are located near Mount Maiandros

17 Beyond the Silver Country, in which there are said to be very many silver mines, (*μέταλλα ἀσήμου*), is situated in juxtaposition to the Bēsyngētai, the Gold Country (*Xρυσῆ χώρα*), in which are very many gold mines, and whose inhabitants resemble the Zamirai, in being fair-complexioned, shaggy, of squat figure, and flat nosed

Kirrhadia — This has been already noticed With reference to its product *Malabathrum*, which is not betel, but consists of the leaves of one or more kinds of the cinnamon or cassia-tree I may quote the following passage from the *J A.S Beng*, vol XVI, pp 38-9 — “*Cinnamomum albisflorum* is designated *taj*, *tejpat* in Hindustani, the former name being generally applied to the leaf and the latter to the bark of the tree, *taj*, *tejpata*, or *tejapatra*, by all which names this leaf is known, is used as a condiment in all parts of India It is indigenous in Silhet, Asām, Rungpur (the Kirrhadia of Ptolemy), and in the valleys of the mountain-range as far as Masuri The dry branches and leaves

are brought annually in large quantities from the former place, and sold at a fair, which is held at Vikramapura *Taj*, however, is a name that is also given in the eastern part of Bengal to the bark of a variety of *Cinnamomum Zeylanicum* or *Cassia lignea*, which abounds in the valleys of Kachâr, Jyntiya and Asâm" The word *Malabathrum* is a compound of *tamala* (the Sanskrit name of *Cinnamomum albidiflorum*) and *pâtra*, 'a leaf' Another derivation has been suggested *mâlâ*, 'a garland,' and *pâtra* 'a leaf' (Lassen, *Ind Alt*, vol I, p 283 seq, and conf Dymock's *Veget Mat Med*, p 553)

The following interesting passage describes the mode in which the Bêsadai trade in this article with the Chinese I translate from the *Periplis*, cap 65 — "On the confines of Thina is held an annual fair attended by a race of men called the Sêsatâi, who are of a squat figure, broad-faced, and in appearance like wild beasts, though all the same they are quite mild and gentle in their disposition They resort to this fair with their wives and children, taking great loads of produce packed in mats like the young leaves of the vine The fair is held where their country borders on that of the Thinai Here, spreading out the mats they use them for lying on, and devote several days to festivity This being over, they withdraw into their own country and the Thinai, when they see they have gone, come forward and collecting the mats, which had been purposely left behind, extract first from the Calami (called Petroi), of which they were woven, the sinews and fibres, and then taking the leaves fold them double and roll them up into balls through which they pass the fibres of the

**Calamī** The balls are of three kinds, and are designated according to the size of the leaf from which they are made, *hadro*, *meso* and *mikrosphairon* Hence there are three kinds of *Malabālhrum*, and these are then carried into India by the manufacturers

**Zamīraī** —A various reading is Zamerai It has been already stated that this was a tribe of the same family as the Kīrāta, beside whom they are named in the great geographical catalogue of the *Mahābhārata* Ramifications of the Zamīraī still exist under the names of Zamarias, Tomara, &c, in the midst of the savage districts which extend to the S and SE of Magadha, and to the west of the Sōn

The silver country, it has already been noticed, is Arakan, and the gold country and copper country, Yule remarks, correspond curiously even in approximate position with the Sonaparānta (golden frontier land), and Zampadipa of Burmese state-documents The Malay peninsula, taken generally, has still many mines both of the precious and the useful metals

18 And, again, between the ranges of Bēpyrrhos and Damassa, the country furthest north is inhabited by the Annakhai (or Aminakhai), south of these the Indaprathai, after these the Ibēringai, then the Dabasai (or Damassai ?), and up to Maiandros the Nangalogai, which means “the World of the Naked” (*γυμνῶν κόσμος*)

19 Between the Damassa range and the frontiers of the Sinai are located furthest

north the Kakobai, and below them the Basanârai

20 Next comes the country of Khalkitis, in which are very many copper mines South of this, extending to the Great Gulf the Koudoutai, and the Barrhai, and, after them the Indoï, then the Doânaï, along the river of the same name.

21 To these succeeds a mountainous country adjoining the country of Robbers (*Ἄγοτῶν*) wherein are found elephants and tigers. The inhabitants of the Robber country are reported to be savages (*θηριώδεις*), dwelling in caves, and that have skins like the hide of the hippopotamus, which darts cannot pierce through.

Anuakhai.—The position Ptolemy assigns to them is the mountain region to the north of the Brahmaputra, corresponding to a portion of Lower Asâm

Indaprathai.—This is a purely Hindu name. In Sanskrit documents and in inscriptions mention is made of several towns in the provinces of the Ganges, which had taken the name of the old and famous Indraprastha (the modern Dehli), and we may conclude that the Indaprâthai of the East were a Brahmanic settlement. In subsequent times Sanskrit designations spread further down into the Dekhan with the cultus, either of the Brahmans or the Buddhists. Instances in point are Modura and Kosamba, which have been already noticed. The

Indaprâthai appear to have established themselves in the districts S of the Brahmaputra, and of the Annakhai

Ibêringai and Dabasaï or Damasaï—The Damassaï (now the Dimasas as already noticed), occupied the region extending from their homonymous mountains to the Brahmaputra, but further to the east than the Annakhai and Ibêringai

Nangalogai—Many tribes still existing on the hills, east and north-east of Silhet, are called Nâgas This name, which is given correctly in Ptolemy as Nanga, is the Indian word for *naked*, and according to Yule it is written *Nanga* in the Musalman History of Asâm The absolute nakedness of both sexes, he says, continues in these parts to the present day The latter half of the name *lôg* (Sanskrit *lôk*), is the Indian term for *people, mankind, or the world*, as Ptolemy has it

With regard to the other tribes enumerated, Saint-Martin remarks (*Étude*, pp 345-6) — “The Ibêringai are still a tribe of the north just as the Dabassâé, perhaps on the mountains of the same name There is still a tribe of Dhobas in Dinajpur, one of the districts of the north-east of Bengal, on the confines of the ancient Kâmarûpa To the east of the Dobassa mountains, towards the frontiers of the Sinaï, the tribe of the Kakobai is found to a surety in that of the Khokus, who occupy the same districts The Basannarae, in a locality more southern, are very probably the Bhanzas, a tribe of the mountains to the south of Tippera, east of the mouth of the Brahmaputra In the Koudoutai and the Barrhai, it is easy to

recognize, though Ptolemy carries them too far into the south, the Kolitas and the Bhars or Bhors, two of the most notable parts of the population of Western Asâm, and of the districts of Bengal that belong to Kâmarûpa. The Doânaî or Daonai are perpetuated in the Zaên of Eastern Asâm, and the name of the Lêstae, the last of the list, corresponds to all appearance to that of the Lepchhas, a well-known mountain race on the confines of Sikkîm to the west of the Tistâ." For notices of the tribes which he has thus identified with those of Ptolemy, he refers to the *Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal*, vols VI, IX, XIV, and XVIII. His identification of the Lêstai with the Lepchhas is in every way unfortunate. That the name *Agorai* is not a transcript of any indigenous name, but the Greek name for *robbers* or *pirates*, is apparent from the fact alone that the  $\eta$  has the iôta subscribed. The Lepchhas, moreover, live among mountains, far in the interior, while Ptolemy locates his Lêstai along the shores of the Gulf of Siam.

*Ptolemy gives next a list of 33 towns in the interior by way of supplement to those already mentioned as situated along the course of the Ganges, followed by a list of the towns in the Golden Khersonese —*

22 The inland towns and villages of this division (Transgangetic India), in addition to those mentioned along the Ganges are called —

Sêlampoura	148° 30'	33° 20'
Kanogiza	.	143° 32°

Kassida	.	146°	31° 10'
Eldana	..	152°	31°
Asanabara	.	155°	31° 30'
Arkhinara	.	163°	31°
Ourathênaï	..	170°	31° 20'
Souanagoura		145° 30'	29° 30'
Sagôda or Sadôga		155° 20'	29° 20'
Anîna		162°	29°
Salatha		165° 40'	28° 20'

23	Rhadamarkotta, in which is much <i>nard</i>	.	172°	28°
	Athênaigouron		146° 20'	27°
	Maniaina (or Maniataia)		147° 15'	24° 40'
	Tôsalei, a metropolis		150°	23° 20'
	Alosanga		152°	24° 15'
	Adeisaga		159° 30'	23°
	Kumara		170°	23° 15'
	Parisara		179°	21° 30'
	Tougma, a metropolis		152° 30'	22° 15'
	Ansabion		158° 30'	22° 30'
	Posinara		162° 15'	22° 50'
	Pandasa		165°	21° 20'
	Sipibêris (or Sittêbêris)		170°	23° 15'
	Triglypton, called also of the kingdom		Trilingon, capital	
	In this part the cocks are said bearded, and the crows and parrots white		154°	18°
24.	Lariagara		162° 30'	18° 15'
	Rhingibêri		166°	18°
	Agimoifha	.	170° 40'	18° 40
	Tomara .		172°	18°

Dasana or Doana .....	.165°	15° 20'
Mareoura, a metropolis, called also Malthoura . . . .	158°	12° 30'
Lasippa (or Lasypa) .. . .	161°	12° 30'
Bareukora (or Bareuathra)	164° 30'	12° 50'

## 25 In the Golden Khersonese—

Balongka . . . .	.162°	4° 40'
Kokkonagara . . . .	.160°	2°
Tharrha . . . .	162°	1° 20' S
Palanda . . . .	.161°	1° 20' S

Regarding the foregoing long list of inland towns, the following general observations by Saint-Martin are instructive "With Ptolemy, unfortunately," he says (*Étude*, pp 348-9) "the correspondence of names of towns in many instances, is less easy to discover than in the case of the names of peoples or tribes. This is shown once again in the long-enough list which he adds to the names of places already mentioned under the names of the people to which they respectively belonged. To judge from the repetitions in it and the want of connexion this list appears to have been supplied to him by a document different from the documents he had previously used, and it is precisely because he has not known how to combine its contents with the previous details that he has thus given it separately and as an appendix, although thereby obliged to go again over the same ground he had already traversed. For a country where Ptolemy had not the knowledge of it as a whole to guide him, it would be unjust to reproach him with this want of connexion in his materials, and the con-

fusion therefrom resulting, but this absence, almost absolute, of connexion does only render the task of the critic all the more laborious and unwelcome and there results from it strange mistakes for those who without sufficiently taking into account the composition of this part of the Tables, have believed they could find in the relative positions which the places have there taken a sufficient means of identification It would only throw one into the risk of error to seek for correspondences to these obscure names (of which there is nothing to guarantee the correctness, and where there is not a single name that is assigned to a definite territory), in the resemblances, more or less close, which could be furnished by a topographical dictionary of India ”

Sêlam pour a —This suggests Sêlempur, a place situated at some distance north of the Dêva or lower Sarayû The identity of the names is our only warrant for taking them as applying to one and the same town, but as the two places which follow belong to the same part of the country, the identification is in some measure supported Sêlempur is situated on a tributary of the Sarayû, the little Gandak

Kanogiza —This is beyond doubt the famous city of Kanyakubja or Kanauj, which has already been noticed under the list of towns attributed to Prasiakê, where the name is given as Kanagora Ptolemy, while giving here the name more correctly has put the city hopelessly out of its position with reference to the Ganges, from which he has removed it several degrees, though it stood upon its banks Among Indian cities it ranks next in

point of antiquity to Ayôdhyâ in Audh, and it was for many centuries the Capital of North-Western India. It was then a stately city, full of incredible wealth, and its king, who was sometimes styled the Emperor of India, kept a very splendid court. Its remains are 65 miles WNW from Lakhnau. The place was visited by Hiuen Tsiang in 634 A.D. Pliny (*H.N.* lib VI, c 21) has Cahnipava. Conf. Lassen, *Ind. Alt.* vol I, p 158, *Mahâbh.* III, 8313, *Râmâyana*, I, 34, 37.

**Kassîda** —Here we have another case of a recurrence of the same name in an altered form. In Sanskrit and in inscriptions Kâsî is the ordinary name of Bânâras. How Ptolemy came to lengthen the name by affixing *da* to it has not been explained. Ptolemy has mutilated Vâranâsî into Erarasa, which he calls a metropolis, and assigns to the Kaspeiraios. Such is the view taken by Saint-Martin, but Yule, as we have seen, identifies Erarasa with Govardhan (Girirâja). He also points out, on the authority of Dr F Hall, that Vâranâsî was never used as a name for Bânâras.

**Souanaganura** —M. Saint-Martin (*Etude* p 351) thinks this is a transcript of the vulgar form of Suvarnanagara, and in this name recognizes that of one of the ancient capitals of Eastern Bengal, Suvarnagrama (now Sônargâon, about 12 miles from Dhakka), near the right bank of the Lower Brahmaputra.

**Sagôda** —There can be no doubt of the identity of this place with Ayôdhyâ, the capital of Kôsala, under the name of Sâkêta or Sagêda. Sâkyamuni spent the last days of his life in this

city, and during his sojourn the ancient name of Ayôdhyâ gave place to that of Sâkêta, the only one current Hindu lexicographers give Sâkêta and Kôsala (or Kôsala) as synonyms of Ayôdhyâ. The place is now called Audh, and is on the right bank of the Sarayû or Ghâghrâ, near Faizâbâd, a modern town, built from its ruins. At some distance north from Audh is the site of Srâvasti, one of the most celebrated cities in the annals of Buddhism. For the identity of Sâkêta with Ayôdhyâ and also Visakha see Cunningham, *Geog. of Anc. Ind.*, pp 401 sqq.

Rhadamarkotta (v 1 Rhadamarkotta) Saint-Martin has identified this with Rangâmatî, an ancient capital situated on the western bank of the lower Brahmaputra, and now called Udêpur (Udayapura,—*city of sunrise*) Yule, who agrees with this identification, gives as the Sanskrit form of the name of the place, Ranga-mritika. The passage about *Nard* which follows the mention of Rhadamarkotta in the majority of editions is, according to Saint-Martin (*Étude*, p 352 and note), manifestly corrupt. Some editors, correct τολλή, *much*, into τόλεις, *cities*, and thus Nardos becomes the name of a town, and Rhadamarkotta the name of a district, to which Nardos and the towns that come after it in the Table belong. On this point we may quote a passage from Wilford, whose views regarding Rhadamarkotta were different. He says (*Asiat. Research* vol XIV, p 441), Ptolemy has delineated tolerably well the two branches of the river of Ârvâ and the relative situation of two towns upon them, which still retain their ancient name, only

they are transposed These two towns are Urathêna, and Nardos or Nardon, Urathena is Rhâdana, the ancient name of Amarapur, and Nardon is Nartenh on the Kayn-dween ” He says that “Nartenh was situated in the country of Rhandamarkota, literally, the Fort of Randamar, after which the whole country was designated ”

Tôsalei, called a Metropolis, has become of great importance since recent archæological discoveries have led to the finding of the name in the Asôka Inscriptions on the Dhauli rock The inscription begins thus “By the orders of Dêvanampiya (beloved of the gods) it is enjoined to the public officers charged with the administration of the city of Tôsali,” &c Vestiges of a larger city have been discovered not far from the site of this monument, and there can be no doubt that the Tôsali of the inscription was the capital in Asôka’s time of the province of Orissa, and continued to be so till at least the time of Ptolemy The city was situated on the margin of a pool called Kôsalâ-Gangâ, which was an object of great religious veneration throughout all the country It is pretty certain that relative to this circumstance is the name of Tosala-Kôsâlakas, which is found in the *Brahmânda Purâna*, which Wilford had already connected with the Tôsalê of Ptolemy He had however been misled by the 2nd part of the word to locate the city in N Kôsalâ, that is Audh An obvious objection to the locating of Tôsalê in Orissa is that Ptolemy assigns its position to the eastern side of the Ganges, and Lassen and Burnouf have thus been led to conclude that there must have been two

cities of the name Lassen accordingly finds for Ptolemy's Tosalē a place somewhere in the Province of Phukkā. But there is no necessity for this. If we take into account that the name of Tosalē is among those that are marked as having been added to our actual Greek texts by the old Latin translators (on what authority we know not) we shall be the less surprised to find it out of its real place (Sant Martin *Itinere*, pp. 353 f., citing J. A. S. Bentz, vol. VII, pp. 435 and 442, Lassen, *Ird. Alt.*, vol. II, p. 256, and vol. III, p. 158, and

Trai-linga, the three 'lingas' of Mahâdêva, and this in Arakan is part of an extensive district in the *Purâna*s, called Tri-pura, or the three towns and townships first inhabited by three Daityas These three districts were Kamilâ, Chattala and Burmânaka, or Rasâng, to be pronounced Ra-shânh, or nearly so, it is now Arâkan Kamilla alone retains the name of Tri-pura, the two other districts having been wrested from the head Râja Ptolemy says that in the country of the Trilinga, there were white ravens, white parrots, and bearded cocks The white parrot is the *kâkâluâ*, white ravens are to be seen occasionally in India Some say that this white colour might have been artificial The bearded cocks have, as it were, a collar of reversed feathers round the neck and throat, and there only, which gives it the appearance of a beard These are found only in the houses of native princes, from whom I procured three or four, and am told that they came originally from the hills in the N W of India" Lassen has adopted a somewhat similar view He says (*Ind Alt*, vol III, p 238-9) "Triglyphon was probably the capital of the Silver country, Arâkan of the present day It lies, according to Ptolemy's determination, one degree further east and  $3\frac{1}{2}$  degrees further north than the mouths of the Arâkan river The mouths are placed in the right direction, only the numbers are too great It may be added that the foundation of this city, which was originally called Vaisâli, belongs to earlier times than those of Ptolemy, and no other capital is known to us in

this country. The Greek name which means 'thrice cloven,' i.e., 'three-forked' or 'a trident' suits likewise with Arakan, because it lies at the projections of the delta, and the Arâkan river, in the lower part of its course, splits into several arms, three of which are of superior importance. Ptolemy's remark that the cocks there are bearded and the ravens and parrots white, favours this view, for according to Blyth (*J A S Beng*, vol XV, p 26) there is found in Arâkan a species of the *Bucconidae*, which on account of their beards are called by the English 'barbets,' and on the same authority we learn that what is said of the ravens and parrots is likewise correct." Cunningham again, says (*Anc Geog of Ind*, pp 518-9). "In the inscriptions of the Kalachuri, or Haihaya dynasty of Chêdi, the Râjas assume the titles of "Lords of Kâlinjarapura, and of Trikalinga" Trikalinga, or the three Kalingas, must be the three kingdoms Dhanakataka, or Amarâvati, on the Krishnâ, Andhra or Warangol, and Kalinga, or Râjamahêndri. "The name of Trikalinga is probably old, as Pliny mentions the *Macco-Calingae* and the *Ganganides-Calingae* as separate peoples from the *Calingae*, while the *Mahâbhârata* names the Kalingas three separate times and each time in conjunction with different peoples. As Trikalinga thus corresponds with the great province of Têlingana, it seems probable that the name of Têlingana may be only a slightly contracted form of Trikalingâna, or the three Kalingas. I am aware that the name is usually derived from *Tri-liṅga*, or the three *śivali* of *Mahâdeva*. But the mention of *Macco-Calingae* and *Ganganides*

Calingae by Pliny would seem to show that the three Kalingas were known as early as the time of Megasthenes, from whom Pliny has chiefly copied his Indian Geography. The name must therefore be older than the Phallic worship of Mahadeva in Southern India." Caldwell observes (*Dravid Gram.*, Introd., p. 32) that though Trilingon is said to be on the Ganges, it may have been considerably to the south of it, and on the Godavari, which was always regarded by the Hindus as a branch of the Ganges, and is mythologically identical with it. The Andhras and Kalingas, the two ancient divisions of the Telugu people are represented by the Greeks as Gangetic nations. It may be taken as certain that Triglyphon, Trilinga or Modogalinga was identical with Telingana or Trilingam, which signifies the country of the *three lingas*. The Telugu name and language are fixed by Pliny and Ptolemy as near the mouths of the Ganges or between the Ganges and the Godavari. Modo or Modoga is equivalent to *mûdu* of modern Telugu. It "means *three*" Yule again places Trilingon on the left bank of the Brahmaputra, identifying it with Tripura (Tippera), a town in the district of the same name, 48 miles E S E of Dhakka.

Rhingiberi.—Saint-Martin and Yule, as we have seen, place Rangamatî on the Brahmaputra at Udipur. Wilford, however, had placed it near Chitagaon, and identified it with Ptolemy's Rhingiberi. "Ptolemy," he says (*Asiat Res.*, vol. XIV, p. 439), "has placed the source of the Dorias" (which in Wilford's opinion is the Dumurâ or Dumriyâ, called in the lower part of its course the

Karmaphuli) "in some country to the south of Salhata or Silhet, and he mentions two towns on its banks Pandassa in the upper part of its course, but unknown, in the lower part Rhîngibêri, now Rangâmatî near Châtgâv (Chitagaon), and Reang is the name of the country on its banks On the lesser Dumurâ, the river Chingri of the *Bengal Atlas*, and near its source, is a town called there Reang Rangâmatî and Rangâ-bâti, to be pronounced Rangabari, imply nearly the same thing"

Tomara was no doubt a place belonging to the Zamîrai or Tamarai, who were located inland from Kirrhadia, and inhabited the Garô Hills

Mareoura or Malthoura —In Yule's map this metropolis is located, but doubtfully, to the west of Tougma (Tagaun) near the western bank of the Khyendwen, the largest confluent of the Irâwadi

Bareukora (or Bareuathra) is in Yule's map identified with Ramû, a pârâ in the district of Chitagaon, from which it is 68 miles distant to the SSE Wilford identified it with Phalgun, another name for which, according to the *Kshetra Samâsa* was Pharuigâra, and this he took to be Ptolemy's Bareukora Phalgun he explains to be the Palong of the maps

Kokkonagara —Yule suggests for this Pegu "It appears," he says, "from Târanâtha's history of Buddhism (ch xxxix) that the Indo-Chinese countries were in old times known collectively as Koki In a Ceylonese account of an expedition against Râmaniyâ, supposed to be Pegu, the army captures the city of Ukkaka, and

in it the Lord of Râmaniyâ Kokkonagara again, is perhaps the Kâkula of Ibn Batuta, which was certainly a city on the Gulf of Siam, and probably an ancient foundation from Kalîngâ, called after Śrî-kâkola there ”

**T h a r r a** —The same authority identifies this with Tharâwati at the head of the delta of the Irâwadî It is one of the divisions of the Province of Pegu

*Ptolemy's description of Transgangetic India now closes with the Islands*

26 The islands of the division of India we have been describing are said to be these

Bazakata	149° 30'	9° 30'
[Khalinê]	146°	9° 20'

In this island some say there is found in abundance the murex shell-fish ( $\kappa\omega\chi\lambda\sigma$ ) and that the inhabitants go naked, and are called Aginnatai

27 There are three islands called Sindai, inhabited by Cannibals, of which the centre lies in                            152°     8° 40' S

Agathou daimonos	145° 15'	on the equator
------------------	----------	----------------

28 A group of five islands, the Barousai, whose inhabitants are said to be cannibals, and the centre of which lies in 152° 20' 5° 20' S  
 A group of three islands, the Sabadeibaï, inhabited by cannibals, of which the centre lies in                            160°     8° 30' S

Bazakata may perhaps be the island of Cheduba, as Wilford has suggested Lassen

takes it to be an island at the mouth of the Bassein river, near Cape Negrais, called Diamond Island. Its inhabitants are called by Ptolemy tho Aginnatai, and represented as going naked. Lassen, for Aginnatai would therefore read Apinnatai, "because *apinaddha* in Sanskrit means unclothed" but *apinaddha* means 'tied on,' clothed. Yulo thinks it may perhaps be the greater of the two Andâmân islands. He says (*Proc Roy Geog Soc* vol IV, 1882, p 654), "Proceeding further the (Greek) navigator reaches the city of Kôli or Kôlis, leaving behind him the island of Bazakota 'Good Fortune' ('*Ayaθōv Δαιμόνος*) and the group of the Barusæ. Here, at Kôli, which I take to be a part of the Malay Peninsula, the course of the first century Greek, and of the ninth century Arab, come together." Bazakota and the Island of Good Fortune may be taken as the Great and the Little Andâmân respectively. The Arab relation mentions in an unconnected notice an island called Malhân between Serendib and Kalah, i.e., between Ceylon and the Malay Peninsula, which was inhabited by black and naked cannibals. "This may be another indication of the Andâmân group, and the name may have been taken from Ptolemy's Maniolae, which in his map occupy the position in question." And again "Still further out of the way (than the Andâmâns) and difficult of access was a region of mountains containing mines of silver. The landmarks (of the Arab navigator) to reach these was a mountain called Alkhushnâmi ('the Auspicious') "This land of silver mines is both by position and by this description identified.

with the Argyrō of Ptolemy. As no silver is known to exist in that region (Arakan) it seems probable that the Arab indications to that effect were adopted from the Ptolemaic charts. And this leads me to suggest that the Jibil Khush-nāmī also was but a translation of the Ἀγαθού δαιπορος νῆσος, or isle of Good Fortune, in those maps, whilst I have thought also that the name Andaman might have been adopted from a transcript of the same name in Greek as ἀγαθός δαιπόρος."

Khalino in Yule's map is read as Saline, and identified with the Island of Salang, close to the coast in the latitude of the Nicobar Islands.

The Sindai Islands are placed by Ptolemy about as far south as his island of Jabadios (Java) but many degrees west of them. Lassen says (*Ind Alt*, vol III, pp 250 1) that the northmost of the three islands must be Pulo Rapat, on the coast of Sumatra, the middle one the more southern, Pulo Pangor, and the island of Agatho Dauion, one of the Salat Mankala group. The name of Sindai might imply, he thinks, that Indian traders had formed a settlement there. He seems to have regarded the Island of Agatho-Dauion as belonging to the Sindai group, but this does not appear to me to be sanctioned by the text. Yule says "Possibly Sundar-Fulat, in which the latter word seems to be an Arabized plural of the Malay *Pulo* 'island' is also to be traced in Sindae Insulae, but I have not adopted this in the map."

The Barousai Islands—"The (Arab) navigators," says Yule in his notes already referred to, "crossing the sea of Horkand with the west monsoon, made land at the islands of Lanja-Lanka,

or Lika-Bâlûs, where the naked inhabitants came off in their canoes bringing ambergris and cocoanuts for barter, a description which with the position identifies these islands with the Nikobars, Nekaveram of Marco Polo, Lâka Vâram of Rashîdu'd-dîn, and, I can hardly hesitate to say, with the Barusae Islands of Ptolemy ”

Sabadeibai Islands —The latter part of this name represents the Sanskrit *dvîpa*, ‘an island’ The three islands of this name are probably those lying east from the more southern parts of Sumatra

29 The island of Iabadios (or Sabadios) which means the island of Barley It is said to be of extraordinary fertility, and to produce very much gold, and to have its capital called Argyrê (Silver-town) in the extreme west of it  
 It lies in 167° 8° 30' S  
 and the eastern limit lies in 169° 8° 10' S

30 The Islands of the Satyrs, three in number, of which the centre is in 171° 2° 30' S The inhabitants are said to have tails like those with which Satyrs are depicted

31 There are said to be also ten other islands forming a continuous group called Maniolai, from which ships fastened with iron nails are said to be unable to move away, (perhaps on account of the magnetic iron in the islands) and hence they are built with wooden bolts The inhabitants are called Maniolai, and are reputed to be cannibals

The island of Iabadios —*Yava*, the first part

of this name, is the Sanskrit word for 'barley,' and the second part like *deiba*, *diba*, *diva*, and *diw* or *duu*, represents *dvipa*, 'an island' We have here therefore the Island of Java, which answers in most respects to Ptolemy's description of it The following note regarding it I take from Bunbury's *History of Ancient Geography* (pp 643-4) "The name of Java has certainly some resemblance with Iabadius, supposing that to be the correct form of the name, and, what is of more consequence, Ptolemy adds that it signifies 'the island of barley,' which is really the meaning of the name of Java The position in latitude assigned by him to the island in question ( $8\frac{1}{2}$  degrees of south latitude) also agrees very well with that of Java but his geographical notions of these countries are in general so vague and erroneous that little or no value can be attached to this coincidence On the other hand, the abundance of gold would suit well with Sumatra, which has always been noted on that account, while there is little or no gold found in Java The metropolis at its western extremity would thus correspond with Achin, a place that must always have been one of the principal cities of the island In either case he had a very imperfect idea of its size, assigning it a length of only about 100 Geog miles, while Java is  $9^{\circ}$  or 540 G miles in length, and Sumatra more than 900 G miles It seems not improbable that in this case, as in several others, he mixed up particulars which really referred to the two different islands, and applied them to one only but it is strange that if he had any information concerning such islands as Sumatra

and Java, he should have no notion that they were of very large size, at the same time that he had such greatly exaggerated ideas of the dimensions of Ceylon" Mannert took Iabadios to be the small island of Banka on the S E of Sumatra For the application of the name of Java to the Island of Sumatra, see Yule's *Marco Polo*, vol II, p 266, note 1

Regarding the Islands of the Satyrs, Lassen says (*Ind Alt*, vol III, p 252) The three islands, called after the Satyrs, mark the extreme limits of the knowledge attained by Ptolemy of the Indian Archipelago The inhabitants were called Satyrs because, according to the fabulous accounts of mariners, they had tails like the demi-gods of that name in Greek mythology Two of these must be Madura and Bali, the largest islands on the north and east coast of Java, and of which the first figures prominently in the oldest legends of Java, the second on the contrary, not till later times The third island is probably Lombok, lying near Bali in the east A writer in Smith's *Dictionary of Classical Geography* thinks these islands were perhaps the Anamba group, and the Satyrs who inhabited them apes resembling men. Yule says in the notes—"Sandar-Fulit we cannot hesitate to identify with Palo Condor, Marco Polo's Sondur and Condur These may also be the Satyrs' islands of Ptolemy, but they may be his Sindai, for he has a Sunda city on the coast close to this position, though his Sunda islands are dropped far away. But it would not be difficult to show that Ptolemy's islands have been located almost at random, or even from a pepper-caster."

Ptolemy locates the Maniolai Islands, of which he reckons ten, about 10 degrees eastward from Ceylon. There is no such group however to be found in that position, or near it, and we may safely conclude that the Maniolai isles are as mythical as the magnetic rocks they were said to contain. In an account of India, written at the close of the 4th or beginning of the 5th century, at the request either of Palladius or of Lausius, to whom Palladius inscribed his *Historia Lausiaca*, mention is made of these rocks "At Muziris," says Priaulx, in his notice of this account<sup>31</sup> "our traveller stayed some time, and occupied himself in studying the soil and climate of the place and the customs and manners of its inhabitants. He also made enquiries about Ceylon, and the best mode of getting there, but did not care to undertake the voyage when he heard of the dangers of the Sinhalese channel, of the thousand isles, the Maniolai which impede its navigation, and the loadstone rocks which bring disaster and wreck on all iron-bound ships." And Masū'di, who had traversed this sea, says that ships sailing on it were not fastened with iron nails, its waters so wasted them (*The Indian Travels of Apollonius of Tyana, &c.*, p 197) After Ptolemy's time a different position was now and again assigned to these rocks, the direction in which they were moved being more and more to westward. Priaulx (p 247), uses this

---

<sup>31</sup> Wilford (*As Res* vol XIV, pp 429 30), gives the fable regarding these rocks from the *Chaturvarga Chintāmani*, and identifies them with those near Pārunḍra or the lion's place in the lion's mouth or Straits of Singapur

as an argument in support of his contention that the Roman traffic in the eastern seas gradually declined after 273 A D , and finally disappeared How, otherwise, he asks, can we account for the fact that the loadstone rocks, those myths of Roman geography, which, in Ptolemy's time, the flourishing days of Roman commerce, lay some degrees eastward of Ceylon, appear A D 400 barring its western approach, and A D 560 have advanced up to the very mouth of the Arabian Gulf But on the Terrestrial Globe of Martin Behem, Nuremberg A D 1492, they are called Manillas, and are placed immediately to the north of Java Major Aristotle speaks of a magnetic mountain on the coast of India, and Pliny repeats the story Klaproth states that the ancient Chinese authors also speak of magnetic mountains in the southern sea on the coasts of Tonquin and Cochin-China, and allege regarding them that if foreign ships which are bound with plates of iron approach them, such ships are there detained, and can in no case pass these places (Tennant's *Ceylon*, vol I, p 444 n ) The origin of the fable, which represents the magnetic rocks as fatal to vessels fastened with iron nails, is to be traced to the peculiar mode in which the Ceylonese and Malays have at all times constructed their boats and canoes, these being put together without the use of iron nails, the planks instead being secured by wooden bolts, and stitched together with cords spun from the fibre of the cocoanut "The Third Calender," in the *Arabian Nights Entertainment*, gives a lively account of his shipwreck upon the Loadstone Mountain, which he tells us was entirely covered

towards the sea with the nails that belonged to the immense number of ships which it had destroyed

### CAP 3

#### POSITION OF THE SINAI

[11th Map of Asia ]

1 The Sinai are bounded on the north by the part of Sérîkê already indicated, on the east and south by the unknown land, on the west by India beyond the Ganges, along the line defined as far as the Great Gulf and by the Great Gulf itself, and the parts immediately adjacent thereto, and by the Wild Beast Gulf, and by that frontier of the Sinai around which are placed the *Ikhthyophagoi Aithiopes*, according to the following outline —

2 After the boundary of the Gulf on the side of India the mouth of the river Aspithra .	170°	16°
Sources of the river on the eastern side of the Sêman-		
thinos range .	180°	26°
Bramma, a town .	177°	12° 30'
The mouth of the river Ambastes .	176°	10°
The sources of the river .	179° 30'	15°
Rhabana, a town .	177°	8° 30'
Mouth of the river Sainos .	176° 20'	6° 30'
The Southern Cape .	175° 15'	4°
The head of Wild Beast Gulf	176°	2°

The Cape of Satyrs ..... 175° on the line  
 Gulf of the Sinai<sup>32</sup> . . . . . 178° 2° 20'

3 Around the Gulf of the Sinai dwell the fish-eating *Aithiopians*

Mouth of the river Kot-

tiaris . . . . . 177° 20' 7° S  
 Sources of the river... .... 180° 40' 2° S

Where it falls into the

river Sainos . . . . . 180° on the line  
 Kattigara, the port of the

Sinai ... . . . . . 177° 8° 30' S

4 The most northern parts are possessed by the *Semanthinoi*, who are situated above the range that bears their name Below them, and below the range are the *Akadrai*, after whom are the *Aspithrai*, then along the Great Gulf the *Ambastai*, and around the gulfs immediately adjoining the *Ikhthyophagoi Sinai*

5 The interior towns of the Sinai are named thus —

*Akadra* . . . . . 178° 20' 21° 15'

*Aspithra* . . . . . 175° 16°

*Kokkonagara* . . . . . 175° 50' 2° S

*Sarata* . . . . . 180° 30' 4° S

6 And the Metropolis  
*Sinai* or *Thinai*. .... .. 180° 40' 3° S  
 which they say has neither brazen walls nor anything else worthy of note It is encompassed on the side of Kattigara towards the west by

<sup>32</sup> Latin Translator.



under the Lesser Bear" Ptolemy has placed it 3 degrees south of the equator!!

#### CAP 4

#### POSITION OF THE ISLAND OF TAPROBANE

[*Map of Asia 12*]

1 Opposite Cape Kôry, which is in India, is the projecting point of the Island of Taprobane, which was called formerly Simoundou, and now Salikc. The inhabitants are commonly called Salai. Their heads are quite encircled with long luxuriant locks, like those of women. The country produces rice, honey, ginger, beryl, hyacinth<sup>ss</sup> and has mines of every sort—of gold and of silver and other metals. It breeds at the same time elephants and tigers.

2 The point already referred to as lying opposite to Kôry is called North Cape

(Boreion Akron) and lies                     $126^{\circ}$        $12^{\circ} 30'$

3 The descriptive outline of the rest of the island is as follows —

After the North Cape which

is situated in	.	$126^{\circ}$	$12^{\circ} 30'$
----------------	---	---------------	------------------

comes Cape Galiba		$124^{\circ}$	$11^{\circ} 30'$
-------------------	--	---------------	------------------

Margana, a town		$\dots 123^{\circ} 30'$	$10^{\circ} 20'$
-----------------	--	-------------------------	------------------

<sup>ss</sup> In one of the temples, says Kosmos, is the great hyacinth, as large as a pine cone, the colour of fire and flashing from a distance, especially when catching the beams of the sun, a matchless sight

Iôgana, a town . . . .	$123^{\circ} 20'$	$8^{\circ} 50'$
Anarismoundon, a cape. . .	$122^{\circ}$	$7^{\circ} 45'$
Mouth of the River Soana .	$122^{\circ} 20'$	$6^{\circ} 15'$
Sources of the river . . .	$124^{\circ} 30'$	$3^{\circ}$
Sindokanda, a town . . . .	$122^{\circ}$	$5^{\circ}$
Heaven of Priapis . . . .	$122^{\circ}$	$3^{\circ} 40'$
<b>4</b> Anoubingara	$121^{\circ}$	$2^{\circ} 40'$
Headland of Zeus . . . .	$120^{\circ} 30'$	$1^{\circ}$
Prasôdês Bay . . . .	$121^{\circ}$	$2^{\circ}$
Noubartha, a town . . . .	$121^{\circ} 40'$ on the Line	
Mouth of the river Azanos	$123^{\circ} 20'$	$1^{\circ}$ S
The sources of the river..	$126^{\circ}$	$1^{\circ}$ N
Odôka, a town . . . .	$123^{\circ}$	$2^{\circ}$ S
Orneôn, (Birds' Point) a headland .. .	$125^{\circ}$	$2^{\circ} 30'$ S
<b>5</b> Dagana, a town		
sacred to the Moon . . . .	$126^{\circ}$	$2^{\circ}$ S
Korkobara, a town . . . .	$127^{\circ} 20'$	$2^{\circ} 20'$ S
Cape of Dionysos . . . .	$130^{\circ}$	$1^{\circ} 30'$ S
Kêtaion Cape	$132^{\circ} 30'$	$2^{\circ} 20'$ S
Mouth of the river		
Barakês . . . .	$131^{\circ} 30'$	$1^{\circ}$ N
Sources of the river.. . .	$128^{\circ}$	$2^{\circ}$ N
Bôkana, a town . . . . .	$131^{\circ}$	$1^{\circ} 20'$ N
The haven of Mardos or Mardoulamnê . . . . .	$131^{\circ}$	$2^{\circ} 20'$ N
<b>6</b> Abaratha, a town . . . .	$131^{\circ}$	$3^{\circ} 15'$ N
Haven of the Sun (Heliou hmén) . . . . .	$130^{\circ}$	$4^{\circ}$
Great Coast (Aigialos. Megas) . . . . .	$130^{\circ}$	$4^{\circ} 20'$

Prokouri, a town .. .	131°	5° 20'
The haven of Rizala .	130° 20'	6° 30'
Oxeia, a headland . .	130°	7° 30'
Mouth of the river Gangēs .	129°	7° 20'
The sources of the river .	127°	7° 15'
Spatana Haven .	129°	8°

7 Nagadiba or Naga-		
dina, a town	129°	8° 30'
Pati Bay .	128° 30'	9° 30'
Anoubingara, a town	128° 20'	9° 40'
Modouttou, a mart .	128°	11° 20'
Mouth of the river Phasis	127°	11° 20'
The sources of the river	126°	8°
Talakōry (or Aakotē), a mart .	126° 20'	11° 20'

After which the North Cape

8 The notable mountains of the island are those called Galiba, from which flow the Phasis and the Ganges, and that called Malaiā, from which flow the Soanas and the Azanos and the Barakēs, and at the base of this range, towards the sea, are the feeding grounds of the elephants

9 The most northern parts of the Island are possessed by the Galiboi and the Moudouttoi, and below these the Anourogrammoi and the Nagadiboi, and below the Anourogrammoi the Soanoi, and below the Nagadiboi the Sennoi, and below these the Sandokandai, towards the west, and below these towards the feeding grounds of the elephants

the Boumasanoi, and the Tarakhoi, who are towards the east, below whom are the Bôkanoi and Diordouloï, and furthest south the Rhogandanoi, and the Nageroi.

10 The inland towns in the island are these —

Anourogrammon,	the royal residence	$124^{\circ} 10'$	$8^{\circ} 40'$
Maagrammon,	the metropolis .	$127^{\circ}$	$7^{\circ} 20'$
Adeisamon .		$129^{\circ}$	$5^{\circ}$
Podoukê		$124^{\circ}$	$2^{\circ} 40'$
Oulispada		$126^{\circ} 20'$	$40'$
Nakadouba		$128^{\circ} 30'$	on the Line

11 In front of Taprobanê lies a group of islands which they say number 1378 Those whose names are mentioned are the following —

Ouangalia (or Ouangana)	$120^{\circ} 15'$	$11^{\circ} 20'$
Kanathra	$121^{\circ} 40'$	$11^{\circ} 15'$
Aigidiôn	$118^{\circ}$	$8^{\circ} 30'$
Orncon .	$119^{\circ}$	$8^{\circ} 30'$
Monakhê	$116^{\circ}$	$4^{\circ} 15'$
Amminê .	$117^{\circ}$	$4^{\circ} 30'$

12 Karkos	$118^{\circ}$	$40' S$
Philêkos .	$116^{\circ} 30'$	$2^{\circ} 40' S$
Eirênenê .	$120^{\circ}$	$2^{\circ} 30' S$
Kalandadroua	$121^{\circ}$	$5^{\circ} 30' S$
Abrana .	$125^{\circ}$	$4^{\circ} 20' S$
Bassa .	$126^{\circ}$	$6^{\circ} 30' S$
Balaka .	$129^{\circ}$	$5^{\circ} 30' S$

Alaba .... ....	..	131°	4°	S
Goumara . . .	. . .	133°	1° 40'	S
13 Zaba ..	..	135°	on the Line	
Zibala . . .	. . .	135°	4° 15'	N
Nagadiba		135°	8° 30'	
Sousouara		135°	11° 15'	

14 Let such then be the mode of describing in detail the complete circuit of all the provinces and satrapies of the known world, and since we indicated in the outset of this compendium how the known portion of the earth should be delineated both on the sphere and in a projection on a plane surface exactly in the same manner and proportion as what is traced on the solid sphere, and since it is convenient to accompany such descriptions of the world with a summary sketch, exhibiting the whole in one comprehensive view, let me now therefore give such a sketch with due observance of the proper proportion

This island of Taprobane has changed its name with notable frequency In the *Rāmāyana* and other Sanskrit works it is called Lankā, but this was an appellation unknown to the Greeks They called it at first Antichthonos, being under the belief that it was a region belonging to the opposite portion of the world (Phny, lib VI, c xxii) In the time of Alexander, when its situation was better understood, it was called Taprobane Megasthenēs mentions it under this name, and remarks that it was divided (*into two*) by a river, that its inhabitants were called Palaeogoni and that it

produced more gold and pearls of large size than India. From our author we learn that the old name of the island was Simoundou, and that Taprobanê, its next name, was obsolete in his time, being replaced by Salikê. The author of the *Periplûs* states, on the other hand, that Taprobanê was the old name of the island, and that in his time it was called Palai Simoundou. The section of his work however in which this statement occurs (§ 61) is allowed to be hopelessly corrupt. According to Pliny, Palaesimundus was the name of the capital town, and also of the river on whose banks it stood. How long the island continued to be called Salikê does not appear, but it was subsequently known under such names as Serendîvus, Sirledîba, Serendîb, Zeilan, and Sailan, from which the transition is easy to the name which it now bears, Ceylon.

With regard to the origin or derivation of the majority of these names the most competent scholars have been divided in their opinions. According to Lassen the term Palaiogonoi was selected by Megasthenês to designate the inhabitants of the island, as it conveyed the idea entertained of them by the Indians that they were Râkshasas, or giants, 'the sons of the progenitors of the world.' To this it may be objected that Megasthenês did not intend by the term to describe the inhabitants, but merely to give the name by which they were known, which was different from that of the island. Schwanbeck again suggested that the term might be a transliteration of Pâli-janâs, a Sanskrit compound, which he took to mean "men of the sacred doctrine" (*Ind Ant*, vol VI, p 129, n.) But, as Priaulx has pointed out (*Apollon*,

of Tyana, p 110), this is an appellation which could scarcely have been given to others than learned votaries of Buddhism, and which could scarcely be applicable to a people who were not even Buddhist till the reign of Asôka, who was subsequent to Chandragupta, at whose court Megasthenes acquired his knowledge of India. Beside, it has been pointed out by Goldstücker (*l c n* 59) that *Pali* has not the meaning here attributed to it. He adds that the nearest approach he could find to *Palaiogonoi* is—*para* ‘on the other side of the river’ and *janâs* ‘a people’, *Pârajanâs*, therefore, ‘a people on the other side of the river’. Tennent, in conclusion, takes the word to be a Hellenized form of *Pali-putra*, ‘the sons of the Pali,’ the first Prasian colonists of the island. A satisfactory explanation of *Pali-Simoundou* has not yet been hit on. That given by Lassen, *Pali-Simanta* or Head of the Sacred Law, has been discredited. We come now to *Taprobanê*. This is generally regarded as a transliteration of

to it by Brahmanical writers, is Dwîpa-Râvana, i.e., 'the island of Râvana, whence perhaps Taprobane' Salikê, Sorendivas, and other subsequent names, are all considered to be connected etymologically with Sîmha-la (colloquially Silam), the Pali form of Sihala, a derivative from *simha*, 'a lion,' i.e. 'a horo'—the hero Vijaya. According to a different view these names are to be referred to the Javanese *sela*, 'a precious stone,' but this explanation is rejected by Yule (*Marco Polo*, vol II, p 296, n 6). For Salikê, Tennent suggests an Egyptian origin, Siela-keh, i.e., 'the land of Siela.'

Little more was known in the west respecting the island beyond what Megasthenes had communicated until the reign of the Emperor Claudius, when an embassy was sent to Rome by the Sinhalese monarch, who had received such astonishing accounts of the power and justice of the Roman people that he became desirous of entering into alliance with them. He had derived his knowledge of them from a castaway upon his island, the freedman of a Roman called Annius Plocamus. The embassy consisted of 4 members, of whom the chief was called Rachia, and appellation from which we may infer that he held the rank of a Râja. They gave an interesting, if not a very accurate, account of their country, which has been preserved by Pliny (*Nat Hist* lib VI). Their friendly visit, operating conjointly with the discovery of the quick passage to and from the East by means of the monsoon, gave a great impetus to commercial enterprise, and the rich marts, to which access had thus been opened, soon began to be frequented by the galleys of the West. Ptolemy, living in Alexan-

dria, the great entrepôt in those days of the Eastern traffic, very probably acquired from traders arriving from Ceylon, his knowledge concerning it, which is both wonderfully copious, and at the same time, fairly accurate, if we except his views of its magnitude, which like all his predecessors he vastly over-estimated On the other hand, he has the merit of having determined properly its general form and outline, as well as its actual position with reference to the adjoining continent, points on which the most vague and erroneous notions had prevailed up to his time, the author of the *Periplūs* for instance describing the island as extending so far westward that it almost adjoined Azania in Africa The actual position of Ceylon is between  $5^{\circ} 55'$  and  $9^{\circ} 51'$  N lat, and  $79^{\circ} 42'$  and  $81^{\circ} 45'$  E long Its extreme length from north to south is  $271\frac{1}{2}$  miles, its greatest width  $137\frac{1}{2}$  miles, and its area about one-sixth smaller than that of Ireland Ptolemy however made it extend through no less than 15 degrees of latitude and 12 of longitude He thus brought it down more than two degrees south of the equator, while he carried its northern extremity up to  $12\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  N lat, nearly 3 degrees north of its true position He has thus represented it as being 20 times larger than it really is This extravagant over-estimate, which had its origin in the Mythological Geography of the Indian Brâhmans, and which was adopted by the islanders themselves, as well as by the Greeks, was shared also by the Arab geographers Masû'dî, Idrisi, and Abu'l-fidâ, and by such writers as Marco Polo In consequence of these misrepresentations it came to be questioned at one time whether Ceylon or

Sumatra was the Taprobane of the Greeks, and Kant undertook to prove that it was Madagascar (Tennent's *Ceylon*, vol I, p 10 and n) Ptolemy has so far departed from his usual practice that he gives some particulars respecting it, which lie out of the sphere of Geography, strictly so called. He is mistaken in stating that the tiger is found in Ceylon, but he has not fallen into error on any other point which he has noticed. It may be remarked that the natives still wear their hair in the effeminate manner which he has noticed. In describing the island geographically he begins at its northern extremity, proceeds southward down the western coast, and returns along the east coast to Point Pedro. "In his map he has laid down the position of eight promontories, the mouths of five rivers and four bays and harbours, and in the interior he had ascertained that there were thirteen provincial divisions, and nineteen towns, besides two emporia on the coast, five great estuaries, which he terms lakes, two bays and two chains of mountains, one of them surrounding Adam's Peak, which he designates as Malaiā, the name by which the hills that environ it are known in the *Mahawânsô*." Tennent, from whom the foregoing summary has been quoted, observes in a foot-note (vol I, p 535) that Ptolemy distinguishes those indentations in the coast which he describes as *bays* (*κόλ-ος*) from the estuaries, to which he gives the epithet of *lakes*, (*λιμήν*);<sup>34</sup> of the former he particularises two, Pati

<sup>34</sup> Tennent here seems to have confounded *λιμήν*, a haven or creek, with *λίμνη*, a lake. The words are, however, etymologically connected.

and Prasôdê, the position of which would nearly correspond with the Bay of Trinkônamalai and the harbour of Colombo—of the latter he enumerates five, and from their position they seem to represent the peculiar estuaries formed by the conjoint influence of the rivers and the current, and known to the Arabs by the name of “gobbs”

Ceylon is watered by numerous streams, some of which are of considerable size. The most important is the Mahâweligangâ, which has its sources in the vicinity of Adam’s Peak, and which, after separating into several branches, enters the ocean near Trinkônamalai. Ptolemy calls it the Ganges. He mentions four other rivers, the Soana, Azanos, Barakê, and Phasis, which Tennent identifies with the Dedera-Oya, the Bentote, the Kambukgam and the Kangarayen respectively. Lassen, however (*Ind Alt.*, vol III, p 21), identifies the Azanos with the Kâlagangâ which enters the sea a little farther north than the river of Bentote, and is a larger stream.

The mountains named by Ptolemy are the Galiba in the north-west of the island, and the Malaia, by which he designates the mountain groups which occupy the interior of the island towards the south. He has correctly located the plains or feeding grounds of the elephants to the south-east of these mountains, *malaia* is the Tamil word for “mountain”

The places which he has named along the coast and in the interior have been identified, though in most cases doubtfully, by Tennent in his map of Taprobanê according to Ptolemy and Pliny, in vol I of his work, as follows —

- On the West Coast beginning from the north —  
 Margana with Mantote  
 Iôgana with Aripo  
 Anarismoundou Cape with Kudramah Point,  
 but Mannert with Kalpantyn (further south)  
 Sindo Kanda with Chilau (Chilau from Salâ-  
 bhana—the Diving, i.e. Pearl Fishery)  
 Port of Priapis<sup>35</sup> with Negombo  
 Cape of Zeus at Colombo  
 Prasôdê Bay, with Colombo Bay  
 Noubartha with Barberyn  
 Odoka with Hikkode  
 Cape Orneôn (of Birds) with Point de Galle  
 On the South Coast —  
 Dagana with Dondra Head  
 Korkobara with Tangalle  
 On the East Coast —  
 Cape of Dionysos, with Hambangtote  
 Cape Kêtaion (Whale cape) with Elephant Rock  
 (Bokana Yule identifies with Kambugam)  
 Haven of Mardos with Arukgam Bay  
 Abaratha with Karatïvoe (but Yule with Apar-  
 atote, which is better)  
 Haven of the Sun with Batticalao  
 Rizala Haven with Vendeloos Bay  
 Oxeia Cape (Sharp point) with Foul Point  
 Spatana Haven with an indentation in Trin-  
 kônamalai Bay  
 Nagadiba or Nagadina with a site near the Bay  
 Pati Bay with Trinkônamalai Bay  
 Anoubingara with Kuchiavelli  
 Modouttou with Kokelay

---

<sup>35</sup> This was no doubt a name given by the Greeks

## On the North Coast —

### Mouth of the Phasis

Talakôry or Aakotê, with Tondi Manaar Yule places both Nagadiba and Modouttou on the north-west coast, identifying the latter with Mantote

With respect to places in the interior of the island Tennent says (vol I, p 536, n 2) "His (Ptolemy's) Maagrammon would appear on a first glance to be Mahâgâm, but as he calls it the metropolis, and places it beside the great river, it is evidently Bintenne, whose ancient name was "Mahâyangana" or "Mahâwelligâm" His Anurogrammum, which he calls  $\betaασιλευον$  "the royal residence," is obviously Anurâdhapura, the city founded by Anurâdha 500 years before Ptolemy (*Mahawânso*, pp 59-65) The province of the Moudouttoi in Ptolemy's list has a close resemblance in name, though not in position, to Mantote, the people of Reyagamkorle still occupy the country assigned by him to the Rhogandanoi—his Nagadiboi are identical with the Nâgadiva of the *Mahawânso*, and the islet to which he has given the name of Bassa, occupies nearly the position of the Basses, which it has been the custom to believe were so-called by the Portuguese,—“Baxos” or “Baixos” “Sunken Rocks” The Rhogandanoi were located in the south-west of the island The sea, which stretched thence towards Malaka, appears to have at one time borne their name, as it was called by the Arab navigators “the sea of Horkand” The group of islands lying before Ceylon is no doubt that of the Maldives

## KLAUDIOS PTOLEMY'S GEOGRAPHY OF CENTRAL ASIA

Having now examined in detail the whole of Ptolemy's Indian Geography, I annex as a suitable Appendix his description of the countries adjacent to India. The reader will thus be presented with his Geography in its entirety of Central and South-Eastern Asia. In the notes I have adverted only to the more salient points.

### BOOK VI, CAP 9

#### POSITION OF HYRKANIA

[*Map of Asia, 7*]

1 Hyrkania is bounded on the north by that part of the Hyrkanian sea which extends from the extreme points of the boundary line with Média as far as the mouth of the river Óxos which lies in                               $100^{\circ} 43' 5'$

2 In which division occur these towns —

Saramannê, a town	$94^{\circ} 15'$	$40^{\circ} 30'$
Mouth of the Maxêra . . . .	$97^{\circ} 20'$	$41^{\circ} 30'$
The sources of this river	$98^{\circ}$	$38^{\circ} 20'$
Mouth of the Sokanda	$97^{\circ} 20'$	$42^{\circ}$
Mouth of the river Óxos	$100^{\circ}$	$43^{\circ} 5'$

3 On the west by the part of Média already mentioned as far as Mount Korônos [in which part of Média is

Saramannê                               $94^{\circ} 15' 40^{\circ} 30'$ ]

4 On the south by Parthia, along the side of it described as passing through the range of Korônos, and on the east by Margianê

through the mountainous region which connects the extremities referred to

5 The maritime ports of Hyrkania are inhabited by the Matêrai, and the Astabênoi and below the Matêrai by the Khrêndoï, after whom comes the country adjacent to the Korônos range, Arsîtis, and below the Astabênoi is the country called Sirakêno

6 The cities in the interior are said to be these —

Barangô .. .	99°	42°
Adrapsa .	98° 30'	41° 30'
Kasapê .	99° 30'	40° 30'
Abarbina .	97°	40° 10'
Sorba . .. .	98°	40° 30'
7 Sinaka	100°	39° 40'
Amarousa . .. ..	96°	39° 55'
Hyrkania, the metropolis.	98° 50'	40°
Sakê (or Salê) .	94° 15'	39° 30'
Asmourna . . . . .	97° 30'	39° 30'
Maisoka (or Mausoka) . . . . .	99°	39° 30'

8 And an island in the sea near it called Talka .. 95° 42°

The name of Hyrkania is preserved to this day in that of Gurkan or Jorjan, a town lying to the east of Asterâbâd Its boundaries have varied at different periods of history Speaking generally, it corresponds with the modern Mazanderan and Asterâbâd Its northern frontier was formed by the Caspian, which was sometimes called after it—the Hyrkanian Sea The river Oros,

which is called by the natives on its banks the Amu-daryâ, and by Persian writers the Jihun, falls now into the Sea of Aral, but as we learn from our author as well as from other ancient writers it was in former times an affluent of the Kaspian, a fact confirmed by modern explorations Mount Korônos was the eastern portion of the lofty mountain chain called the Elburz, which runs along the southern shores of the Kaspian The River Maxêra is mentioned by Pliny (lib VI, c xiv, sec 18) who calls it the Maxeras It has been variously identified, as with the Tejin, the Gurgan, the Atrek and others The metropolis of Hyrkania is called by Ammianus Mercellinus (c xxiii, sec 6) Hyrkana, which is probably the Gurkan already mentioned

#### CAP 10 POSITION OF MARGIANÊ

[*Map of Asia 7*]

Margianê is bounded on the west by Hyrkania, along the side which has been already traced, and on the north by a part of Skythia extending from the mouths of the river Óros as far as the division towards Baktrianê, which lies in  $103^{\circ}$ — $43^{\circ}$ , and on the south by part of Areia along the parallel of latitude running from the boundary towards Hyrkania and Parthia through the Sariphî range, as far as the extreme point lying  $109^{\circ}$ — $39^{\circ}$ , and on the east by Baktrianê along the mountainous region which connects the

and extremities. A considerable stream, the Margor flows through the country, and its source lie in . . . . 105° 39° while it falls into the Oxo in . . . 102° 43° 30'

2 The parts of it towards the river Oxo are powered by the Derbikkai, called also the Derkeboui, and below them the Massan petai, after whom the Parthoi and the Dani below whom occurs the desert of Margiana, and more to the east than are the Tapouroi.

3 The cities of it are—

Ardash . . . . .	103	43
Sina (or Sina) . . . . .	102° 30	42° 20'
Aratha . . . . .	103° 30'	42° 30'
Argidina	101° 20'	41° 40'
Iasonion	103° 30'	41° 30'

4 There unites with the River Margor, another stream flowing from the Sisiphi range of which the source lie 103° 39° Rhæz . . . . . 102° 40° 50' Antioch in Margiana . . . . . 106° 40° 20' Gourians . . . . . 101° 40° Nysia or Nigana . . . . . 105° 39° 10'

"In early periods," says Wilson (*Itinera Antiqua* p. 148), "Margiana seem to have been unknown as a distinct province, and was, no doubt, in part at least, comprised within the limits of Parthia. In the days of the later geographers, it had undergone the very reverse relation, and had, to all appearance, extended its boundaries so as to

include great part of the original Parthia It is evident from Strabo's notice of the latter (lib XI, c. ix) that there was left little of it except the name, and in Ptolemy no part of Parthia appears above the mountains" Strabo says of it (lib XI, c x) "Antiochos Sôtôr admired its fertility, he enclosed a circle of 1,500 stadia with a wall, and founded a city, Antiochêia The soil is well adapted to vines They say that a vine stem has been frequently seen there which would require two men to girth it, and bunches of grapes two cubits in size" Pliny writes somewhat to the same effect He says (lib VI, c xvi) "Next comes Margianê, noted for its sunny skies, it is the only vine-bearing district in all these parts, and it is shut in on all sides by pleasant hills It has a circuit of 1,500 stadia, and is difficult of approach on account of sandy deserts, which extend for 120 miles It lies confronting a tract of country in Parthia, in which Alexander had built Alexandria, a city, which after its destruction by the barbarians, Antiochos, the son of Seleucus, rebuilt on the same site The river Margus which amalgamates with the Zothale, flows through its midst It was named Syriana, but Antiochos preferred to have it called Antiochêia It is 80 stadia in circumference To this place Orodes conducted the Romans who were taken prisoners when Crassus was defeated" This ancient city is represented now by Merv The river Margus is that now called the Murgh-âb or Meru-rûd It rises in the mountains of the Hazâras (which are a spur of the Paropanisos and the Sariphî montes of our author), and loses itself

in the sands about 50 miles north-west of the city, though in ancient times it appears to have poured its waters into the Oxos

The tribes that peopled Hyrkania and Margiana and the other regions that lay to the eastward of the Kaspian were for the most part of Skythian origin, and some of them were nomadic. They are described by the ancient writers as brave and hardy warriors, but of repulsive aspect and manners, and addicted to inhuman practices. Ptolemy names five as belonging to Margiana—the Derbikkai, Massagetai, Parnoi, Daai and Tapouroi.

The Derbikes are mentioned by Strabo (lib XI c xi, sec 7), who gives this account of them “The Derbikes worship the earth. They neither sacrifice nor eat the female of any animal. Persons who attain the age of above 70 years are put to death by them, and their nearest relations eat their flesh. Old women are strangled and then buried. Those who die under 70 years of age are not eaten, but are only buried.”

The Massagetai are referred to afterwards (c xiii, sec 3) as a tribe of nomadic Sakai, belonging to the neighbourhood of the river Askatangkas. They are mentioned by Herodotos (lib I, c cciv) who says that they inhabited a great portion of the vast plain that extended eastward from the Kaspian. He then relates how Cyrus lost his life in a bloody fight against them and their queen Tomyris. Alexander came into collision with their wandering hordes during the campaign of Sogdiana as Arrian relates (*Anab* lib IV, cc xvi, xvii)

As regards the origin of their name it is referred by Beal (*J R A S*, NS, vol XVI, pp 257, 279) to *maiza*—‘greater’ (in Moeso-Gothic) and *Yue-ti* (or *chi*) He thus reverts to the old theory of Rémusat and Klaproth, that the *Yue-ti* were Getae, and this notwithstanding the objection of Saint-Martin stated in *Les Huns Blancs*, p 37, n 1 The old sound of *Yue* he observes was *Get*, correspondent with the Greek form *Getai* In calling attention to the Moeso-Gothic words *maiza* (greater) and *minniza* (less) he suggests that “we have here the origin of the names Massagetae, and the Mins, the Ta *Yue-chi* (great *Yue-chi*) and the Sian *Yue-chi* (little *Yue-chi*)”

The *Parnoi*, according to Strabo, were a branch of the *Dahai* (lib XI, c vii sec 1) called by Herodotos (lib I, c lii) the *Dāoi*, and by our author and Stephanos of Byzantium the *Dāai* Strabo (lib XI, c viii, 2) says of them “Most of the Skythians beginning from the Kaspian Sea, are called *Dahai Skythai*, and those situated more towards the east, *Massagetai* and *Sakai*, the rest have the common appellation of *Skythians*, but each separate tribe has its peculiar name All, or the greater part of them, are nomadic” Virgil (*Aen.* lib VIII, l 728) applies to the *Dahae* the epithet *indomiti* It is all but certain that they have left traces of their name in the province of *Dahestān*, adjoining to *Asterābād*, as this position was within the limits of their migratory range In the name *Dāae*, *Dahae* or *Ta-hia* (the Chinese form) it is commonly inferred that we have the term *Tajik*, that is Persian, for there is good reason to place Persians even in Trans

oxiana long before the barbarous tribes of the Kaspian plains were heard of (see Wilson's *Arian Antiq.*, p 141)

The Tapouroi appear to be the same as the Tapyroi mentioned by Strabo as occupying the country between the Hyrkanoi and the Areioi. Their position, however, varied at various times

Nisaia or Nigaria (the Nesaia of Strabo) has been identified by Wilson (*Arian Antiq.*, pp 142, 148) with the modern Nissa, a small town or village on the north of the Elburz mountains, between Asterabid and Meshd

## CAP II

### POSITION OF BAKTRIANĒ

1 Baktrianē is bounded on the west by Margianē along the side already described, on the north and east by Sogdianē, along the rest of the course of the River Oxos, and on the south by the rest of Aria, extending from the extreme point towards Margianē—

the position of which is                    $109^{\circ}$             $39^{\circ}$

and by the Paropanisadas along the parallel thence prolonged, through where the range of Paropanisos diverges towards the sources of the Oxos which lie in                    $119^{\circ} 30'$     $39^{\circ}$

2 The following rivers which fall into the Oxos flow through Baktrianē —

The river Ókhos, whose  
sources lie ..                    $110^{\circ}$             $39^{\circ}$

- and the Dargamanēs, whose  
 sources lie .. . . . .       $116^{\circ} 30'$        $36^{\circ} 20'$   
 and the Zariaspis, whose  
 sources lie . . . . .       $113^{\circ}$        $39^{\circ}$   
 and the Artamis, whose  
 sources lie . . . . .       $114^{\circ}$        $39^{\circ}$   
 and the Dargoidos, whose  
 sources lie . . . . .       $116^{\circ}$        $39^{\circ}$   
 and the point where this  
 joins the Oxos lies in . . . . .       $117^{\circ} 30'$        $44^{\circ}$
- 3 Of the other tributaries the Artamis and  
 the Zariaspis unite in . . . . .       $113^{\circ}$        $40^{\circ} 40'$   
 before falling into the Oxos  
 in . . . . .       $112^{\circ} 30'$        $44^{\circ}$
- 4 The Dargamanēs and the Okhos also  
 unite in . . . . .       $109^{\circ}$        $40^{\circ} 30'$   
 before falling into the Oxos  
 in . . . . .       $109^{\circ}$        $44^{\circ}$
- 5 Of the Paropanisos range, the western  
 part is situated in . . . . .       $111^{\circ} 30'$        $39^{\circ}$   
 and [the Eastern] in       $119^{\circ} 30'$        $39^{\circ}$
- 6 The parts of Baktrianē in the north  
 and towards the River Oxos are inhabited by  
 the Salaterai and the Zariaspaï, and to  
 the south of these up towards the Salaterai the  
 Khomaroï, and below these the Kōmōi,  
 then the Akinakai, then the Tambyzoi,  
 and below the Zariaspaï the Tokharoi, a  
 great people, and below them the Marykaioi,  
 and the Skordai, and the Ouarnoi

(Varnoi), and still below those the Sabsdioi and the Oreistoi and the Amareis.

7 The towns of Baktrianē towards the river Oxos are the following:—

Kharakharta . . . . .	111°	44°
Zan(a)spa or Kharispa . . . . .	115°	44°
Khozni . . . . .	117°	42°
Souregana . . . . .	117° 30'	40° 30'
Phratou . . . . .	119°	39° 20'

8 And near the other rivers these:—

Alikhorda ... . . . . .	107°	45° 30'
Khomara . . . . .	105° 30'	45° 30'
Kourisandra . . . . .	109° 30'	42° 10'
Kauans . . . . .	111° 20'	43°
Astabana . . . . .	112°	42° 20'
Ebousmeuanassa or Tsemou- anassa . . . . .	108° 30'	41° 20'
Menapia . . . . .	113°	41° 20'
Eukratidua . . . . .	115°	42°

9 Baktra, the king's re- sidence (Ba'bkh) . . . . .	116°	41°
Estobara . . . . .	107° 30'	45° 20'
Marakanas (Samarkard) . . . . .	112°	39° 15'
Marakodra . . . . .	115° 20'	39° 20'

The boundaries of Baktra or Baktriana varied at different periods of history, and were never perhaps at any time fixed with much precision. According to Strabo it was the principal part of Ariana and was separated from Sogdiana on the east and north-east by the Oxos from Aria on the south by the chain of Paropanisops, and on

the west from Margiana by a desert region. A description of Baktriana, which Burnes, in his work on Bokhara, corroborates as very accurate, is given by Curtius (lib VII, c iv) and is to this effect "The nature of the Baktrian territory is varied, and presents striking contrasts. In one place it is well-wooded, and bears vines which yield grapes of great size and sweetness. The soil is rich and well-watered—and where such a genial soil is found corn is grown, while lands with an inferior soil are used for the pasturage of cattle. To this fertile tract succeeds another much more extensive, which is nothing but a wild waste of sand parched with drought, alike without inhabitant and without herbage. The winds, moreover, which blow hither from the Pontic Sea, sweep before them the sand that covers the plain, and this, when it gathers into heaps, looks, when seen from a distance, like a collection of great hills whereby all traces of the road that formerly existed are completely obliterated. Those, therefore, who cross these plains, watch the stars by night as sailors do at sea, and direct their course by their guidance. In fact they almost see better under the shadow of night than in the glare of sunshine. They are, consequently, unable to find their way in the day-time, since there is no track visible which they can follow, for the brightness of the luminaries above is shrouded in darkness. Should now the wind which rises from the sea overtake them, the sands with which it is laden would completely overwhelm them. Nevertheless in all the more favoured localities the number of men and of horses that are

there generated is exceedingly great Baktra itself, the capital city of that region, is situated under mount Paropanisos The river Bactrus passes by its walls and gave the city and the region their name" This description is in agreement with the general character of the country from Balkh to Bokhara, in which oases of the most productive soil alternate with wastes of sand

Baktra figures very early in history Its capital indeed, Baktra (now Balkh) is one of the oldest cities in the world The Bactrian Walls is one of the places which Euripides (*Balkhai*, l 15) represents Dionysos to have visited in the course of his eastern peregrinations Ninus, as we learn through Ktēsias, marched into Baktriana with a vast army and, with the assistance of Semiramis, took its capital In the time of Darius it was a satrapy of the Persian empire and paid a tribute of 360 talents Alexander the Great, when marching in pursuit of Bessus, passed through Baktria and, crossing the Oxos, proceeded as far as Marakanda (Samarkand) Having subjugated the regions lying in that direction, he returned to Baktra and there spent the winter before starting to invade India Some years after the conqueror's death Seleukos reduced Baktria, and annexed it to his other dominions It was wrested, however, from the hands of the third prince of his line about the year 256 B C or perhaps later, by Antiokhos Theos or Theodotos, who made Baktria an independent kingdom His successors were ambitious and enterprising, and appear to have extended their authority along the downward course of the

Indus even to the ocean, and southward along the coast as far as the mouth of the Narmada. The names of these kings have been recovered from their coins found in great numbers both in India and in Afghanistan. This Graeco-Bactrian empire, after having subsisted for about two centuries and a half, was finally overthrown by the invasion of different hordes of the Sakai, named, as Strabo informs us, the Asioi, Pasianoi, Tokharoi and Sakarauloi.<sup>36</sup> These Sakai yielded in their turn to barbarians of their own kindred or at least of their own type, the Skythians, who gave their name to the Indus valley and the regions adjoining the Gulf of Khambhāt. Among the most notable Indo-Skythian kings were Kadphises and Kanorkes who reigned at the end of the first and the beginning of the second century of our era and, therefore, not very long before the time of Ptolemy. Between the Indo-Skythian and Muhammadan periods was interposed the predominance of Persia in the regions of which we have been speaking.

Ptolemy mentions five rivers which fall into the Oxos—the Okhos, Dargamancis, Zariaspis, Artamis, and Dargoidos, of which the Zariaspis and Artamis unite before reaching the Oxos. Ptolemy's account cannot be reconciled with the existing hydrography of the country. The Dargamancis is called by Ammianus (lib. XXIII, c. vi) the Orga-

<sup>36</sup> The Wu sun (of Chinese history) are apparently to be identified with the Asii or Asiani, who, according to Strabo occupied the upper waters of the Iaxartes, and who are classed as nomades with the Tokhāri and Sakarauli (? Sara Knuli, &c., Sarikulic)—Kingsmill, in J R A S., N S., vol. XIV, p. 79.

menes The Artamis, Wilson thinks, may be the river now called the Dakash (*Ariana Antiqua*, p 162) and the Dargamanēs, the present river of Ghori or Kunduz which is a tributary of the Ōkhos and not of the Ōxos as in Ptolemy. The Ōkhos itself has not been identified with certainty. According to Kinneir it is the Tezen or Tejend which, rising in Sarâkhs, and receiving many confluent streams, falls into the Kaspian in N L  $38^{\circ} 41'$ . According to Elphinstone it is the river of Herat, either now lost in the sand or going to the Ōxos (*Ariana Antiqua*, p 146). Bunbury (vol II, p 284) points out that in Strabo the Ōkhos is an independent river, emptying into the Kaspian. The Ōkhos of Artemidoros, he says, may be certainly identified with the Attrek, whose course, till lately, was very imperfectly known.

Ptolemy gives a list of thirteen tribes which inhabited Baktranē. Their names are obscure, and are scarcely mentioned elsewhere.<sup>37</sup>

In the list of towns few known names occur. The most notable are Baktra, Marakanda, Eukratidia, and Zariaspa. Baktra, as has been already stated, is the modern Balkh. Heeren (*Asiatic Nations*, 2nd edit., vol I, p 424), writes of it in these terms: "The city of Baktra must be regarded as the commercial entrepôt of Eastern Asia; its name belongs to a people who never cease to afford

<sup>37</sup> Prof. Seal (*J R A S*, N S, Vol XVI, p 253), connects the name of the Tokharoi with Tu-ho lo the name of a country or kingdom Tukhārā, frequently mentioned by Hiuen Tsang. The middle symbol 'ho', he says, represents the rough aspirate, and we should thus get Tahra or Tuxra, from which would come the Greek Tokharoi.

matter for historical details, from the time they are first mentioned Not only does Baktra constantly appear as a city of wealth and importance in every age of the Persian empire, but it is continually interwoven in the traditions of the East with the accounts of Semiramis and other conquerors It stood on the borders of the gold country, 'in the road of the confluence of nations,' according to an expression of the *Zenda-vesta*, and the conjecture that in this part of the world the human race made its first advance in civilisation, seems highly probable" The name of Balkh is from the Sanskrit name of the people of Baktra, the Bahlikas Marakanda is Samarkand It was the capital of Sogdiana, but Ptolemy places it in Baktrianê, and considerably to the south of Baktra, although its actual latitude is almost 3 degrees to the north It was one of the cities of Sogdiana which Alexander destroyed Its circumference was estimated at 64 stadia, or about 7 miles The name has been interpreted to mean "warlike province" Eukratidia received its name from the Gracko-Baktrian king, Eukratidês, by whom it was founded Its site cannot be identified Pliny makes Zarriasp a the same as Baktra, but this must be a mistake No satisfactory site has been as yet assigned to it

## CAP 12

## POSITION OF THE SOGDIANOI

The Sogdianoi are bounded on the west by that part of Skythia which extends from the section of the Oxos which is towards Baktrianê and Margianê through the Oxian mountains

as far as the section of the river Iaxartes, which lies in  $110^{\circ}$  E  $49^{\circ}$  N, on the north likewise by a part of Skythia along the section of the Iaxartes extended thence as far as the limit where its course bends, which lies in  $120^{\circ}$  E  $48^{\circ} 30'$  N On the east by the Sakai along the (bending) of the Iaxartes as far as the sources of the bending which lie in  $125^{\circ}$  E  $43^{\circ}$  N, and by the line prolonged from the Sakai to an extreme point which lies in  $125^{\circ}$  E  $38^{\circ} 30'$  N, and on the east and the south and again on the west by Baktrianē along the section of the Oxos already mentioned and by the Kaukasian mountains especially so called, and the adjoining line and the limits as stated, and the sources of the Oxos

2 The mountains called the Sogdian extend between the two rivers, and have their extremities lying in  $111^{\circ} 47'$   
and .  $122^{\circ} 46^{\circ} 30'$

3 From these mountains a good many nameless rivers flow in contrary directions to meet these two rivers, and of these nameless rivers one forms the Oxian Lake, the middle of which lies in  $111^{\circ}$  E  $45^{\circ}$  N, and other two streams descend from the same hilly regions as the Iaxartes—the regions in question are called the Highlands of the Komidai Each of these streams falls into the Iaxartes, one of them is called Demos and

its sources lie in  $124^{\circ}$   $43^{\circ}$

Its junction with the river Iaxartes occurs in . . .	123°	47°
The other is the Baskatis whose sources lie in . . .	123°	43°
Its junction with the river Iaxartes occurs in . . .	121°	47° 30'

4 The country towards the Oxian mountains is possessed by the Paskai, and the parts towards the most northern section of the Iaxartes by the Iatios, and the Tokharoi, below whom are the Augaloi, then along the Sogdian mountains the Oxydrângkai and the Drybakta, and the Kandaroi, and below the mountains the Mardyénoi, and along the Oxos the Oxianoi and the Khôrasmioi, and farther east than these the Drepseiauoi, and adjoining both the rivers, and still further east than the above the Anieseis along the Iaxartes, and the Kirrhâdaï (or Kirrhodeis) along the Oxos, and between the Kaukasos Range and Imao<sup>5</sup> the country called Ouanda banda

5 Towns of the Sogdianoi in the high lands along the Iaxartes are these —

Kyreskhata . . .	124°	43° 40'
Along the Oxos —		
Oxeiana ... ..	117° 30'	44° 20'
Marouka ..	117° 15'	43° 40'
Kholbêsimâ	121°	43°

6 Between the rivers and higher up—

Trybaktra . . . . .	112° 15'	
Alexandria Oxianô . . . .	113°	44° 20'
Indikomordana.	115°	44° 20'
Drepa (or Rhepsa) the Metropolis	120°	45°
Alexandria Eskhatê (i.e. Ultima) . . . .	122°	41°

Sogdiana was divided from Baktriana by the river Oxos and extended northward from thence to the river Taxartes. The Sakai lay along the eastern frontier and Skythic tribes along the western. The name exists to this day, being preserved in Soghd which designates the country lying along the river Kohik from Bokhara eastward to Samarkand. The records of Alexander's expedition give much information regarding this country, for the Makedonian troops were engaged for the better part of three years in effecting its subjugation.

In connexion with Sogdiana, Ptolemy mentions four mountain ranges—the Kaukasan, the Sogdian, the mountain district of the Kômêdaî, and Imaos. Kaukasos was the general name applied by the Makedonians to the great chain which extended along the northern frontiers of Afghanistan, and which was regarded as a prolongation of the real Kaukasos. Ptolemy uses it here in a specific sense to designate that part of the chain which formed the eastern continuation of the Paropamisos towards Imaos. Imaos is the meridian chain which intersects the Kaukasos, and is now called Bolor Tâgh. Ptolemy places it about 8 degrees too far eastward. The

Sogdian Mountains, placed by Ptolemy between the Iaxartes and Oxos, towards their sources, are the Thian Shan. The Kōmčdai, who gave their name to the third range, were, according to Ptolemy, the inhabitants of the hill-country which lay to the east of Baktriana and up whose valley lay the route of the caravans from Baktra, bound for Sērika across Imaus or the Thsung-lung. Cunningham has identified them with the Kiu-mi-tho (Kumidha) of Huen Tsiang. Their mountain district is that called Muz-tâgh.

The rivers mentioned in connexion with Sogdiana are the Oxos, and the Iaxartes, with its two tributaries, the Baskatis and the Dēmos. The Oxos takes its rise in the Pamir<sup>38</sup> Lake, called the Sari-Kul (or Yellow Lake), at a distance of fully 300 miles to the south of the Iaxartes. It is fed on its north bank by many smaller streams which run due south from the Pamir uplands, breaking the SW face of that region into a series of valleys, which, though rugged, are of exuberant fertility. Its course then lies for

<sup>38</sup> The Pamir plateau between Badakshan and Yarkand connects several chains of mountains, viz. the Hindu Kush in the SW the Kuen luen in the E, the Karar Korum in the Bolor the Thian shān chain in the north, which runs from Tirk Dawan and Ming yol to the Western Farghana Pass. This plateau is called *Bdm-i-dunyā* or *Roof of the World*. With regard to the name Pamir Sir H Rawlinson says "My own conjecture is that the name of Pamir, or Fāmir, as it is always written by the Arabs, is derived from the Fani (*φανοί*), who, according to Strabo bounded the Greek kingdom of Baktria to the E (XI 14) and whose name is also preserved in Fān tāū, the Fan Lake, &c. Fāmir for Fān mir would then be a compound like Kashmir, Aj mir, Jessel mir, &c. signifying 'the lake country of the Fā ni'" (J R G S XLII p 489, n.)

hundreds of miles through arid and saline steppes till before reaching the sea of Aral it is dissipated into a network of canals, both natural and artificial. Its delta, which would otherwise have remained a desert, has thus been converted into a fruitful garden, capable of supporting a teeming population, and it was one of the very earliest seats of civilization<sup>39</sup>. The deflexion of the waters of the Oxos into the Aral, as Sir H. Rawlinson points out, has been caused in modern times not by any upheaval of the surface of the Turkoman desert, but by the simple accidents of fluvial action in an alluvial soil. The name of the river is in Sanskrit *Vakshu*, Mongolian *Bakshu*, Tibetan *Pakshu*, Chinese *Po-thsu*, Arabic and Persian *Vakhsh-an* or *âb*—from Persian *vah*=‘pure,’ or Sanskrit *Vah*=‘to flow.’ The region embracing the head-waters of the Oxos appears to have been the scene of the primæval Aryan Paradise. The four rivers thereof, as named by the Brahmins, were the Sita, the Alakananda, the Vakshu, and the Bhadro =respectively, according to Wilson to the Hoang-ho, the Ganges, the Oxos, and the Oby. According to the Buddhists the rivers were the Ganges, the Indus, the Oxos, and the Sita, all of which they derived from a great central lake in the plateau of Pamir, called *A-neou-ta=Kara-kul* or *Sarik-kul* Lake.

The Iaxartes is now called the Syr-darya or

<sup>39</sup> “Abu Rasan says that the Solar Calendar of Khiva rasm was the most perfect scheme for the use in view of time with which he was acquainted also that the Khwarazmians dated originally from an epoch anterior by 950 years to the era of the Seleucidae=175 B.C.” (See Quarterly Review, No. 240, Art on Central Asia)

Yellow River The ancients sometimes called it the Araxes, but, according to D'Anville, this is but an appellative common to it with the Amu or Oxos, the Armenian Aras and the Rha or Volga The name Iaxartes was not properly a Greek word but was borrowed from the barbarians by whom, as Arrian states (*Anab lib III c xxx*), it was called the Orxantes It was probably derived from the Sanskrit root *lshar*, "to flow" with a semitic feminine ending, and this etymology would explain the modern form of *Sirr* See *J R G S XLII* p. 492, n The Iaxartes rises in the high plateau south of Lake Issyk-kul in the Thian Shan Its course is first to westward through the valley of Khokan, where it receives numerous tributaries It then bifurcates the more northern branch retaining the name of Syr-darya This flows towards the north-west, and after a course of 1150 miles from its source enters the Sea of Aral Ptolemy however, like all the other classical writers, makes it enter the Kaspian sea Humboldt accounts for this apparent error by adducing facts which go to show that the tract between the Aral and the Kaspian was once the bed of an united and continuous sea, and that the Kaspian of the present day is the small residue of a once mighty Aralo-Kaspian Sea Ammianus Marcellinus (*lib XXIII, c vi*), describing Central Asia in the upper course of the Iaxartes which falls into the Kaspian, speaks of two rivers, the Araxates and Dymas (probably the Dêmos of Ptolemy) which, rushing impetuously down from the mountains and passing into a level plain, form therein what is called the Oxian lake, which is spread over a vast area This is the

earliest intimation of the Sea of Aral (See Smith's *Dic<sup>t</sup> of Anc Geog* s v) Bunbury, however, says (vol II, pp 641-2) "Nothing but the unwillingness of modern writers to admit that the ancients were unacquainted with so important a feature in the geography of Central Asia as the Sea of Aral could have led them to suppose it represented by the Oxiana Palus of Ptolemy. While that author distinctly describes both the Jaxartes and the Oxus as flowing into the Caspian Sea, he speaks of a range of mountains called the Sogdian Mountains, which extend between the two rivers, from which flow several nameless streams into those two, one of which forms the Oymn lake. This statement exactly tallies with the fact that the Polytunetos or river of Soghd, which rises in the mountains in question, does not flow into the Oxus, but forms a small stagnant lake called Kara-kul or Denghiz, and there seems no doubt this was the lake meant by Ptolemy. It is true that Ammianus Marcellinus, in his description of these regions, which is very vague and inaccurate, but is based for the most part upon Ptolemy, terms it a large and widespread lake, but this is probably nothing more than a rhetorical flourish." The Iazartes was regarded as the boundary towards the east of the Persian Empire,

Kirrhadaı (or Kirrhodeeis) the Kirâta The name of the Khorasmioı has been preserved to the present day in that of Khwârazm, one of the designations of the Khanate of Khiva The position of the Khorasmioı may be therefore assigned to the regions south of the Sea of Aral, which is sometimes called after them the Sea of Khwârazm The Drepsonianoi had their seats on the borders of Baktria, as Drepса, one of their cities and the capital of the country, may be identified with Andarâb, which was a Baktrian town It is called by Strabo Adrapsa and Darapsa—(lib XI, c xi, 2, and lib XV, c ii, 10) and Drapsaka by Arrian—(*Anab* lib III, c 39) Bunbury (vol I, p 427, n 3) remarks “The Drepса of Ptolemy, though doubtless the same name, cannot be the same place (as the Drapsaka of Arrian *Anab* lib III, c xxix) as that author places it in Sogdiana, considerably to the north of Marakanda” Ptolemy, however, as I have already pointed out, places Marakanda to the south of Baktra Kingsmill (*J R A S*, N S, vol XIV, p 82) identifies Darapsa with the Lam-shi-ch'eng of the Chinese historians It was the capital of their Ta-hia (Tokhâra—Baktria) which was situated about 2000 li south-west of Ta-wan (Yarkand) to the south of the Kwai-shui (Öxos) The original form of the name was probably he says, Darampsa In Ta-wan he finds the Phrynoı of Strabo The region between Kaukasos and Imaōs, Ptolemy calls Vandabanda, a name of which, as Wilson conjectures, traces are to be found in the name of Badakshân

With regard to the towns Mr Vaux remarks,



line parallel to the river Iaxartes as far as the limit of *the country* which lies in  $130^{\circ}$  E  $49^{\circ}$  N on the east in like manner by Skythia along the meridian lines prolonged from thence and through the adjacent range of mountains called Askatangkas as far as the station at Mount Imaōs, whence traders start on their journey to Sēra which lies in  $140^{\circ}$  E  $43^{\circ}$  N, and through Mount Imaos as it ascends to the north as far as the limit of *the country* which lies in  $143^{\circ}$  E  $35^{\circ}$  N and on the south by Imaōs itself along the line adjoining the limits that have been stated

2 The country of the Sakai is inhabited by nomads They have no towns, but dwell in woods and caves Among the Sakai is the mountain district, already mentioned, of the Kômêdai, of which the ascent from the Sogdianoi lies in . . .  $125^{\circ}$   $43^{\circ}$

And the parts towards the val-

ley of the Kômêdai lie in  $130^{\circ}$   $39^{\circ}$   
And the so-called Stone Tower  
lies in ..  $135^{\circ}$   $43^{\circ}$

3 The tribes of the Sakai, along the Iaxartes, are the Karatai and the Komaroi, and the people who have all the mountain region are the Kômêdai, and the people along the range of Askatangka the Massagetai, and the people between are the Grynaioi Skythai and the Toornai, below whom, along Mount Imaōs, are the Byltai

In the name of the mountain range on the east of the Sakai, Aska-tangk-as, the middle syllable represents the Turkish word 'high-mountain'. The tribe of the Karatai which was seated along the banks of the Iazarter, bears a name of common application, chiefly to menlier

2 The bend of the River Rhâ which marks the boundary of Sarmatia and

Skythia . . . . . 85° 54°

with the mouth of the river

Rhâ which lies in . . . 87° 30' 48° 50'

Mouth of the river Rhym-

mos . . . . . 91° 48° 45'

Mouth of the river Daïx .. 94° 48° 45'

Mouth of the river Iaxartes . 97° 48°

Mouth of the river Iästos . . . 100° 47° 20'

Mouth of the river Polyti-

mëtos . . . . . 103° 45° 30'

Aspabôta, a town . . . . . 102° 44°

after which comes the mouth of the Oxos

3 The mountains of Skythia within Imaüs are the more eastern parts of the Hyperborean hills and the mountains called

Alana, whose extremities

lie . . . . . . . . . 105° 59°

and . . . . . . . . . 118° 59° 30'

4 And the Rymnik mountains whose extremities lie . . . . . . . . . 90° 54°

and . . . . . . . . . 99° 47° 30'

from which flow the Rymmos and some other streams that discharge into the River Rhâ, uniting with the Daïx river

5 And the Norosson range, of which the extremities lie . . . . . . . . . 97° 53° 30'

and . . . . . . . . . 106° 52° 30'

and from this range flow the Daïx and some other tributaries of the Iaxartes

6 And the range of mountains called Aspisin whose extremities lie 111° 55° 30'  
and . . . . 117° 52° 30'  
and from these some streams flow into the River Iaxartes

7 And the mountains called Tapoura whose extremities lie . . 120° 56°  
and . . . . 125° 49°  
from which also some streams flow into the Iaxartes

8 In addition to these in the depth of the region of the streams are the Syēba mountains whose extremities lie 121° 58°  
and . . . . 132° 62°  
and the mountains called the Anarea whose extremities lie . . 130° 56°  
and . . . . 137° 50°  
after which is the bend in the direction of Imaōs continuing it towards the north

9 All the territory of this Skythia in the north, adjoining the unknown regions, is inhabited by the people commonly called the Alanoi Skythai and the Souobēnoi and the Alanorsoi, and the country below these by the Saitianoi and the Massainoi and the Syēboi, and along Imaōs on the outer side the Tektosikes, and near the most eastern sources of the river Rha the Rhoboskoi below whom the Asmanoi

10 Then the Panirdoi, below whom, more towards the river, the country of Kanō-

dipsa, and below it the Koraxoi, then the Orgasoi, after whom as far as the sea the Erymmoni, to east of whom are the Asiōtai, then the Aorsoi, after whom are the Iaxartai, a great race seated along their homonymous river as far as to where it bends towards the Tapoura Mountains, and again below the Saitanoi are the Mologēnoi, below whom, as far as the Rymmik range, are the Samnitai

11 And below the Massaioi and the Alana Mountains are the Zaratai and the Sasones, and further east than the Rymmik Mountains are the Tybiakai, after whom, below the Zaratai, are the Tabiēnoi and the Iāstai and the Makhaitegoi along the range of Norosson, after whom are the Norosbeis and the Norossoi, and below these the Kakhangai Skythai along *the country of the Iaxartai*

12 Further west than the Aspisia range are the Aspisiōi Skythai, and further east the Galaktophagoi Skythai, and in like manner the parts farther east than the Tapoura and Syēba ranges are inhabited by the Tapoureoi

13 The slopes and summits of the Anarea Mountains and Mount Askatangkas are inhabited by the homonymous Anareoi Skythai below the Alanorsoi, and the Askatangkai

Skythai further east than the Tapoureoi, and as far as Mount Imaōs

14 But the parts between the Tapoura Mountains and the slope towards the mouth of the Iaxartes and the seacoast between the two rivers are possessed by the Ariakai, along the Iaxartes and below these the Namostai, then the Sagaraukai, and along the river Óxos the Rhibioi, who have a town

Dauaba   104° 45°

The country of the Skyths is spread over a vast area in the east of Europe and in Western and Central Asia. The knowledge of the Skyths by the Greeks dates from the earliest period of their literature, for in Homer (*Iliad*, lib XIII, 14) we find mention made of the Galaktophagoi (milk-eaters) and the Hippemologoi (mare-milkers) which must have been Skythic tribes, since the milking of mares is a practice distinctive of the Skyths. Ptolemy's division of Skythia into within and beyond Imaōs is peculiar to himself, and may have been suggested by his division of India into within and beyond the Ganges. Imaōs, as has already been pointed out is the Bolor chain, which has been for ages the boundary between Turkistān and China. Ptolemy, however, placed Imaōs too far to the east, 8° further than the meridian of the principal source of the Ganges. The cause of this mistake, as a writer in Smith's *Dictionary* points out, arose from the circumstance that the data upon which Ptolemy came to his conclusion were selected from two different sources. The Greeks first became acquainted with the

Kômêdorum Montes; when they passed the Indian Kaukasos between Kâbul and Balkh, and advanced over the plateau of Bâmiyân along the west slopes of Bolor, where Alexander found in the tribe of the Sibae the descendants of Héraklês, just as Marco Polo and Burnes met with people who boasted that they had sprung from the Macedonian conquerors. The north of Bolor was known from the route of the traffic of the Séres. The combination of notations obtained from such different sources was imperfectly made, and hence the error in longitude. This section of Skythia comprised Khiva, the country of the Kosaks, Ferghâna, Tashkend, and the parts about the Balkash.

The rivers mentioned in connexion with Skythia within Imaôs are the Ôxos, Iaxartes, Rhâ, Rhymmos, Daïx, Iästos and Polytimêtos. The Rhâ is the Volga, which is sometimes called the Rhau by the Russians who live in its neighbourhood. Ptolemy appears to be the first Greek writer who mentions it. The Rhymmos is a small stream between the Rhâ and the Ural river called the Narynchara. The Daïx is the Isik or Ural river. The Iästos was identified by Humboldt with the Kizil-darya, which disappeared in the course of last century, but the dry bed of which can be traced in the barren wastes of Kizil-koum in W Turkestân. With regard to the Polytimêtos, Wilson says (*Arian Antiq* p 168) "There can be no hesitation in recognizing the identity of the Polytumêtos and the Zarafshân, or river of Samarkand, called also the Kohuk, or more correctly the river of the Kohak, being so termed from its passing by

a rising ground, a Koh ak a 'little hill' or 'hillock,' which lies to the east of the city According to Strabo, this river traversed Sogdiana and was lost in the sands Curtius describes it as entering a cavern and continuing its course underground The river actually terminates in a small lake to the south of Bokhara, the Dangiz, but in the dry weather the supply of water is too scanty to force its way to the lake, and it is dispersed and evaporated in the sands What the original appellation may have been does not appear, but the denominations given by the Greeks and Persians 'the much-honoured' or 'the gold-shedding' stream convey the same idea, and intimate the benefits it confers upon the region which it waters" Ptolemy is wide astray in making it enter the Kaspian

The mountains enumerated are the Alana, Rhymmika, Norosson, Aspisia, Tapoura, Syêba, and Anarea By the Alana Mountains, which lay to the east of the Hyperboreans, it has been supposed that Ptolemy designated the northern part of the Ural Chain If so, he has erroneously given their direction as from west to east The Rhymmik mountains were probably another branch of that great meridian chain which consists of several ranges which run nearly parallel The Norosson may be taken as Ptolemy's designation for the southern portion of this chain The Aspisia and Tapoura mountains lay to the north of the Iaxartes The latter, which are placed three degrees further east than the Aspisia, may be the western part of the Altai The Syêba stretched still farther eastward with an inclina

tion northward To the southward of them were the Anarea, which may be placed near the sources of the Obı and the Irtish, forming one of the western branches of the Altai Ptolemy erroneously prolongs the chain of Imaōs to these high latitudes

Ptolemy has named no fewer than 38 tribes belonging to this division of Skythia Of these the best known are the Alanı, who belonged also to Europe, where they occupied a great portion of Southern Russia At the time when Arrian the historian was Governor of Kappadokia under Hadrian, the Asiatic Alanı attacked his province, but were repelled He subsequently wrote a work on the tactics to be observed against the Alanı (*εκταξις κατ' Αλανῶν*) of which some fragments remain The seats of the Alanı were in the north of Skythia and adjacent to the *unknown land*, which may be taken to mean the regions stretching northward beyond Lake Balkash The position of the different tribes is fixed with sufficient clearness in the text These tribes were essentially nomadic pastoral and migratory—hence in Ptolemy's description of their country towns are singularly conspicuous by their absence

### CAP 15

#### THE POSITION OF SKYTHIA BEYOND IMAOS

[*Map of Asia, 8*]

I Skythia beyond Mount Imaos is bounded on the west by Skythia within Imaos, and the Sakai along the whole curvature of the

mountains towards the north, and on the north by the unknown land, and on the east by Serikê in a straight line whereof the extremities

and  $\alpha = \beta = \gamma = 160^\circ$ ,  $35^\circ$

and on the south by a part of India beyond the Ganges along the parallel of latitude which cuts the southern extremity of the line just mentioned

2 In this division is situated the western part of the Auxakian Mountains, of which the extremities lie  $149^{\circ} 49^{\circ}$

and  $165^\circ$   $54^\circ$

and the western part of the mountains

called Kasia, whose extremities lie in  $152^{\circ} 41'$

and . . .

and also the western portion of Emôdos,

whose extremities lie in .  $153^{\circ} 36^{\circ}$

and . . .

and towards the Auxakians, the source

of the River Oikhardēs lying in  $153^{\circ} 51'$

3 The northern parts of this Skythia are possessed by the Abioi Skythai, and the parts below them by the Hippophagoi Skythai, after whom the territory of Auxakitis extends onward, and below this again, at the starting place already mentioned, the Kasian land, below which are the Khatai Skythai, and then succeeds the Akhasa land, and below it along the Emôda the Kharauaioi Skythai.

4	The towns in this division are these -
Auxakia . . . . .	143° 49° 40'
Issêdôñ Skythikô . . . . .	150° 49° 30'
Khaurana . . . . .	150° 37° 15'
Soita . . . . .	145° 35° 20'

Skythia beyond Imaos embraced Ladakh, Tibet, Chinese Tartary and Mongolia Its mountains were the Auxakian and Kasian chains, both of which extended into Sérîkê, and Emôdos The Auxakians may have formed a part of the Altai, and the Kasians, which Ptolemy places five degrees further south, are certainly the mountains of Kashgar The Emôdos are the Himalayas

The only river named in this division is the Oikhardêş, which has its sources in three different ranges, the Auxakian, the Asmiraeon and the Kasian According to a writer in Smith's *Dictionary* the Oikhardêş "may be considered to represent the river formed by the union of the streams of Khotan, Yarkand, Kashgar and Ushi, and which flows close to the hills at the base of the Thian-shan" Saint-Martin again inclines to think Chardêş may be a designation of the Indus, while still flowing northward from its sources among the Himalayas "Skardo," he says, (*Étude*, p 420) "the capital of the Balti, bears to the name of the Oikhardêş (Chardi in Amm Marc 2) a resemblance with which one is struck If the identification is well founded, the river Oichardêş will be the portion of the Indus which traverses Balti and washes the walls of Skardo"

In the north of the division Ptolemy places the Abioi Skythai Homer, along with the Galak-

tophagor and Hippēmolgoi, mentions the Abior. Some think that the term in the passage designates a distinct tribe of Skythians, but others take it to be a common adjective, characterizing the Skythians in general as very scantily supplied with the means of subsistence. On the latter supposition the general term must in the course of time have become a specific appellation. Of the four towns which Ptolemy assigns to the division, one bears a well known name, Issêdôn, which he calls Skythikê, distinguishing it from Issêdôn in Serikê. The name of the Issêdônes occurs very early in Greek literature, as they are referred to by the Spartan poet Alkman, who flourished between 671 and 631 BC. He calls them Assedones (*Frag* 94, ed Weleker). They are mentioned also by Hekataios of Miletos. In very remote times they were driven from the steppes over which they wandered by the Arimaspians. They then drove out the Skythians, who in turn drove out the Kimmerians. Traces of these migrations are found in the poem of Aristaeas of Prokonnebos, who is fabled to have made a pilgrimage to the land of the Issêdônes. Their position has been assigned to the east of Ichin, in the steppe of the central hordes of the Kirghiz, and that of the Arimaspi on the northern declivity of the Altai (Smith's *Dict* s. v.) This position is not in accordance with Ptolemy's indications. Herodotos, while rejecting the story of the Arimaspians and the griffins that guarded their gold, admits at the same time that by far the greatest quantity of gold came from the north of Europe, in which he included the tracts along the Ural, and Altai.

ranges The abundance of gold among the Skythians on the Euxine is attested by the contents of their tombs, which have been opened in modern times (See Bunbury, vol I, p 200 )

Regarding Ptolemy's Skythian geography, Bunbury says (vol II, p 597) "It must be admitted that Ptolemy's knowledge of the regions on either side of the Imaōs was of the vaguest possible character. Eastward of the Rhâ (Volga), which he regarded as the limit between Asiatic Sarmatia and Skythia, and north of the Iaxartes, which he describes like all previous writers as falling into the Kaspian—he had, properly speaking, no geographical knowledge whatever. Nothing had reached him beyond the names of tribes reported at second-hand, and frequently derived from different authorities, who would apply different appellations to the same tribe, or extend the same name to one or more of the wandering hordes, who were thinly dispersed over this vast extent of territory. Among the names thus accumulated, a compilation that is probably as worthless as that of Pliny, notwithstanding its greater pretensions to geographical accuracy, we find some that undoubtedly represent populations really existing in Ptolemy's time, such as the Alanī, the Aorsi, &c., associated with others that were merely poetical or traditional, such as the Abū, Galaktophagi and Hippophagi, while the Issēdones, who were placed by Herodotos immediately east of the Tanais, are strangely transferred by Ptolemy to the far East, on the very borders of Serika, and he has even the name of a town which he calls Issedon Serika, and to which he

assigns a position in longitude  $22^{\circ}$  east of Mount Imaōs, and not less than  $46^{\circ}$  east of Baktra. In one essential point, as has been already pointed out, Ptolemy's conception of Skythia differed from that of all preceding geographers, that instead of regarding it as bounded on the north and east by the sea, and consequently of comparatively limited extent, he considered it as extending without limit in both directions, and bounded only by 'the unknown land,' or, in other words, limited only by his own knowledge."

### CAP 16 POSITION OF SERIKĒ

[*Map of Asia, 8]*

Serikē is bounded on the west by Skythia beyond Mount Imaōs, along the line already mentioned, on the north by the unknown land along the same parallel as that through Thulē, and on the east, likewise by the unknown land along the meridian of which the extremities lie .. . . . . . . . . . . .  $180^{\circ} 63^{\circ}$   
 and .. . . . . . . . . . . .  $180^{\circ} 55^{\circ}$   
 and on the south by the rest of India beyond the Ganges through the same parallel as far as the extremity lying .. . . . . . . . . . .  $173^{\circ} 55^{\circ}$   
 and also by the Sinai, through the line prolonged till it reaches the already mentioned extremity towards the unknown land.

2 Serikē is girdled by the mountains called Anniba, whose extremities lie.....  $153^{\circ} 60^{\circ}$   
 and ..... . . . . . . . . . . .  $171^{\circ} 56^{\circ}$

and by the eastern part of the Auxakians,  
of which the extremity lies . . .  $165^{\circ} 54'$   
and by the mountains called the Asmirana  
whose extremities lie ..  $167^{\circ} 47' 30'$   
and . . . . . . . .  $174^{\circ} 47' 30'$   
and by the eastern part of the Kasia range,  
whose extremities lie ..  $162^{\circ} 44'$   
and .. . . . .  $171^{\circ} 40'$   
and by Mount Thagouron whose  
centre lies ... .... . . . .  $170^{\circ} 43'$   
and also by the eastern portion of the moun-  
tains called Emôda and Sêrika, whose extremity  
lies . . . . . . . . . . . . . .  $165^{\circ} 38'$   
and by the range called Ottorokorrhæs, whose  
extremities lie . . . . . . . . . . . . . .  $169^{\circ} 36'$   
and .. . . . . . . . . . . . . . .  $176^{\circ} 38'$

3 There flow through the far greatest por-  
tion of Sorikê two rivers, the Oikhardës, one of  
whose sources is placed with the Auxakioi, and  
the other which is placed in the Asmiranian  
mountains lies in . . . . . . . . . . . . . .  $174^{\circ} 47' 30'$   
and where it bends towards the Kasia  
range . . . . . . . . . . . . . .  $160^{\circ} 48' 30'$   
but the source in them lies . . . . . . . . . . . . . .  $161^{\circ} 44' 15'$   
and the other river is called the Bautisos, and  
this has one of its sources in the Kasia range  
in . . . . . . . . . . . . . .  $160^{\circ} 43'$   
another in Ottorokorrhæs . . . . . . . . . . . . . .  $176^{\circ} 39'$   
and it bends towards the Emôda in . . . . . . . . . . . . . .  $168^{\circ} 39'$   
and its source in these lies .. . . . . . . . . . . . . . .  $160^{\circ} 37'$

4 The most northern parts of Sorikê are

inhabited by tribes of cannibals, below whom is the nation of the Anniboi, who occupy the slopes and summits of the homonymous mountains. Between these and the uxakioi is the nation of the Syzyges, below whom are the Dâmnai, then as far as the river Oikhardes the Pialai (or Piaddai), and below the river the homonymous Oikhardai.

5 And again farther east than the Anniboi are the Garinaioi and the Rhabannaï or Rhabbanaioi, and below the country of Asmiraia, above the homonymous mountains. Beyond these mountains as far as the Kasia range the Issêdones, a great race and further east than these the Throanoï, and below these the Ithagouroï, to the east of the homonymous mountains, below the Issêdones, the Aspakârai, and still below those the Bataï, and furthest south along the Emôda and Sérîka ranges the Ottorokorrhæi.

6 The cities in Serikê are thus named —

Damna .. .	156° 51° 20'
Piala (or Piadda)	160° 49° 40'
Asmiraia .. .	170° 48°
Throana .. .	174° 40' 47° 41'

7 Issêdôn Serikê .. . 162° 45°

Aspakara (or Aspakaia) ..	162° 30' 41° 40'
Drôsakhê (or Rhosakla) ..	167° 40' 42° 30'
Paliana .. .	162° 30' 41°
Abragana .. .	163° 30' 39° 30'

8 Thogara	...	171° 20'	39° 40'
Daxata	.	174°	39° 30'
Orosana	.	162°	37° 30'
Ottorokorrha	.	165°	37° 15'
Solana	.	169°	37° 30'
Sêra metropolis	.	177°	38° 35'

The chapter which Ptolemy has devoted to Serikê has given rise to more abortive theories and unprofitable controversies than any other part of his work on Geography. The position of Serikê itself has been very variously determined, having been found by different writers in one or other of the many countries that intervene between Eastern Turkistan in the north and the province of Pegu in the south. It is now however generally admitted that by Serikê was meant the more northern parts of China, or those which travellers and traders reached by land. At the same time it is not to be supposed that the names which Ptolemy in his map has spread over that vast region were in reality names of places whose real positions were to be found so very far eastward. On the contrary, most of the names are traceable to Sanskrit sources and applicable to places either in Kasmîr or in the regions immediately adjoining. This view was first advanced by Saint-Martin, in his dissertation on the Serikê of Ptolemy (*Etude*, pp 411 ff) where he has discussed the subject with all his wonted acuteness and fulness of learning. I may translate here his remarks on the points that are most prominent. "All the nomenclature," he says (p 414), "except some names at the extreme points north

and east, is certainly of Sanskrit origin To the south of the mountains, in the Panjâb, Ptolemy indicates under the general name of Kaspîrae: an extension genuinely historical of the Kasmîrâu empire, with a detailed nomenclature which ought to rest upon informations of the 1st century of our æra, whilst to the north of the great chain we have nothing more than names thrown at hazard in an immense space where our means of actual comparison show us prodigious displacements This difference is explained by the very nature of the case The Brâhmans, who had alone been able to furnish the greater part of the information carried from India by the Greeks regarding this remotest of all countries, had not themselves, as one can see from their books, anything but the most imperfect notions Some names of tribes, of rivers, and of mountains, without details or relative positions—this is all the Sanskrit poems contain respecting these high valleys of the North It is also all that the tables of Ptolemy give, with the exception of the purely arbitrary addition of graduations It is but recently that we ourselves have become a little better acquainted with these countries which are so difficult of access We must not require from the ancients information which they could not have had, and it is of importance also that we should guard against a natural propensity which disposes us to attribute to all that antiquity has transmitted to us an authority that we do not accord without check to our best explorers If the meagre nomenclature inscribed by Ptolemy on his map, of the countries situated beyond

(that is to the east) of Imaos cannot lead to a regular correspondence with our existing notions, that which one can recognize, suffices nevertheless to determine and circumscribe its general position. Without wishing to carry into this more precision than is consistent with the nature of the indications we may say, that the indications, taken collectively, place us in the midst of the Alpine region, whence radiate in different directions the Himâlaya, the Hindu-Kôh and the Bolor chain—enormous elevations enveloped in an immense girdle of eternal snows, and whose cold valleys belong to different families of pastoral tribes. Kašmir, a privileged oasis amidst these rugged mountains, appertains itself to this region which traverses more to the north the Tibetan portion of the Indus (above the point where the ancients placed the sources of the Indus) and whence run to the west the Oxos and Iaxartes. With Ptolemy the name of Imaos (the Greek transcription of the usual form of the name of Himâlaya) is applied to the central chain from the region of the sources of the Ganges (where rise also the Indus and its greatest affluent, the Satadru or Sathaj) to beyond the sources of the Iaxartes. The general direction of this great axis from south to north, saving a bend to the south-east from Kašmir to the sources of the Ganges, it is only on parting from this last point that the Himâlaya runs directly to the east, and it is there also that with Ptolemy the name of Emôdos begins, which designates the Eastern Himâlaya. Now it is on Imaos itself or in the vicinity of this grand

system of mountains to the north of our Panjâb and to the east of the valleys of the Hindu-Kôh and of the upper Ôxos that there come to be placed, in a space from 6 to 7 degrees at most from south to north, and less perhaps than that in the matter of the longitudes, all the names which can be identified on the map where Ptolemy has wished to represent, in giving them an extension of nearly 40 degrees from west to east, the region which he calls Skythia beyond Imaôs and Serika One designation is there immediately recognizable among all the others—that of K a s i a Ptolemy indicates the situation of the country of Kasia towards the bending of Imaôs to the east above the sources of the Ôxos, although he carries his Montes Kasu very far away from that towards the east, but we are sufficiently aware beforehand that here, more than in any other part of the Tables, we have only to attend to the nomenclature, and to leave the notations altogether out of account The name of the Khasa has been from time immemorial one of the appellations the most spread through all the Himâlayan range To keep to the western parts of the chain, where the indication of Ptolemy places us, we there find Khasa mentioned from the heroic ages of India, not only in the *Itihâsas* or legendary stories of the *Mahâbhârata*, but also in the law book of Manu, where their name is read by the side of that of the D a r a d a, another people well known, which borders in fact on the Khasa of the north The Khasa figure also in the Buddhist Chronicles of Ceylon, among the people subdued by Asôka in the upper Panjâb, and we find them mentioned

in more than 40 places of the *Kaśmīr Chronicle* among the chief mountain tribes that border on Kaśmīr Baber knows also that a people of the name of Khas is indigenous to the high valleys in the neighbourhood of the Eastern Hindu-Kōh, and, with every reason, we attach to this indigenous people the origin of the name of Kāshgar, which is twice reproduced in the geography of these high regions Khasagiri in Sanskrit, or, according to a form more approaching the Zend, Khasaghāri, signifies properly the mountains of the Khasa The Akhasa Khōra, near the Kasia region, is surely connected with the same nationality The Aspaka rāi, with a place of the same name (Aspakara) near the Kasu Montes, have no correspondence actually known in these high valleys, but the form of the name connects it with the Sanskrit or Iranian nomenclature Beside the Aspakarai, the Bātāi are found in the Bāutta of the *Rajatarangini* In the 10th century of our era, the Chief of Ghulgit took the title of Bhātshāh or Shah of the Bhāt The Bātāi, that we next name, recall a people, mentioned by Ptolemy in this high region, the Byltai The accounts possessed by Ptolemy had made him well acquainted with the general situation of the Byltai in the neighbourhood of the Imaōs, but he is either ill informed or has ill applied his information as to their exact position, which he indicates as being to the west of the great chain of Bolor and not to the east of it, where they were really to be found The Rāmanā and the Dasamāna, two people of the north, which the *Mahābhārata* and the Pauranik lists mention

along with the China, appear to us not to differ from the Rhabannae and the Damnae of Ptolemy's table" Saint Martin gives in the sequel a few other identifications—that of the Throanoi (whose name should be read Phrounoi, or rather Phaunoi as in Strabo) with the Phuna of the *Lalitavistara* (p 122)—of the Kharauanaioi with the Kajana, whose language proves them to be Daradas, and of the Ithagouroi with the Dangors, Dhagars or Dakhars, who must at one time have been the predominant tribe of the Daradas. The country called Asmiraia he takes, without hesitation, to be Kashmir itself. As regards the name Ottorokorrhā, applied by Ptolemy to a town and a people and a range of mountains, it is traced without difficulty to the Sanskrit—Uttarakuru, i.e., the Kuru of the north which figures in Indian mythology as an earthly paradise sheltered on every side by an encircling rampart of lofty mountains, and remarkable for the longevity of its inhabitants, who lived to be 1000 and 10,000 years old. Ptolemy was not aware that this was but an imaginary region, and so gave it a place within the domain of real geography. The land of the Hyperboreans is a western repetition of the Uttarakura of Kashmir.

### CAP 17 POSITION OF AREIA. [Map of Asia 9]

Areia is bounded on the north by Margiane and by a part of Baktrianē along the southern side, as already exhibited. On the west by

Parthia and by the Karmanian desert along their eastern meridians that have been defined, on the south by Drangianê along the line which, beginning from the said extremity towards Karmania, and curving towards the north, turns through Mount Bagôos towards the east on to the extreme point which lies . . . .  $111^{\circ} 34'$   
 the position where the mountain curves is . . . . .  $105^{\circ} 32'$   
 The boundary on the east is formed by the Paropanisadai along the line adjoining the extremities already mentioned through the western parts of Paropanisos, the position may be indicated at three different points, the southern . . . . .  $111^{\circ} 36'$   
 the northern . . . . .  $111^{\circ} 30' 39'$   
 and the most eastern . . . . .  $119^{\circ} 30' 39'$

2 A notable river flows through this country called the Areias, of which the sources that are in Paropanisos, lie . . . . .  $111^{\circ} 38' 15'$  and those that are in the Sariphoi . $118^{\circ} 33' 20'$  The part along the lake called Areia, which is below these mountains, lies in . . . . .  $108^{\circ} 40' 36'$

3 The northern parts of Areia are possessed by the Nissaioi and the Astauênoi or Astabênoi, but those along the frontier of Parthia and the Karmanian desert by the Masdôranoï or Mazôranoï, and those along the frontier of Drangianê by the Kaseirô-tai, and those along the Paropanisadai by the Parautoi, below whom are the Obareis



7 Areia, a city .....	105°	35°
Kaskê .....	107° 20'	35° 20'
Sôteira .....	108° 40'	35° 30'
Ortikanê .....	109° 20'	35° 30'
Nisibis .....	111°	35° 20'
Parakanakê .....	105° 30'	34° 20'
Sariga .....	106° 40'	34° 40'
8 Darkama .....	111°	34° 20'
Kotakê .....	107° 30'	33° 40'
Tribazina .....	106°	33°
Astasana .....	105°	33°
Zimyra .....	102° 30'	33° 15'

Areia was a small province included in Ariana, a district of wide extent, which comprehended nearly the whole of ancient Persia. The smaller district has sometimes been confounded with the larger, of which it formed a part. The names of both are connected with the well-known Indian word *ārya*, 'noble' or 'excellent'. According to Strabo, Aria was 2,000 stadia in length and only 300 stadia in breadth. "If," says Wilson (*Ariana Antiq.*, p. 150) "these measurements be correct, we must contract the limits of Aria much more than has been usually done, and Aria will be restricted to the tract from about Meshd to the neighbourhood of Herat, a position well enough reconcilable with much that Strabo relates of Aria, its similarity to Margiana in character and productions, its mountains and well-watered valleys in which the vine flourished, its position as much to the north as to the south of the chain of Taurus or Alburz, and its being bounded by Hyrkania,

Margiana, and Baktriana on the north, and Draviana on the south ”

Mount Bagōos on its south-east border, has been identified with the Ghûr mountains. The Montes Sariphî are the Hazâras. The river Areias, by which Aria is traversed, is the Hari Rûd or river of Herat which, rising at Oba in the Paropanisan mountains, and having run westerly past Herat, is at no great distance lost in the sands. That it was so lost is stated both by Strabo and Arrian. Ptolemy makes it terminate in a lake, and hence, Rennell carried it south into the Lake of Seistân, called by Ptolemy the Areian lake. It receives the Ferrah-Rûd, a stream which passes Ferrah or Farah, a town which has been identified with much probability with the Phra mentioned by Isidôros in his *Mans Parth*, sec 16. It receives also the Etymander (now the Helmand) which gave its name to one of the Areian tribes named by Ptolemy.

He has enumerated no fewer than 35 towns belonging to this small province, a long list which it is not possible to verify, but a number of small towns, as Wilson points out, occur on the road from Meshid to Herat and thence towards Qandahâr or Kabul, and some of these may be represented in the Table under forms more or less altered. The capital of Areia, according to Strabo and Arrian, was Artakoana (v ll Artakakna, Artakana) and this is no doubt the Artikaudna of Ptolemy, which he places on the banks of the Areian lake about two-thirds of a degree north-west of his Alexandria of the Areians. The identification of this Alexandria is uncertain, most probably it was Herat, or some

place in its neighbourhood Herat is called by oriental writers Hera, a form under which the Areia of the ancients is readily to be recognized Ptolemy has a city of this name, and Wilson (*Ariana Antiqua*, p 152), is of opinion that "Artakoana, Alexandria and Aria are aggregated in Herat" With reference to Alexandria he quotes a memorial verse current among the inhabitants of Herat "It is said that Hari was founded by Lohrasp, extended by Gushtasp, improved by Bahman and completed by Alexander" The name of Sôteira indicates that its founder was Antiochos Sôtêr.

CAP 18

## POSITION OF THE PABOPANISADAI

[Map of Asia 9]

I The Paropanisadai are bounded on the west by Areia along the aforesaid side, on the north by the part of Baktrianē as described, on the east by a part of India along the meridian line prolonged from the sources of the river Oxos, through the Kaukavian mountains as far as a terminating point which

2 The following rivers enter the country—the Dargamanés, which belongs to Baktriané, the position of the sources of which has

been already stated, and the river which falls into the Kôa, of which the sources lie. . . . .  $115^{\circ}$   $34^{\circ} 30'$ .

3 The northern parts are possessed by the Bôlîtaî, and the western by the Aristophyloî, and below them the Parsioî, and the southern parts by the Parsyétaî, and the eastern by the Ambautaî.

4 The towns and villages of the Paropanisadaî are these —

Parsiana	.. . . . ..	$118^{\circ} 30'$	$38^{\circ} 45'$
Barzaura	. . . . .	$114^{\circ}$	$37^{\circ} 30'$
Artoarta	. .. . . .	$116^{\circ} 30'$	$37^{\circ} 30'$
Baborana	. . . . .	$118^{\circ}$	$37^{\circ} 10'$
Katisa	.. . . . ..	$118^{\circ} 40'$	$37^{\circ} 30'$
Niphanda	... . . . .	$119^{\circ}$	$37^{\circ}$
Drastoka	. . . . .	$116^{\circ}$	$36^{\circ} 30'$
Gazaka or Gaudzaka	... . . . .	$118^{\circ} 30'$	$36^{\circ} 15'$
5 Naulibis	.. . . . ..	$117^{\circ}$	$35^{\circ} 30'$
Parsia	.. . . . ..	$113^{\circ} 30'$	$35^{\circ}$
Lokbarn	. . . . .	$118^{\circ}$	$34^{\circ}$
Daroakana	. . . . .	$118^{\circ} 30'$	$34^{\circ} 20'$
Karoura, called also Ortospana	. . . . .	$118^{\circ}$	$35^{\circ}$
Tarbakana	.. . . . ..	$114^{\circ} 20'$	$33^{\circ} 40'$
Bagarda	. . . . .	$116^{\circ} 40'$	$33^{\circ} 40'$
Argouda	. . . . .	$118^{\circ} 45'$	$33^{\circ} 30'$

The tribes for which Paropanisadaî was a collective name were located along the southern and eastern sides of the Hindu-Kush, which Ptolemy calls the Kaukasos, and of which his Paropanisos formed a part. In the tribe which he calls the

Bôlîtau we may perhaps have the Kabolites, or people of Kabul, and in the Ambauta the Ambastha of Sanskrit. The Parayâta have also a Sanskrit name—'mountaineers,' from *parata*, 'a mountain,' so also the Parantos of Aria. The principal cities of the Paropanîsîdai were Naulibis and Karoura or Orospana. Karoura is also written as Kâbonra and in this form makes a near approach to Kabul, with which it has been identified. With regard to the other name of this place, Orospana, Cunningham (*See Geog. of Ind.*, p. 35) says "I would identify it with Kâbul itself, with its Bala Hisar, or 'high fort,' which I take to be a Persian translation of Orospana or Urddhavarshâna, that is, high place or lofty city." Ptolemy mentions two rivers that crossed the country of the Paropanîsîdai—the Darpanâs from Baktriana that flowed northward to join the Oxos, which Wilson (*Irania Antiqua*, p. 160) takes to be either the Dhabas or the Gori river. If it was the Dhabas, then the other river which Ptolemy does not name, but which he makes to be a tributary of the Koas, may be the Sirkhab or Gori river, which, however, does not join the Koas but flows northward to join the Oxos. Pânumi mentions Parvathâna, the country of the Parsus, a warlike tribe in this reign, which may correspond to Ptolemy's Parusoi or Parzeytu.<sup>40</sup> The following places have been identified—

Parsuana with Panjshir, Barzaura with Bazarak, Baborana with Parwân, Drastoka with Istargardh, Parsiâ (capital of the

---

<sup>40</sup> See Bent's *Bud Rec of Wn Count* vol II, p. 285n

Parsu) with Farzah, and Lôk harnâ with Lôgarh south of Kâbul

## CAP 19

## POSITION OF DRANGIANE

[*Map of Asia 9*]

Drangiane is bounded on the west and north by Areia along the line already described as passing through Mount Bagôo, and on the east by Arakhôsia along the meridian line drawn from an extreme point lying in the country of the Areioi and that of the Paropanisadai to another extreme point, of which the position is in . . . . .  $111^{\circ} 30' 28'$  and on the south by a part of Gedrôsia along the line joining the extreme points already determined, passing through the Balîan mountains

2 There flows through the country a river which branches off from the Arable of  $\text{vilk}$  the sources lie . . . . .  $103^{\circ} 32^{\circ} 33'$

3 The parts towards Areia are possessed by the Darandai, and those towards Gedrôsia by the Baktrîa; the country intermediate is called Tatakêza.

4 The towns and cities of Drangiane are said to be these—

Prophandas . . . . .  $119^{\circ} 32^{\circ} 2'$

Ricoda . . . . .  $108^{\circ} 3' 31^{\circ} 35'$

Inna .. . . . .	109°	31° 30'
Arikada . . . . .	110° 20'	31° 20'
5. Asta .. . . . .	117° 30'	30° 40'
Xarsiarê .. . . . .	106° 20'	29° 15'
Nostana ... .. . . .	108°	29° 40'
Pharazana ... . . . .	110°	30°
Bigis ... . . . . .	111°	29° 40'
Ariaspê ..... . . . .	108° 40	28° 40'
Arana .. . . . . . .	111°	28° 15'

Drangianê corresponds in general position and extent with the province now called Seistân. The inhabitants were called Drangai, Zarangae, Zarangoi, Zarangaioi and Sarangai. The name, according to Burnouf, was derived from the Zend word, *zarayo*, 'a lake,' a word which is retained in the name by which Ptolemy's Areian lake is now known—Lake Zarah. The district was mountainous towards Arakhôsia, which formed its eastern frontier, but in the west, towards Karmania, it consisted chiefly of sandy wastes. On the south it was separated from Gedrôsia by the Baitian mountains, those now called the Washati. Ptolemy says it was watered by a river derived from the Arabis, but this is a gross error, for the Arabis, which is now called the Purâh, flows from the Baitian mountains in an opposite direction from Drangiana. Ptolemy has probably confounded the Arabis with the Ety nander or Helmand river which, as has already been noticed, falls into Lake Zarah.

Ptolemy has portioned out the province among three tribes, the Darandai (Drangai?) on the north, the Baktrioi to the south-east, and the people of Tatakêne between them.

The capital was Prophthasia which was distant, according to Eratosthenes, 1500 or 1600 stadia from Alexandria Areiōn (Herat) Wilson therefore fixes its site at a place called Peshawarun, which is distant from Herat 183 miles, and where there were relics found of a very large city This place lies between Dushak and Phra, i.e Farah, a little to the north of the lake These ruins are not, however, of ancient date, and it is better therefore to identify Prophthasia with Farah which represents Phra or Phrada, and Phrada, according to Stephanos of Byzantium, was the name of the city which was called by Alexander Prophthasia (Bunbury, vol I, p 488) Dashak, the actual capital of Seistān, is probably the Zarang of the early Muhammadan writers which was evidently by its name connected with Drangiana In the Persian cuneiform inscription at Behistun the country is called Zasaka, as Rawlinson has pointed out (see Smith's *Dictionary*, s v Drangiana) The place of next importance to the capital was Ariaspē, which Arrian places on the Etymander (*Anab*, lib IV, c vii) The people were called Ariaspai at first, or Agraspai, but afterwards Euergetai,—a title which they had earned by assisting Cyrus at a time when he had been reduced to great straits

#### CAP 20 POSITION OF ARAKHOSIA

Arakhōsia is bounded on the west by Drangianē, on the north by the Paropanisadai, along the sides already determined, on the east by the part of India lying along the meridian

line extended from the boundary towards the Paropanisadai as far as an extreme point lying . . . . .  $119^{\circ} 28'$   
and on the south by the rest of Gedrōsia along the line joining the extreme points already determined through the Baitian range

2 A river enters this country which branches off from the Indus of which the sources lie in . . . . .  $114^{\circ} 32' 30'$   
and the divarication (*ἐκτροπή*) in . . . . .  $121^{\circ} 30' 27' 30'$   
and the part at the lake formed by it which is called Arakhōtos Krēnē (fountain)—  
lies in . . . . .  $115^{\circ} 28' 40'$

3 The people possessing the north parts of the country are the Parsyētai, and those below them the Sydroi, after whom are the Rhōploutai and the Eōritai

4 The towns and villages of Arakhōsia are said to be these —

Ozola (or Axola) . . . . .	$114^{\circ} 15'$	$32^{\circ} 15'$
Phōklis	$118^{\circ} 15'$	$32^{\circ} 10'$
Arikaka . . . . .	$113^{\circ}$	$31^{\circ} 20'$
Alexandreia	$114^{\circ}$	$31^{\circ} 20'$
Rhizana	$115^{\circ}$	$31^{\circ} 30'$
Arbaka . . . . .	$118^{\circ}$	$31^{\circ} 20'$
Sigara	$113^{\circ} 15'$	$30^{\circ}$
Khoaspa . . . . .	$115^{\circ} 15'$	$30^{\circ} 10'$
5 Arakhōtos . . . . .	$118^{\circ}$	$30^{\circ} 20'$
Asiakē .. . . . .	$112^{\circ} 20'$	$29^{\circ} 20'$
Gammakē . . . . .	$116^{\circ} 20'$	$29^{\circ} 20'$

Mahanē . . . . .	118°	29° 20'
Dammana ... . . . .	113°	28° 20'

A rakhōsia comprised a considerable portion of Eastern Afghanistan. It extended westward beyond the meridian of Qandahār and its eastern frontier was skirted by the Indus. On the north it stretched to the mountains of Ghūr, the western section of the Hindu-Kush, and on the south to Gedrōsia from which it was separated by the Baitian mountains, a branch of the Brahui range. The name has been derived from Haraqati, the Persian form of the Sanskrit Sarasvatī, a name frequently given to rivers (being a compound of *saras*, 'flowing water,' and the affix *vati*) and applied among others to the river of Arakhōsia. The province was rich and populous, and what added greatly to its importance, it was traversed by one of the main routes by which Persia communicated with India. The principal river was that now called the Helmand which, rising near the Koh-i-bābā range west of Kābul, pursues a course with a general direction to the south-west, and which, after receiving from the neighbourhood of Qandahār the Argand-āb with its affluents, the Tarnak and the Arghasan, flows into the lake of Zarah. Ptolemy mentions only one river of Arakhōsia and this, in his map, is represented as rising in the Paryētāi mountains (the Hazaras) and flowing into a lake from which it issues to fall into the Indus about  $3\frac{1}{2}$  degrees below its junction with the combined rivers of the Panjāb. This lake, which, he says, is called Arakhotos Krēnē, he places at a distance of not less than 7 degrees from his Areian lake. In the text

he says that the river is an arm of the Indus, a statement for which it is difficult to find a reason

The capital of Arakhōsia was Arkhōtos, said by Stephanos of Byzantium to have been founded by Semiramis. Regarding its identification Mr Vaux (*Smith's Dictionary*, s v) says "Some difference of opinion has existed as to the exact position of this town, and what modern city or ruins can be identified with the ancient capital? M Court has identified some ruins on the Arghasan river, 4 parasangs from Qandahār, on the road to Shikarpur, with those of Arakhōtos, but these Prof Wilson considers to be too much to the S E Rawlinson (*Jour. Geog. Soc.*, vol XII, p 113) thinks that he has found them at a place now called Ulān Robāt. He states that the most ancient name of the city, Kophen, mentioned by Stephanos and Pliny, has given rise to the territorial designation of Kipin, applied by the Chinese to the surrounding country. The ruins are of a very remarkable character, and the measurements of Strabo, Pliny, and Ptolemy are, he considers, decisive as to the identity of the site. Stephanos has apparently contrasted two cities—Arakhōsia, which he says is not far from the Massagetae, and Arakhōtas, which he calls a town of India. Sir H Rawlinson believes the contiguity of the Massagetae and Arakhōsia, may be explained by the supposition that by Massagetae, Stephanos meant the Sakai, who colonized the Hazāra mountains on their way from the Hindu-Kush to Sakastān or Seistān." Another account of the origin of the name Seistān is that it is a corruption of the word Saghistān, i.e., the country of

the *saghs*, a kind of wood which abounds in the province and is used as fuel Arakhōsia, according to Isidoros of Kharax, was called by the Parthians "White India "

### CAP. 21.

#### POSITION OF GEDRÖSIA

Gedrōsia is bounded on the west by Karmania along the meridian line, already determined as far as the sea, and on the north by Drangianē and Arakhōsia along the separate meridian lines passing through these countries, and on the east by part of India along the river Indus following the line prolonged from the boundary towards Arakhōsia to its termination at the sea in . . . . .  $109^{\circ} 20'$  and on the south by a part of the Indian Ocean It is thus described through its circuit

2 After the extremity towards Karmania the mouth of the River Arabis ..	$105^{\circ}$	$20' 15'$
the sources of the river ..	$110^{\circ}$	$27^{\circ} 30'$
the divarication of the river entering Drangianē .. .	$107^{\circ} 30'$	$25^{\circ}$
Rhagiraua, a city .. .	$106^{\circ}$	$20^{\circ}$
Women's Haven (Gynakén limēn). . ....	$107^{\circ}$	$20^{\circ} 15'$
Koiamba .. . .	$105^{\circ}$	$20^{\circ}$
Rhizana .. . .	$104^{\circ} 20'$	$20^{\circ} 15'$
After which the extreme point at the sea already men- tioned ..... . .	$107^{\circ}$	$20^{\circ}$

3 Through Gedrōsia run the mountains called the Arbita, whose extreme points lie in . . . . . 160° (107 ?) 22° and . . . . . 113° 26° 30' from these mountains some rivers join the Indus and the source of one of these lies . . . . . 111° 25° 30' and also there are some streams flowing through Gedrōsia, that descend from the Baitian range

4 The maritime parts are possessed by the villages of the Arbitai, and the parts along Karamania by the Parsidaï (or Parsirai), and the parts along Arakhōsia by the Mousarnaioi, all the interior of the country is called Paradēnē, and below it Parisiēnē, after which the parts towards the Indus river are possessed by the Rhamnai

5 The towns and villages of Gedrōsia are accounted to be these —

Kouni	..	. 110°	27°
Badara	.	. 113°	27°
Mousarna	..	. 115°	27° 30'
Kottobara	.	. 118°	27° 30'
Soxestra or Sôkstra	.	. 118° 30'	25° 45'
Oskana	.	. 115°	26°
Parsis, the Metropolis	.	. 106° 30'	23° 30'
Omiza	..	. 110°	23° 30'
Arbis, a city	.	. 105°	22° 30'

6 The islands adjacent to Gedrōsia are—

Asthaia	.	. 105°	18°
Kodanē	.	. . . (107 ?) 160° 30'	17°



The Rhamnai are placed in Ptolemy's map in the northern part of the province and towards the river Indus. This race appears to have been one that was widely diffused, and one of its branches, as has been stated, was located among the Vindhyas.

The Parsidae, who bordered on Karmania, are mentioned in the *Periplús* (c xxxvii) and also in Arrian's *Indika* (c xxvi) where they are called Pasirees. They gave their names to a range of mountains which Ptolemy makes the boundary between Gedrōsia and Karmania, and also to a town, Parsis, which formed the capital of the whole province.

Of the other towns enumerated only one is mentioned in Arrian's *Indika*, *Gynaiκὸν Λιμῆν*, or women's haven, the port of Morontobara, near Cape Monze, the last point of the Pab range of mountains. The haven was so named because the district around had, like Carthage, a woman for its first sovereign.

The names of the two towns Badara and Mousarna occur twice in Ptolemy here as inland towns of Gedrōsia, and elsewhere as seaport towns of Karmania. Major Mockler, who personally examined the Makian coast from Gwadar to Cape Jāsk, and has thereby been enabled to correct some of the current identifications, has shown that Gwadar and Badara are identical. Badara appears in the *Indika* of Arrian as Barna.

I here subjoin, for comparison, a passage from Ammianus Marcellinus which traverses the ground covered by Ptolemy's description of Central and Eastern Asia. Ammianus wrote about the middle

of the fourth century of our era, and was a well informed writer, and careful in his statement of facts. The extract is from the 23rd Book of his *History* —

AMMIANUS MARCELLINUS—Book XXIII

"If you advance from Karmania into the interior (of Asia) you reach the Hyrkanians, who border on the sea which bears their name. Here, as the poorness of the soil kills the seeds committed to it, the inhabitants care but little for agriculture. They live by hunting game, which is beyond measure varied and abundant. Tigers show themselves here in thousands, and many other wild beasts besides. I bear in mind that I have already described the nature of the contrivances by which these animals are caught. It must not be supposed, however, that the people never put hands to the plough, for where the soil is found richer than usual the fields are covered with crops. In places, moreover, that are adapted for being planted out, gardens of fruit trees are not wanting, and the sea also supplies many with the means of livelihood. Two rivers flow through the country whose names are familiar to all, the Oxus and Mætra. Tigers at times, when pressed by hunger on their own side of these rivers, swim over to the opposite side and, before the alarm can be raised, ravage all the neighbourhood where they land. Amidst the smaller townships there exist also cities of great power, two on the sea board, Socunda and Saramanna, and the others inland—Azmorna and Solen, and Hyrkania, which rank above the others. The country next to this people on the north is said to be inhabited by the

A bii, a most pious race of men, accustomed to despise all things mortal, and whom Jupiter (as Homer with his over-fondness for fable sings) looks down upon from the summits of Mount Ida. The seats immediately beyond the Hyrkanians form the dominions of the Margiani, who are nearly on all sides round hemmed in by high hills, and consequently shut out from the sea. Though their territory is for the most part sterile, from the deficiency of water, they have nevertheless some towns, and of these the more notable are Jasonion and Antiochia and Nisaea. The adjoining region belongs to the Baktriani, a nation hitherto addicted to war and very powerful, and always troublesome to their neighbours, the Persians before that people had reduced all the surrounding states to submission, and absorbed them into their own name and nationality. In old times, however even Arsakes himself found the kings who ruled in Baktriana formidable foes to contend with. Most parts of the country are, like Margiana, far distant from the sea, but the soil is productive and the cattle that are pastured on the plains and hill-sides, are compact of structure, with limbs both stout and strong, as may be judged from the camels which were brought from thence by Mithridates and seen by the Romans during the siege of Cyzicus, when they saw this species of animal for the first time. A great many tribes, among which the Tochari are the most distinguished, obey the Baktrians. Their country is watered, like Italy, by numerous rivers, and of these the Artemis and Zariaspes after their union, and in like manner the combined Oohus

and Orchomanes, swell with their confluent waters the vast stream of the Oxos. Here also cities are to be found, and these are laved by different rivers. The more important of them are Chatra and Charta and Alcedra and Astacia and Menapila, and Baktra itself, which is both the capital and the name of the nation. The people, who live at the very foot of the mountains, are called the Sogdii, through whose country flow two rivers of great navigable capacity, the Araxes and Dymas, which rushing impetuously down from the mountains and passing into a level plain, form a lake of vast extent, called the Oxian. Here, among other towns, Alexandria, and Kyreschata and Drepса the Metropolis, are well known to fame. Contiguous to the Sogdians are the Sacae, an uncivilized people, inhabiting rugged tracts that yield nothing beyond pasture for cattle, and that are, therefore, unadorned with cities. They lie under Mounts Askania and Komedus. Beyond the valleys at the foot of these mountains and the village which they call Lithinon Pyrgon (Stone Tower) lies the very long road by which traders pursue their journey who start from this point to reach the Scres. In the parts around are the declivities by which the mountains called Imaus and the Tapourian range, sink down to the level of the plains. The Skythians are located within the Persian territories, being conterminous with the Asiatic Sarmatians, and touching the furthest frontier of the Alanı. They live, as it were, a sort of secluded life, and are reared in solitude, being scattered over districts that lie far apart, and that yield for the sustenance of life a

mean and scanty fare The tribes which inhabit these tracts are various, but it would be superfluous for me to enumerate them, hastening as I am to a different subject One fact must, however, be stated, that there are in these communities which are almost shut out from the rest of mankind by the inhospitable nature of their country, some men gentle and pious, as for instance, the Jaxartes and the Galaktophagi, mentioned by the poet Homer in this verse

*Γλακτοφάγων ἀβίωντε δικαιοτάτων ἀνθρώπων*

“ Among the many rivers of Skythia which either fall naturally into larger ones, or glide onward to reach at last the sea, the Roemnus is of renown, and the Jaxartes and the Taliucus, but of cities they are not known to have more than but three, Aspabota and Chauriana and Saga

“ Beyond these places in the two Skythias and on their eastern side lie the Sêres, who are girt in by a continuous circle of lofty mountain-peaks and whose territory is noted for its vast extent and fertility On the west they have the Skythians for their next neighbours, and on the north and east they adjoin solitudes covered over with snow, and on the south extend as far as India and the Ganges The mountains referred to are called Anniva and Nazavicum and Asmira and Emodon and Opurocara Through this plain which, as we have said, is cinctured on all sides by steep declivities, and through regions of vast extent, flow two famous rivers, the Æchardes and the Bautisus, with a slower current The country is diversified in its character, here expanding into open plains, and there rising

in gentle undulations Hence it is marvellously fruitful and well-wooded, and teeming with cattle Various tribes inhabit the most fertile districts, and of these the Alitrophagi and Annibi and Sizyges and Chardi are exposed to blasts from the north and to frosts, while the Rabannae and Asmiraee and Essedones, who outshine all the other tribes, look towards the rising sun Next to these, on their western side, are the Athagorae and the Aspacarae The Betae, again, are situated towards the lofty mountains fringing the south, and are famed for their cities which, though few in number are distinguished for their size and wealth, the largest of them being Asmira, and Essedon and Asparata and Sera, which are beautiful cities and of great celebrity The Sères themselves lead tranquil lives, and are averse to arms and war, and since people whose temper is thus sedate and peaceful relish their ease, they give no trouble to any of their neighbours They enjoy a climate at once agreeable and salubrious, the sky is clear and the prevailing winds are wonderfully mild and genial The country is well-shaded with woods, and from the trees the inhabitants gather a product which they make into what may be called fleeces by repeatedly besprinkling it with water The material thus formed by saturating the soft down with moisture is exquisitely fine, and when combed out and spun into woof is woven into silk, an article of dress formerly worn only by the great, but now without any distinction even by the very poorest<sup>41</sup>

---

<sup>41</sup> It was a notion long prevalent that silk was combed from the leaves of trees Thus Virgil (*Georg.* II, 121)

The Sêres themselves live in the most frugal manner, more so indeed than any other people in the world. They seek after a life as free as possible from all disquiet, and shun intercourse with the rest of mankind. So when strangers cross the river into their country to buy their silks or other commodities, they exchange no words with them, but merely intimate by their looks the value of the goods offered for sale, and so abstemious are they that they buy not any foreign products. Beyond the Sêres live the Ariani, exposed to the blasts of the north wind. Through their country flows a navigable river called the Arias, which forms a vast lake bearing the same name. This same Aria has numerous towns, among which Bitana Sarmatina, and Sotera and Nisibis and Alexandria are the most notable. If you sail from Alexandria *down the river* to the Caspian Sea the distance is 1,500 stadia.

Immediately adjoining these places are the Paropanisatae, who look on the east towards the Indians and on the west towards Caucasus, lying themselves towards the slopes of the mountains. The River Ortogordomaris, which is larger than any of the others, and rises among the Baktriani, flows through their territory. They too, have some towns, of which the more celebrated are Agazaca and Naulibus and Ortopana, from which the navi-

---

'Velleraque ut foliis depectant tenuia Seres.' Strabo (XV, 1, 20) describes silk as carded off the bark of certain trees. Pausanias, who wrote about 180 AD is the first classical author who writes with some degree of correctness about silk and the silk worm. Conf. P. Mela, 1, 2, 3, m, 7, 1, Pliny, VI, 17, 20, Prop 1, 14, 22, Sol 50, Iud. Orig. xix, 17, 6, ib 27, 5

gation along the coast to the borders of Media in the immediate neighbourhood of the Caspian Gates extends to 2,200 stadia Contiguous to the Paropanisatae just named are the Drangian, seated quite close to the hills and watered by a river called the Arabian, because it rises in Arabia Among their other towns they have two to boast of in particular, Prophthasia and Ariaspæ, which are both opulent and famous After these, and directly confronting them, Arachosia comes into view, which on its right side faces the Indians It is watered by a stream of copious volume derived from the Indus, that greatest of rivers, after which the adjacent regions have been named This stream, which is less than the Indus, forms the lake called Arachotoscronc The province, among other important cities, has Alexandria and Arbæa and Choaspa In the very interior of Persia is Gedrosia, which on the right touches the Indian frontier It is watered by several streams, of which the Artabius is the most considerable Where it is inhabited by the Barbitani the mountains sink down to the plains A number of rivers issue from their very base to join the Indus, and these all lose their names when absorbed into that mightier stream Here too, besides the islands there are cities, of which Sedratyra and Gunakon Limen (Women's haven) are considered to be superior to the others But we must bring this description here to an end, lest in entering into a minute account of the seaboard on the extremities of Persia we should stray too far from the proper argument ”



## APPENDIX OF ADDITIONAL NOTES

1 On the latitude of Byzantium and of Tâsh-Kurghân—(p 14)

Ptolemy like Hipparkhos and all the ancients except Strabo erroneously took the latitude of Byzantium ( $41^{\circ} 1'$ ) to be the same as that of Marseilles ( $43^{\circ} 18'$ ). The latitude of Tâsh-kurghân in the Pamir is  $37^{\circ} 46'$  and its longitude  $75^{\circ} 10'$  E., the latitude of Tashkend is  $42^{\circ} 58'$ , and that of Oeh or Ush (near which there is a monument called at this day the Takht-i-Suleiman, 'Throne of Sohman,' which Heeren took to be the veritable stone tower of Ptolemy) is  $40^{\circ} 19'$ .

2 On Kouroula—(pp 22, 63, and 64)

Lieut.-Colonel Bransfill (*Names of Places in Tanjore*, p 8), thinks this may be represented by Kurla or Korala-gorla on the East Coast "There is," he points out, "*Gorlapâlem* near Nizâmpattanam (*Cf. Vingorla*, South Concan Malabar Coast)"

3 Argaric Gulf and Argeiron (pp 22, 59 and 60)

Bransfill in the work cited (pp 8 and 9) says — "Ârrankarai (pronounced nowadays Âtrankarai), at the mouth of the Vagai looks very like the ancient 'Argari,' and 'Sinus Argalicus' (Yule), the Argaric Gulf *Ayxēipov* looks like Anaikarai, the ancient name of Adam's Bridge, so called by the Tamils as being the bridge or causeway *par excellence*. In the middle ages, before Pâmban was separated from the mainland by the

storm that breached the famous causeway, there is said to have been a great city, remains of which are still to be seen on the spit of sand opposite to Pāmban" *Aγχείρου* in Nobbe's edition appears as *Αργείρου*

#### 4 On Thelkheir—(pp 63 and 64)

Branfill (p 12), would identify this with Chidambaram—"the town between the Vellâr and Kolladam (*Coleroon*) rivers, from *chit*=wisdom, and *ambara*, horizon, sky, = *Heaven of Wisdom* Tillai, or Tillaiwanam is the former name of this place, and it is familiarly known as Tillai even now amongst the natives May not this be the ancient Thellyr and Θελχείρ of Ptolemy and the ancient geographers? But perhaps Tellûr (near Vandavasi) may be it" Tillai, he points out (p 30), is a tree with milky sap

#### 5 On Orthoura—(pp 64 and 184)

Branfill (pp 7 and 8), identifying this, says—"Orattûr (pronounced Orathûru) is found repeatedly in this (Kavêri Delta) and the adjacent districts, and may represent the 'Orthura' of ancient geographers, for which Colonel Yule's Map of Ancient India gives *Ureiyour*, and Professor Lassen's Wadiur"

#### 6 On Arkatos—(p 64)

Branfill, who takes this to designate a place and not a king, says (p 11)—"Ārkâd or Ārukâdu=six forests, the abode of six Rishis in old times There are several places of this name in Tanjore and S Arcot, besides the town of 'Arcot' near 'Vellore' (*Ἀρκατῶν βασιλείου Σῶρα*) One of these would correspond better than that with Harkâtu of Ibn Batuta, who reached it the first

evening of his march inland after landing from Ceylon, apparently on the shallow coast of Madura or Tanjore (fourteenth century)"

### 7 On the River Adamas—(p 71)

Professor V Ball, in his Presidential Address to the Royal Geological Society of Ireland (read March 19, 1883), says—"The *Adamas* River of Ptolemy, according to Lassen's analysis of the data, was not identical with the Mahanadi, as I have suggested in my 'Economic Geology' (p 30), but with the Subanrikha, which is, however, so far as we know, not a diamond-bearing river, nor does it at any part of its course traverse rocks of the age of those which contain the matrix in other parts of India. This *Adamas* River was separated from the Mahanadi by the Tyndis and Dosaron, the latter, according to Lassen, taking its rise in the country of Kokkonaga (*i.e.* Chutia Nagpur), and to which the chief town Dosara (the modern Doesa) gave its name. But, according to this view, the Dosaron must have been identical with the modern Brahmini which in that portion of its course called the Sunk (or Koel), included a diamond locality. I cannot regard this identification as satisfactory, as it does not account for the Tyndis intervening between the Dosaron and Mahanadi, since, as a matter of fact, the Brahmini and Mahanadi are confluent at their mouths. Lassen, however, identifies the Dosaron with the Bairunc, and the Tyndis with the Brahmini. This destroys the force of his remark, as to the origin of the name of the former, since at its nearest point it is many miles distant from Doesa."

## 8 On Mount Sardônyx—(p 77)

Professor Ball in the address above cited, says — “The sardonyx mines of Ptolemy are probably identical with the famous carnelian and agate mines of Rajpipla, or, rather, as it should be called, Ratanpur”

## 9 On Talara—(p 90)

Branfill suggests the identification of this with Tellâr or Tillârampattu (p 8)

## 10 On Pounnata—(p 180)

“Punâdu, Punnâdu, or Punnâta, as it is variously written, seems also to be indicated by the Pan-nuta in Lassen’s Map of Ancient India according to Ptolemy, and by the Paunata of Colonel Yule’s Map of Ancient India, *ubi beryllus*” This place is about 70 miles to the south-east of Seringapatam

## 11 On Arembour—(pp 180, 182)

Branfill—(p 8), identifies this with Arambaûr

## 12 On Abour—(p 184)

Branfill (p 11), identifies this with “Avûr, cow-villa, a decayed town, 5 miles S W of Kambâkônam, with a temple and a long legend about a cow(â) May not this be the ancient Abur of the Map of Ancient India in Smith’s Classical Atlas? Colonel Yule suggests Amboor, but this Avûr seems nearer, and if not this there are several places in S Arcot named Amur”

## 13 On Argyrê—(p 196)

Professor Ball says — ‘There are no silver mines in Arakan, and considering the geological structure of the country, it is almost certain there never were any I have been recently informed by General Sir A Phayre that Argyrê is

probably a transliteration of an ancient Burmese name for Arakan. It seems likely therefore that it was from putting a Greek interpretation to this name that the story of the silver-mines owed its origin."

#### 14 On the Golden Khersonese—(p 197)

"Gold," says Mr Colquhoun (*Amongst the Shans*, p 2), "has been for centuries washed from the beds of the Irrawadi, Sitang, Salween Mekong, and Yang-tsi-kiang rivers." The gold reefs of Southern India which have of late attracted so much notice are he points out, but outerops of the formation which extends on the surface for thousands of square miles in the Golden Peninsula.

#### 15 On the Loadstone rocks (p 242)

Professor Bill thinks these rocks may possibly be identified with certain hill-ranges in Southern India which mainly consist of magnetic iron (*Economic Geology of India*, p 17)

#### 16 On the sandy deserts of Baktria (p 270)

In the *Proceedings* of the Royal Geographical Society for April last will be found a description of the Kara Kum sands, by M Paul Lessar, who divides them into three classes. The *burkans* which form his 3rd class are of the nature described by Curtius. The sand is wholly of a drifting nature, the slightest puff of wind effaces the fresh track of a caravan." He notices a place in the Khanate of Bokhara where whole caravans have been buried.

#### 17 On the river Ochos (p 273)

"What hitherto has been taken for the dry bed of the Ochus is not the bed of a river, but merely

a natural furrow between sand-hills Thus the bed of the Ochus has still to be discovered" *Proceedings of the Royal Geog Socy for April, 1885*

18 On the Avestic names of rivers, &c in Afghanistan—(pp 305–19)

In the 1st chapter of the Vendīdād the names are given of the sixteen lands said to have been created by Ahura Mazda Of these the following nine have been thus identified by Darmesteter in his translation of the Zend-Avesta, *Sacred Books of the East, Vol IV, p 2*) —

Zend name	Old Persian	Greek	Modern
Sughdha	Suguda	Sogdianē	(Samarkand)
Môuru	Margu	Margianē	Merv
Bâkhdi	Bakhtri	Baktra	Balkh
Harôyu	Haraïva	Areia	Hari-Rûd
Vehrkâna	Varkâna	Hyrkania	Jorjân
Harahvaiti	Harauvati	Arakhôtos	Harût
Haêtumant		Etymandros	Helmand
Ragha	Raga	Rhagai	Rai
Hapta hindu	Hindavas	Indoi	(Pañjâb)

Some of these and other names are examined in an article in *The Academy* (May 16, 1885, No 680), signed by Auriel Stein, from which the following particulars are gathered "We recognize the 'powerful, faithful Mourva' as the modern Merv, the 'beautiful Bâkhdi' as Balkh, *Haraêva* as Herât, the mountain *Vârtigaesa* as the Bâdhgês of recent notoriety The river *Harahvaiti* (Sansk Sarasvatî) has been known in successive ages as Arakhôtos and Arghand-âb, but more important for Avestic geography is the large stream of which it is a tributary, the 'bountiful, glorious Haêtumañt,' the Etyman-

Iros and Hermandus of classic authors, the modern *Helmand*?" A passage is quoted from the Avesta where eight additional rivers seem to be named "At its foot (the mountain Ushidao's, i.e. the Koh-i-Baba and Siah-Koh's) gushes and flows forth the *Hiastra* and the *Hvaspr*, the *Fradatha* and the beautiful *Harenanhaisti* and *Ustarati* the mighty, and *Uradha* rich of pastures, and the *Erci* and *Zarenumaisti*." The *Hia tra* Stein thinks may be the Khash-Rud, and the *Hiaspa* the Khuspās-Rud, both of which come from the south slope of the Siah-Koh and reach the eastern basin of the lagune where the lower course of the Helmand is lost "In Khuspās," he adds, "a place on the upper course of the Khuspās-Rud, we may recognize the town *Khoaspā* mentioned by Ptolemy in *Ariakhōsia*. The name *hiaspa* means "having good horses," and seems to have been a favourite designation for rivers in Iran. Besides the famous *Khoaspās* near Susa, we hear of another *Khoaspes*, a tributary of the *Kabūl River*." In Kāsh, a town on the Khāsh-Rud may be recognized the station called Cosata by the Anonymous Ravennas. The *Fradatha* is Pliny's Ophradus (i.e. ὁ Φράδος of the Greek original) and now the Farāh-Rud. The *Prophthasia* of Ptolemy and Stephanos of Byzantium is a literal rendering of *fradatha*, which in common use as neuter means (literally "proficiency"), "progress," "increase." The *Harenanhaisti* is the *Pharnacotis* of Pliny and now the Harrūt-Rud, which like the Farāh-Rud enters the lake of Seistān. *Farnahasti* has been suggested as the original and native form of *Pharnacotis*.

## 19 On the Griffins or Gryphons—(p 295)

Professor Ball in a paper published in the *Proceedings of the Royal Irish Academy*, 2nd Ser., Vol II No 6, pp 312-13 (Pol Lit and Antiq) says, "In the account which Photios gives of the Griffins, if we exclude from it the word *birds*, and for feathers read hair, we have a tolerably accurate description of the hairy black-and-tan coloured Thibetan mastiffs, which are now, as they were doubtless formerly, the custodians of the dwellings of the Thibetans, those of gold-miners, as well as of others. They attracted the special attention of Marco Polo, as well as of many other travellers in Thibet, and for a recent account of them reference may be made to Capt Gill's '*River of Golden Sand*'."

---





## NOTES.

Harahvaiti, Skr *Sarasvati*) Sir R. G. Bhandarkar derives it from the *Arkshadas*, the people of Mt. *Rikshoda* referred to in Pāṇini IV 3 91

P 35 Imaōs —The Himālayas

P 86 Aberia.—Skr *Ābhīra* आभीर।

*Barake* or *Baraca* (as Mr. Schoff spells it) has been connected with Dvārakā द्वारका, ( $20^{\circ} 22' N$ ,  $69^{\circ} 5' E$ ) It might be better, connected with the *Bāhlīkas* (through *Balhīka* and *Badhīka*) who were defeated by King Chandra after crossing the seven mouths of the Indus (तीर्णि सप्त मुखानि येन समरे सिंधोर्जिता वाङ्किका—Meherauli Pillar Inscription of Chandra in Fleet's Gupta Inscriptions)

*Mouths of the Indus* —The Inscription just quoted also refers to the seven mouths of the Indus But changes in the courses of the Punjab rivers (fully described in J A S B, 1886, Part II) make it impossible to identify correctly the mouths named by Ptolemy

P 37 Syrāstra —सुराष्ट्र (Su-rāshṭra "Good Kingdom") was the name of the Peninsula of Gujarat and also of its capital The latter has been identified with Junāgadh (Jirna-gad जीर्ण गढ or Old Fort), ancient Girinagara (Girnar) Read C A G, pp 697-99

P 38 Larikē —Lāta लाट is the Skr form in use It denotes the southern part of the Peninsula of Gujarat—the district between the Lower Māhī and Tāpi Sometimes it

extended to the N even beyond the Mâhi Its capital was Bhrigukachchha (Barygaza, Bharoch)

**The River Mophis** —The Mâhi The Greek form suggests that the older name was Mâbhi (The final S is the nominative singular Greek suffix) It is the Mais of the *Periplus* (p 39)

P 38 **Barygaza** —Modern Bharoch, Skr *Bhrigu-lachchha* (ભૃગુલાચ્છા),  $20^{\circ} 42' N$  and  $72^{\circ} 59' E$  The Skr word means *High Coast Land* and so the district really is But the traditional account is that it is so called because it was originally founded by the sage Bhrigu The *Divyâradâna* (pp 544-586) of the Mahâyâna Buddhists states that *Bhirulachchha* (the Buddhist form of the word) was so named because founded by *Bhiru*, a minister of the king of *Roruka* (probably Alor in Sindh) in *Sauvira*

**Gulf of Barygaza** —The Gulf of Cambay Cambay or Khambhat is connected with *Skambha*, the Vedic form of the word *Stambha*

P 39 **Difficulties attending the navigation** — The author of the *Periplus* writes “Those sailing to Barygaza pass across this gulf [of Cambay], which is three hundred stadia in width, leaving behind to their left the island [=Piram Island opposite the mouth of the Narmadâ ( $21^{\circ} 36' N$  ,  $72^{\circ} 21' E$ )] just visible from their tops toward the east, straight to the very mouth of the river of Barygaza , and this

river is called Nammadus (Narma-dâ नर्म-दा) This gulf is very narrow to Barygaza and very hard to navigate for those coming from the ocean , this is the case with both the right and left passages, but there is a better passage through the left Far on the right at the very mouth of the gulf there lies a shoal, long and narrow, and full of rocks, called Herone, facing the village of *Cammoni*, and opposite this on the left projects the promontory that lies before *Astacampra*, which is called Papica, and is a bad anchorage because of the strong current setting in around it and because the anchors are cut off, the bottom being rough and rocky " (Schoff's edition, pp 40-41 )

The Promontory of Papica is Goaphat or Gopinath Point in the Peninsula of Gujarat Astacampra is to be identified with *Hastakavapra* (mentioned in three Grants of Dhruvasena I of Valabhi), mod *Hathab* in the Gogha Taluka of Bhaunagar territory (I A , 1876, pp 204, 314, 1878, p 54) Hathab is now an inland village and not a port as it was in the days of the author of the *Periplus* Herone shoal is no doubt (as Mr Schoff remarks) the long bar at the eastern side of the gulf and *Cammoni* (the *Kamane* of Ptolemy) would be at the end of the promontory that lies to the N W of the mouth of the Tapti River, the entrance to the prosperous mediæval port of Surat

**Ariakē** — It might stand for the *Land of the Aryans* in contrast to the *Land of the Dravidians*, Damirike, located in the south Varāhamihira's Brhat Samhitā (XIV) mentions *Ārjala* together with *Cherya* (Cherala? ) and locates it to the Southern Division of India. Dr Indraji suggested *Aparānta*, an old name for the western coast (I A , VII, pp 259-263) Skr *Aparānta*=Pkr *Aaranta* But *Aaranta* or *Aranta* cannot be satisfactorily equated with *Aria[ke]*

The *Pcriplus* makes it to be the beginning of the kingdom of *Mambarus*. The latter name has been corrected as *Nambanus* and identified with the Śaka ruler *Nahapāṇa*. But as there is no agreement even in a single syllable, this suggestion has little value. Prof Aiyangar's suggestion (Beginnings of South Indian History) to take *Mambarus* as *Lambodara* (Pkr *Lamboara*) is better, for it requires the correction of the first letter only (The final "S" is the Nominate singular Greek suffix). *Lambodara* was one of the *Satakarnis* (or Andhra rulers) also known as the *Sāta rāhanas*—the *Sadincis* of Ptolemy and *Saraganes* of the *Pcriplus* wherein *Sundara* of the same family seems to be mentioned as *Sandances*.

P 40 **Soupara**, Mod Sopara ( $19^{\circ} 25' N$ ,  $72^{\circ} 41' E$ ), *Sūrpāraka* (सूर्पारक), its old name, occurs in the *Mahābhārata* and the

*Puranas* as a holy place connected with *Paraburāma*

Ophir — In the account of the Ophir trade given in the Bible (I Kings, ix, 26-28, I Kings, x, 11, II Chronicles, viii, 17, and ix, 10) the products mentioned, such as gold, ivory, apes, peacocks, being stated in their Indian names, scholars have attempted to locate Ophir somewhere in India. Dr McCrindle's opinion that it is identical with Soupara is not at all satisfactory. For how to dispose of the initial *S*? If Ophir is to be located anywhere in India अभूर्, *Ābhīra* (mentioned as Aberia in page 36), has the greatest claim (Sanskrit *bh* is represented by Greek *ph*.)

But Biblical authorities nowadays are sufficiently sure in locating Ophir on the Arabian coast of the Persian Gulf. The Indian names of the products mentioned [Kophu कघि for apes, Tukhi-im (Toge in Malabar) for peacocks, etc.] prove only that the place was a trading centre with India.

P 41 Goaris — It may stand philologically for the *Godāri* (गोदारी) through its Phr form *Goāri*, the final *S* being the Greek nominative suffix.

P 42 Simylla — Modern Chaul ( $18^{\circ} 34' N$ ,  $72^{\circ} 55' E$ ) — the Chi-mo-lo of Yūan Chwang, and the Saimur of the early Mohammedan travellers (Schoff). We are not sure of its Sanskrit name.

P 45 **Baltipatna.**—The *Palæpatmæ* of the *Periplus* [The Skr form seems to be *Pârepattana* or the City on the Bank] Probably modern Dâbhol ( $17^{\circ} 35' N$ ,  $73^{\circ} 10' E$ ) which is of considerable historical importance, being the principal port of the South Konkan

P 45 **Ariake of the Pirates.**—Mr Campbell's suggestion that *Ariâkê 'Arðpâv Ïeipatâv* ought to be taken as the *Ariake of the Andhrabhrityas* because Ptolemy does not mention anything of *Piracy* in this part of the country causes one to examine the matter well Philologically Campbell's equation is not impossible As for piracy in this coast, Pliny (VI, 26) has referred to the pirates which frequent this place The *Periplus* (p 44, Schoff's edition) also does the same These facts make it probable that the coast might have thus got this name of *Pirate Ariake* Ptolemy does not mention anything of piracy, because it was then stopped The father of the well-known Red-Chera destroyed *Kadambu* of the sea-coast—piratical rendezvous of the tribe who became the Kadambas—and thus the coast was freed of pirates from A D 80 to A D 222 [Aiyangar's Beginnings of South Indian History, pp 151-2, 229, 233]

P 47 **Mandagara** —The *Periplus* locates it before *Palæpatmæ Bânkut* ( $17^{\circ} 59' N$ ,  $70^{\circ} 3' E$ ) is at the mouth of the Sâvitri River

*Byzanteion* —Probably the modern Viza-

drog (किंचयदुर्ग,  $16^{\circ} 33' N$ ,  $73^{\circ} 20' E$ ) described as one of the best harbours on the Western Coast

**Khersonēsos** —“Peninsula” in Greek. It is the projecting point at the modern Kārwār ( $14^{\circ} 49' N$ ,  $74^{\circ} 8' E$ )—the tongue of land at the mouth of the Kālī Nadi in North Kanara just opposite to Oyester Rocks

P 48 **Nitra** —Mr Schoff takes it to be identical with the *Nitras* of Pliny (VI, 26) and the White Island (Lieuke) of the *Periplus* —the modern Pigeon Island ( $14^{\circ} 1' N$ ,  $74^{\circ} 16' E$ ), also known as *Nitrān*

Mr Aiyangar takes it as identical with the *Naura* of the *Periplus* and supports Mr Yule’s identification of the latter with Mangalore and notes that the latter is at the head of the delta of the rivers *Netravati* and *Gurupa* (Beginnings of S I History, pp 230-231). Thus its name is still preserved in that of the river *Netravati*.

Mr Schoff located *Naura* at Cannanore

P 49 **Limyrikē** —So it has been spelt in the *Periplus* also

P 56 **Tyndis** —It has been described in the *Periplus* as ‘‘Kingdom of Cero-bohra’’ (चेर-पुच c Kerala) Mr Schoff locates it at *Ponāni* ( $10^{\circ} 48' N$ ,  $75^{\circ} 56' E$ ) Dr Burnell and Mr Aiyangar (Beg S I History, p 231) prefer *Kadalundi* near *Beypore* ( $11^{\circ} 11' N$ ,  $75^{\circ} 49' E$ ) *Tyndis* stands for Dravidian *Tondi*

P 51 Brâhmaṇaī Magoi —The *Maga-Brâhmaṇas* have been referred to They are the Magi or the priests of Zoroastrianism who migrated to India from *Sâka-dvîpa* or the Land of the *Sakas* They naturalized themselves in India and got the rank of *Brâhmaṇas*, though their foreign origin was remembered and was the cause of their being treated as not “pure” or rather as “degraded” Brahmins They are the priests in Jain Temples and in temples dedicated to the *Images of dead kings* (being the modern representative of the *Pratimâ* of the play of the same name ascribed to Bhâsa) in Râjaputana where they are known as the *Seikas* In Bihar the *Śâladvîpis* are Ayurvedic physicians, and in Bengal they are astrologers [For Weber's Über die सगवक्ति (of ऋषदास मित्र) see I A , VIII, 1879, p 328 ]

Mouziris —Muyiri-Kotta or *Musiri* Its identification with *Kodungalur* or Cranganore ( $10^{\circ} 14' N$ ,  $76^{\circ} 11' E$ ) is certain Musiri has been described in Dravidian literature as the place ‘to which came the well-rigged ships of the Yavanas [Greeks], bringing gold and taking away spices in exchange’ It was the port of Vanji (the ancient capital of the Kerala countr.), also called Karuvûr (mod Parûr or Paravûr,  $10^{\circ} 10' N$ ,  $76^{\circ} 15' E$ ) [Aiyangar's B S I H, p 135, Schoff p 205 ]

P 52 Pseudostomos —This ‘false mouth’ is

known in Dravidian literature as *Alerukkam* (Aiyanger's A I , p 60)=Skr *Alikā-Mulham*

*Bakera*—Modern Parakād ( $9^{\circ} 22' N$ ,  $76^{\circ} 22' E$ ) which was once a notable port  
The Portuguese, and subsequently the Dutch had settlements at Parakād  
(Schott, pp 211-212)

P 53 *Aiol*.—It has no connection with Skr *Ahi* (अहि) "Serpent" as suggested by Dr McCrindle It is the Dravidian *Aay* The chieftaincy of *Aay* was round the Polyil hill in the Western Ghats, to the south of the Palghat Gap and to the west of Tinnevelly (Tiru-Nelachi) It was included within the kingdom of the *Pāndya* (Aiyangar's B S II, pp 126-8)

P 54 *Melkynda*.—*Neacyndi* of Pliny, *Nelynda*, of the *Periplus*, *Nineylda* of the Peutinger Tables Fabriew<sup>s</sup> thinks this name to be connected with *Nilakantha* नीलकण्ठ, a name of *Siva* Dr Caldwell prefers "Melkynda" which he translates  
" "

being uncertain because of the frequent shifting of the riverbeds, sand-bars and islands, but certainly very near the modern *Kottayam* ( $9^{\circ} 36' N$ ,  $76^{\circ} 31' E$ ), which is exactly 500 stadia, or 50 miles, from Cranganore (p 208)

P 55 **Bammala**—There is no reason to identify it with the Balita (of the *Periplus*)—probably mod *Varkkallai* ( $8^{\circ} 42' N$ ,  $76^{\circ} 43' E$ ), a place of considerable commercial importance and celebrated for its temple of *Janârdana*

P 57 **Country of the Kareoi**—Prof Aiyangar (B S I H, p 122) states that *Kareoi* stands for Tamil *Karai* or *Karaiyar*, a class of fisher-folk. The pearl-fisheries worked by condemned criminals have been noticed in the *Periplus* (p 46)

P 58 **Kolkhoi.**—*Kolker* or *Korker* ( $8^{\circ} 40' N$ ,  $78^{\circ} 5' E$ ) means ‘an army, a camp’. It has been Sanskritized as “Karka” (कर्क). *Kayal* means ‘a lagoon’

*Korkei* was the cradle of South Indian civilization—the place where, according to tradition, the three eponymous brothers *Cheran*, *Cholan* and *Pândyan* were said to have been born and brought up, and whence they set forth to form their kingdoms (Subrahmanya Aiyer’s Ancient Dekhan)

P 59 **Land of Pandion**—The country of the *Pândyas* corresponds to Madura and Tinnevelly (Tiru-Nelveli) districts, Travancore and parts of Coimbatore and



- P 65 Arouarnoi.—Its Tamil original is *Aruvalar* (divided into *Aruvānādu* and *Aruvā Vada Talai* or Northern *Aruva*) close to the mouth of the *Krishnā* river
- P 67 Pôdoukê.—Bohlen, Ritter, Benfy, Müller, McCrindle, Fabricius and Schoff take it to be Pondicherry (= *Pudu Chcheri* "New Town,"  $11^{\circ} 56' N$ ,  $79^{\circ} 49' E$ ) Aiyangar considers it doubtful Yule and Lassen prefer Pulikat ( $13^{\circ} 25' N$ ,  $80^{\circ} 19' E$ )  
*Geog of Anc Ind*—Pp 539-40 of the original edition correspond to pp 617-18 of my edition
- Maisolia —Masalia of the *Periplus* The identification of the Maisalos with the *Krishnā* is almost certain Its name preserved in Masulipatam ( $16^{\circ} 11' N$   $81^{\circ} 8' E$ )
- P 70 Jagannâtha Katikardama —It is a printing mistake Katikardama is to be taken with the next paragraph with a colon and dash after it
- P 71 Dosarôn —Dosarene of the *Periplus* (p 47) is the district through which flows this river Skr *Dasârna* दशार्ण mentioned by Kâlidâsa in the famous passage of the Meghadûta (तथासद्गे परिष्ट-फल-ध्याम-जमू-वनाना सम्पत्यन्ते कतिपय-दिन स्थायि इषा दशार्ण ) has been repeatedly referred to in Sanskrit literature and the river flowing through it—*Daśarnâ* (दशार्ण)—is still known as the Dasân or Dhasan (between the Betwa and the Ken) But that *Daśarnâ* is not on the east coast as

the account of the *Periplus* and of Ptolemy requires. As for the eastern *Dasārnas* the *Kūrma-vibhāga* of the *Bṛhat Samhitā* (XIV) and of the *Mārkandeya Purāna* (LVIII, 18) mentions them together with the *Katala-sthalas* (people of Cuttack?) and *Sārasas*, etc. Thus their land is Orissa, and most probably it was a colony of the *Dasārnas* on the river Dasan.

P 71 Sippara — Yule's suggestion that it is *Sūrpāraka* (शूर्पारक) is not to be accepted. *Sūrpāraka*, the abode of *Parasu-Rāma*, was on the western coast and it has been correctly identified with Soupara (p. 40).

The only name with a similar sound with which it can be connected is the *Sūrpārarnas*, a tribe with 'ears as big as the winnowing-fan,' located in the *Kūrma-vibhāga* of the *Bṛhat Samhitā* (XIV) and of the *Mārkandeya Purāna* (LVIII) in the eastern division.

#### (Pp 75-81) A LIST OF INDIAN MOUNTAIN-RANGES

Ptolemy has mentioned seven mountains only. As for his *Ouindion* (*Vindhya*), *Ouxenton* (*Rikshavati* रिक्षवाति), *Oroudian* (*Vaidurya*), and *Adeisathron* (*Adri-Sahya* or *Sahyādri*), we know the Sanskrit names. But that is not the case with the other three.

*The Apokopa* or 'Punishment of the Gods' has been identified with the

Aravalı mountains 'Apokopa' has been taken to be a Greek word meaning 'what has been cut off'. But my idea is that it is an Indian word which has been turned into the Greek form on account of their similarity of pronunciation. And I identify *Apolopa* with *Apakara* mentioned by Panini in the Sutra (IV 3 32) सिन्धुरकाम्यान् कर्. The *P* of the last syllable might have been changed either to give a Greek etymology or

of it in the following Śloka of the *Rāyanighantu*, an Āyurvedic work.—

मस्तयाद्वि-समीपस्या पर्वता वेष्ट-सञ्जका ।

तज्जात चन्दन यजु वेष्टवाञ्च क्षचिनमै ॥

Here we find the location of a sandal-producing *Bella*-mountain near the Malaya mountains.

**Vaidūrya** —This chain has been mentioned in the *Mahābhārata* (Vana P LXXXVII, 8343, LXXXIX, 8354-61, CXXI) which states that the Pandavas in their pilgrimage went from Vīdarbha, across these mountains, to the River Narmadā. Thus the range seems to be the Satpura range or a portion of it.

*Vaidūrya* means Lapis lazuli and the range was so called evidently because the costly stone was to be obtained there.

#### (Pp 81-96) RIVERS OF THE INDUS-SYSTEM

The river Sindhu (Indus) has supplied India with her two names—*Hindu-stan* and *India Sindhu* (or *Sindhu-s* in the Nominative form) was pronounced with H instead of S by the Persians. Now the Greeks borrowed the word from the Persians and wrote it as '*Ινδος*', there being no H in their alphabet. Thus *Sindhu* was changed to *Indus* and from the latter was derived *India*.

As for the western tributaries of the Indus, Ptolemy mentions the *Koa* and the *Souastos*. The *Koa* is the Vedic *Kubhā*

(modern Kabul river) *Kophes* of other classical writers has been derived directly from *Kubhâ* (*Rigveda*, X 75) The form *Koa* comes through the usual Prakrit form of *Kuhâ* [It has been mentioned as *Kuhu* in the *Kāvya-mīmāmsâ*, pp 93-94 ]

The Souastos is the *Suvâstu* (सु-वास्तु “Good Dwelling”) of the *Rigveda* (VIII, 20, 37), *Pâṇini* (IV 2 77) and the Epic and Purânic Literature.

As it has been mentioned in the *Rigveda* as *Suvâstu*, the *Svetî* of the *Nâdi-stuti* (*Rigveda*, X. 75) seems to be a separate river It seems to be a river having for its source the *Śveta*-mountain or *Safed-koh*

*Bidaspê* (Hydaspes of other classical writers) *Vitastâ* (*Vitashâ* or *Vitasihând* of the Vedic Literature) is now known as the Jhelum—probably derived from *Jalam* (=water) [V de Saint Martin in his *Geographie du Veda*, pp 33-34 ]

The Sandabal (Sandabaga<sup>2</sup>) stands for the *Chandrabhâgâ* (चन्द्रभाग)—the modern Chenâb—the Vedic *Aśiknî* (“black”) and classical *Akesines*

The Adris or Rhouadis is the *Irâvalî* (इरावती, modern Râvi) which was known in the Vedic age as *Parushnî* (परुष्णी)

The Bibasis is the *Vipâshâ* (Beas) also spelt as *Vipât* (in the Vedic Literature and *Amarakosa*, I, ii, 3) Yâska notes that it was also known as *Uruñjirâ*

The Zaradros is the Satlej The Vedic form of its name is *Śuludri* (*Rigveda*,

X, 75) The later forms are *Sitadru* (Amara-kosha, I, 11, 3) *Śatudri* and *Śatadru* the last one being the common form in the later Literature

(Pp 96-102) THE GANGES AND HER TRIBUTARIES

The *Diamunâ* is the *Yamunâ* (यमुना from यम “twin”)—modern Jumna

The *Sarabos* is the *Sarabhu* of Pali literature (Vinaya, Chulla, 9, 1, 3 and 4 Milinda, 4, 1, 35), Sanskrit *Sarayu* and modern Ghogra The Greek and Pali spelling clearly indicates that the original form was *Sarabhu* *Sarayu* comes through the Pkr form of *Sirahu* The modern name of Ghogra is to be connected with an Onomatopœic name of *Gharghara* which has been used, in the *Matsya Purâna* (XXII 35 of the Bangabâsi Ed.), for this river

The *Soa* is the *Sona* (सोण) also called *Hiranyavâha* (Bânabhatta)—the *Eranna boas* of Arrian

P 100 The *Damudâ* —It is the Dâmodar

(Pp 102-104) OTHER RIVERS

The River *Namados* is the *Narmadâ* (नर्मदा) which rises in the *Ouindion* or *Vindhya*

The *Móphis* is the *Mahi*

The *Nânâgouna*—(नानागृष्ण?) The *Tâpti* (?), see p 48

The *Goaris* has been identified with the *Godâvarî* (Pkr *Goâari*)

The *Bindâ* is, according to Yule, the *Bhimâ*

As for the other rivers they have been already noticed, the *Pseudostomos* in p 52 the *Baris* in p 53, the *Sólín* (Támraparnī?) in p 59, the *Khaberos* (Kévery) in p 65, the *Tyna* in p 66, the *Mausolos* (Krishnā) in p 67 (and notes), the *Man(a)da* in p 69, the *Toundis* in p 70, the *Doráson* and the *Adamas* in p 71

(PP 104-187) THE TERRITORIES AND PEOPLES  
OF INDIA CLASSIFIED ACCORDING TO  
RIVER-PASSES



*Kunindas* (*Vāyu*, II, 36, 106) who are, according to Cunningham (Arch Surv Rep XIV, 116, 125-30), the modern Kunets who occupy Kullu and the Simla hills and the slopes below, along both sides of the Sutlej. The description of the *Mahābhārata* as to the conquest of Arjuna (Sabhā P XXV, 996, LI, 1858-9, and also Vana P CLXXVII, 12350) indicates that the Kulindas extended further east along the southern slopes of the Himalayas as far as Nepal. A few of their old coins also have been discovered.

P 110 *Goryaia* or the territory of the *Gureans* invaded by Alexander was washed by the R. Gouraios—the *Gaurī* (गौरी) of the *Mahābhārata*—the modern R. Panjkora. To the E of this river was the Assakenoi, the *Aśmaka* (अश्मक) of *Pānini* (IV 1 173).

P 112 *Kaisana*—Read C A G, pp 31-35 (of my edition). As for Barborana, it seems to be identical with *Varvara*, *Barvara* or *Barbara*, the name of a nation mentioned with the *Daradas* in the *Mārkandeya Purāna* (LVII, 39) and with the *Sakas* and *Yavanas* in the *Mahābhārata* (Sabhā, XXXI, 1199, Vana, CCLIII, 15254, etc.)

P 113 *Nagara*.—Fa Hian (Chap XIII) calls it *Nagara*.

The Records of Yūan Chwang name it Na-ki-lo-ho=“Nagarakot” (according to Watters, vol I, pp 182-7) which has been mentioned by Alberuni (vol II, p

11) The Skr name of *Nagarahāra* occurs in the *Parāśara Tantra* (quoted by Utpala in his commentary on *Bṛhat Samhitā* XIV) and in a Pāla record (*Gaudalekhanālī*, vol. I). It was, according to Yüan Chwang, subject to Ka pi-shih—Skr *Kāpisi* (कापिष्ठि) mentioned in Panini IV 2 १७ as famous for its grape wine *Kāpiṣṭāyanī Surā*, referred to in Kautīhya's *Arthaśāstra*, Book II, Chap. XXV. Thus the original name is (कापिष्ठि) *Kāpisi*, and not *Kapisa* which is being used (on the authority of classical writers) since the days of Cunningham.

P 116 The Gandatal —The oldest form of the Skr name is *Gandhāra* (राज्य of the *Rājanya*) The later form is *Gāndhāra* (गान्धर्व) The old Persian form of the name was *Gā(n)dāta* [Camb H I, p. 327] Its oldest capital was *Pushkalārati* which is said to be so named after *Pushkala*, a son of *Bharata*, the brother to *Rama* [तद मध्यस्थाया यु उष्म्यम् उष्म्यमाते । गच्छ राज्यं गान्धर्वाणि च च । *Ramāyana*, *Uttarakānda*, CXIV, 11] It is the Proklais of Ptolemy It has been identified with Char-ada [described in CASR II, p. 90, XIX, pp. 96-110, ARAS 1 1902-3, pp. 140-151], one of the eight cities of "Hasht Nagar" The other capitals of *Gāndhāra* were *Purushapura* (mod Peshawar), the capital of Kanishka and *Udabhāndapura* (उद्धांडपुर) or *Waihand* (वाहन्द) mentioned by Alberuni.

P 118 Arsa.—Skr *Uraśā* (उरशा), the *Arsakes* of Alexander's Historians, the Wu-la-shi of Yüan Chwang and the modern district of Hazara to the W of Kashmir [Sir A Stein in his Topography of Kashmir appended to the second vol of his Translation of the *Rājataranginī*] Ptolemy states that one of its cities was Taxiala—Skr *Takshaśilā* (तक्षशिला) The name is derived from that of *Taksha*, a son of *Bharata* the brother to *Rāma* [The passage of the *Rāmāyana* has already been quoted under *Pushkalāvatī*] But these two sons of *Bharata*, *Taksha* and *Pushkala*, are rather shadowy persons and as such we are not sure as to the actual historical character of these two eponymous heroes The word *taksha* means 'to cut off' and Pali "Sila" (from Sanskrit *Śiras*) means 'head' and this popular etymology explains the Buddhist legend that the place is so called because Lord Buddha made an alms-gift of his head in this place *Śilā* means "rock" in Sanskrit and so the word may mean "Hewn Rock"—it being built of that material instead of brick and mud The other plausible derivation of the word is to take it as "the Rock of *Taksha(ka)*, King of the *Nāgas*, who killed *Parikshit* This account is supported by the facts that the *Mahābhārata* (Ādi P III, 682-3, 832-4, XL-XLIV, XLIX, 1954, L 1991) states that *Janamejaya* the son of

*Parikshit* (evidently to retaliate the death of his father) invaded *Takshasilā* and conquered it and that the *Takkas* (who held all the country around it and are now to be found in Jammu, Kishtwar, etc.) claim their descent from *Takshaka Nāga*. The biting by *Takshaka* thus, probably, symbolises the destruction of *Pāndava* power owing to the inroads of the *Takkas* whose stronghold was *Takshasilā*. [Tod in p. 9 of his *Rājasthān* records the *Takkas'* descent from *Takshaka*, Cunningham in A S R., II, p. 6, notes their modern habitation.]

The city has been identified by Cunningham with the ruins near *Shah-dheri* (which means 'Royal Residence') about 12 m N W of Rawalpindi. Here have been found colossal statues, thousands of coins, traces of at least 55 *stūpas*, 28 monasteries, 9 temples, a copper-plate containing the name of *Takshasilā* and a vase with *Kharosthi* inscription "the tope was erected at Taxila—" [C A S R., II, pp 111-35, III, 135, V, 66-75, XIV]. The ruins cover several miles and stretch up to Hassan Abdal (Attock district, Punjab). It has been recently excavated [Annual Rep. A S I, 1912-13, pp 1-5, *ibid*, Part I, pp 8-16, 1915-16, Part I, pp 10-12]. Sir John Marshall's Guide to Taxila describes the remains of three distinct cities located in the same valley watered by the Haro river. These are

situated immediately to the E and NE of Sarai-kala, a junction on the railway, 20 miles N W of Rawalpindi

Dr McCrindle is not correct in his statement that Alberuni makes no mention of this place. Alberuni has, in his 29th chapter, mentioned *Takshashila* (in his account of the *Kurma-tibhaga*) and re-

kot informed him that Sial-kot was originally called *Sâkala*, the capital of *Bâhika* country. The name Sial-kat was connected with the name of Râja Sâla (राजा साला the brother to Queen Mâdrî, the step-mother of Yudhîsthîra), the maternal uncle of the *Pândavas*. On the authority of this local tradition it (Sial-kot--the Kot or fort of *Salya*) has been identified with *Sakala* (Dr Fleet in the Proceedings of the 14th Oriental Congress )

- P 124 Boukephala —The long passage beginning with the last line of p 124 up to the 10th line of page 126 has been misplaced  
Read it just after the 8th line of p 124

Cunningham located *Boukephala* at Dilawar opposite Jalâlpur (C A G , p 192) V Smith located it at Jhelum. Here have been discovered many old coins, but not earlier than those of the Indo Scythian period, three iron tripods of Greek form, etc (C A S R II, pp 174–175 , XIV, pp 41–42) A point in its favour is that it is higher up and Alexander seems to have kept close to the hills. But it is not possible to decide the question with our defective documents' (Camb H I , p 361 )

- P 124 Kaspeiraioi —Read notes on Kaspeira in p 108

- P 126 Labokla —The account of the partition of Râma's empire as contained in the *Râmâyana* and the description of the cities of Râma's sons and nephews make it

clear that Lava's city cannot be identified with Lahore [Rāmāyana, Uttara, C-CVIII]

P 128 Thaneswar.—Its Skr name, as supplied by Bānabhalla (in his *Harsha-charita*) is *Sthānviśvara* (स्थानैश्वर) from *Sthānu* (God Śiva)+*īśvara* (Lord) Yūan Chwang describes Thaneswar as the westernmost country of the Buddhist Middle Country, whereas *Dīvyāvadāna* and *Mahāvagga* (V 13, 12) mention *Sthuna* or *Thuna* (a Brahman village or district) as its western boundary Hence I identify the two *Sthuna* and *Sthānu* seem to be different forms of the same word Such metathesis of vowels is found in Pali, or rather it has been done to have some meaning ascribed to *Sthuna* And when it is *Sthānu*, it is natural to add the word *īśvara* to it

P 128 Indabara.—The intermediate stages to derive it from Skr *Indra-prasīha*, are Pkr *Inda battha* (and not *Indra-battha*) and *Inda-bādha*

P 129 Modoura —It is Sanskrit *Madhurā* (so named after the *Daiya*-chief *Madhu* who and whose son *Lavana* reigned here before its conquest by *Satrughna*, the brother to *Rāma* [Hari V, LV, 3061-3, 3083-96, XCV 5243-7, Rāmāyana, Uttara, XXV, CVIII etc] *Mathurā* is the *Pāśāchī* Pkr form of it, though it has been re introduced into Sanskrit and is the form in actual use

*Madhurd* was the capital of the country of the *Sûrasenas* which was to the south of *Indra-prastha* (Mahâ Bh, Sabhâ P XXX 1105-6)

P 130 Jati-dhara —The correct spelling is *Jatâ-dhara* mentioned in the *Kûrma-vibhâga* (*Bṛhat Samhitâ*, XIV) but not in this locality A word of similar meaning is the *Dirgha-kesas* and they have been located by *Varâhamihira* here

P 131 Batangkaissara —Cunningham (CAG p 379) corrects the first letter (*B*) to *S* and identifies it with Thaneswar (*Sthân, viśvara*)

Passala.—I identify it with *Prasthala* mentioned in the *Mahâbhârata* (*Virâta* XXX, 971, *Bhîshma* LXXV, 3296-*LXXXVIII*, 3856, *Drona*, XVII, 691, etc.) in such a way that it seems to have been the district between Ferozpora, Pattiala and Sirsa The *Prastalas* (a northern nation) have been mentioned by *Parâsara* also (Utpala's Com on *Bṛhat Samhitâ*, XIV)

P 132 Nanikhai —The word may be connected with *Naimisha* (नैमिष) or *Naimishâranya*—modern *Nimkhar* on the Goomti (Go-matî, गोमती) some 20 miles to the S of Sitapur 27° 20' N, 80° 35' E The Skr *sh* (ष) is represented by *kh*—a *Vâjasaneyin* peculiarity of pronunciation preserved by the *Maithils* of North Bihar and in some parts of U P

P 133 Adisdara.—The oldest Skr name as sug-



at or near the very ancient site of Bahmanabad ( $20^{\circ} 50' N$ ,  $68^{\circ} 50' E$ )

P 148 **Barbarei.**—It is the *Barbaricum* of the *Periplus*—a great emporium of coral trade. This name is, in the opinion of Mr Schöff, the Hellenised form of some Hindu word. Now we know that this part of the country was occupied by the *Barbaras* mentioned in the *Purānas*, the *Mahābhārata* [Mārkandeya, LVII, 39, Mahābh, Sabhā XXXI, 1199, etc] and the *Bṛhat Samhitā* as a northern or a north-western nation. The commentary on *Kautilya's Arthashastra* mentions (1) the river *Srotasī* of the *Barbara* country, (2) and a lake named *Śrīghanta* in a corner of the sea of *Barbara* and adds that the river was a source of pearls and that *Alakanda*, famous for corals, stood on the above river (*Arthashastra*, Eng Translation, p 86, ft notes 7, 8, p 90, etc)

Now by combining these bits of information we find that the country of the *Barbaras* was in the W or N-W frontier of India and that it stretched up to the [Arabian] Sea. Through it flowed a river named *Srotasī*. In it was a lake not far from the sea, and *Alakanda* (<*Alakshandīā*, *Αλέξανδρεα*) stood at the mouth of the river.

The above description of *Alakanda*, famous (according to *Kautilya*) for corals, fits well with that of 'Alexander's Haven'



P 152 Binagara —It has been taken to be identical with the *Minnagara* of the *Periplus* (Schoff, p 37) *Minnagara* was a name given temporarily to several cities of India during the period of the occupation of the Scyths (the Śaka and allied tribes) After the collapse of the Indo-Skythian power these cities resumed their former names with their autonomy (Schoff, p 165) This *Minnagara* may be identified with Bahmanābād  $25^{\circ} 50' N$ ,  $68^{\circ} 50' E$

Note that Dr McCrindle is wrong in stating that Cunningham would identify it with Alor, for the latter identified it with Thatha (C A G , p 330)

Barygaza —(*Bhṛgu-kachchha*—mod Bharoch) on the Namados (*Narmaddā*), the city of Larikē (Lāta लाट) has already been noticed [Notes on p 38] The *Periplus* states that it *exported* spikenard (Skr जटामासी), costus (कुष्ठ) and a few other spices, ivory, agate, cotton and silk cloth, etc , and *imported* wine (Italian, Laodicean and Arabian), copper, tin, lead, coral, topaz, thin clothing, antimony, gold and silver coins, etc , and as *presents for the king*, costly vessels of silver, singing boys, *beautiful maidens for the harem*, etc [Schoff's Ed , p 42] A passage of the Mahābhārata (Sabhā, LXXVIII, 35-36 of Krishnāchārya's Ed शत् दासी-सहस्राणि कार्पसिकनिवासिनाम् । यामासान्वी दीर्घकेशी इमाभरण भूषिता । वल्लि च कृत्समादाय भाषकाङ्गो

नरपेम ।) seems to support the statement of the *Periplus* that Barygaza was the centre of importing white slaves

P 154 Ozene —Skr *Ujjayini* ('Victorious'), mod Ujjain ( $20^{\circ} 11' N$ ,  $75^{\circ} 47' E$ , in Gwalior State) It was famous for its celebrated temple of *Mahâkâla* also called *Kâlapriyanâtha* (The Cambay Plates, E I, vol VII, show that *Kâlapriyanâtha*, mentioned by *Bharabhu* in his dramas, is to be located here) It was the capital of *Pradyota*, the father of *Vâsavadattâ*, and of his family, and then of the viceroys of the Mauryas The *Periplus* (Schoff's Ed, p 42) states that it was formerly a royal capital Ptolemy informs us that it was the capital of *Tiastenes* (*Chaslana*) The descendants of him are known as the Saka Satraps They were conquered by Chandra-Gupta II. *Vikramâditya* the son of Samudra-Gupta In Yuan Chwang's time *Ujjayin*, was the capital of the *Kalachchuris* Then we find the *Paramâras* who governed it down to the time of its Moslem conquest

identity Prof D R Bhandarkar identifies this Minnagara with Mandasor, the first part of which seems to preserve the name of the Mins, whereas the second part (Dasor) stands for Skr *Datapura* (Ten cities i.e., a town of ten suburbs) mentioned in many epigraphic records and famous for its 'Sun-temple' and Yasodharman Pillar inscriptions Prof D R Bhandarkar takes it to be the capital of Nahapâna (I A 1918, pp 77-78, 1926, p 143)

**Nasika** — Nasik is on the upper valley of the Godâvari river It is the *Nâsikya* of the *Mahâbhâshya* (I A 1893, p 113, 1894, p 28) The name is said to be derived from the fact that the *nâsika* (nose) of *Surpa nakhâ* was chopped off here, it being the *Panchatati* of the *Râmâyana* [But Mr Pargiter, in his Geography of Rama's exile, has shown that the *Panchatati* is to be located somewhere else—J R A S, 1894, p 231 *f*] Some five miles to the south of it is Pandu Lena or the 'Trirashmi' hill with a series of Buddhist caves with many inscriptions of the *Andhras*, *Kshatrapas* and others [E I, VIII, C A S R, IV, Archaeological Survey of India, N I S vol XVI p 45]

P 157 **Pulindî** — The Pulindas have been located to the S and W also [Marlandeya, LVII] They are the aboriginal tribes occupying portions of the Aravalli hills

The *Kathai* were the *Kanthas* (*Pânini* II, 4, 20) or the *Krahas* (*Mahâbhârata*, VIII, 85, 16). To take it as 'Kshatriyas' as has been done by Dr McCrindle and in the Camb HI (vol I, p 371) is not very satisfactory. For the word *Kshatriya* does not refer to any particular nation or tribe, but is the common name for all the warrior tribes or castes.

As for *Sangala* and *Sâkala* see notes on p 122. The *Madras* (मद्रा) or *Bâhikas* (बाहीक, from बहिः—the outsiders, i.e those who live outside the Land of the Aryan) were the tribes whose capital was *Sâkala* or Sialkot [Mahâbh, Karna P, VII].

P 158 The *Tabasoi* are the *Tâpasas* mentioned in the *Vâyu Purâna* (II, 36, 106 of the 'Bibliotheca Indica' series) and *Kûrma Purâna* (Bangabasi Ed., CXIV, 49) as a western nation. Does it mean 'those who dwell on the banks of the *Tâpasi*'? And is *Tâpasi* an old form of the *Tâpi* or *Tapti*? The locality is not one of such sanctity as to account for a colony of ascetics (*tâpasas*) there. Hence I make this suggestion.

*Prapiôta*—The name seems to be connected with *Pâripâtra*, the western part of the *Vindhya*s.

P 159 *Rhamnai*—They were probably the *Ramanas* of the *Mahâbhârata* (Sabhâ P, IX 274) who seem to be identical with the

*Ramatas* or *Ramañhas*—a northern nation (Matsya CXIII, 42, Vâyu, XIV, 117), who seem to have migrated later

P 160 Kandaloi.—Yule identifies the word with *Kuntala*. The *Kunialas* have been mentioned in the *Bhîsma Parvan* list of the *Mahâbhârata* thrice and it seems that there were three nations of the same name. One probably occupied the country near Chunar (S of Benares) which Cunningham calls *Kuntila* (C A S R , XI, 123). Others were in the south. The word was, later, used in its wider sense, (e g *Kuntala empire*) to include the whole of the Dekkan plateau from the Satpura.

Ambastâ —The word is undoubtedly identical with Skr Amba shtha (अम्बष्ठा). An *Ambastha* king has been referred to in the *Autareya Brâhmaṇa* as the performer of an *Asvamedha* sacrifice. Pânini (VIII, 3, 97) also has mentioned them. Arrian locates the *Abastanoi* on the lower Akesines (Chinah). The *Mahâbhârata* (Sabhâ P , LII, 14-15) mentions them along with the *Sivis*, *Kshudrakas*, *Mâlavas* and other north-western tribes. They migrated, in a later period to the neighbourhood of Maikal hills (मेकला)—the source of the Nar-madâ—for the *Kûrmavibhâga* of the *Bṛhat Samhitâ* (XIV), and *Parâśara* (quoted by Utpala in his commentary on the above) mention them with the *Mekalas*. [The corresponding passage of the *Mârkandeya Purâna* corrupts मेकलाम्बष्ठ to मेखलामुष्ट ]

And Ptolemy also locates them in the same place Thence they have dispersed themselves to Bengal where they can still be traced

In the *Ambattha Sutta* (translated in the Dialogues of the Buddha, Part I) an *Ambastha* has been stated to be a Brahmin associated with a teacher *Pushkarasādī* ('Inhabitant of *Pushkalāvati* or Peukelao-tis' See p 115) The reference in the *Aitareya* and Arrian would make them *Kshattriyas* It thus seems that they were a tribe of *Brahma-Kshattriyas* (i e Brahmins by birth and Kshattriyas by profession), a word which actually occurs in the Deopādī inscription of Vijayasena, who is claimed by the *Ambasthas* of Bengal as one of their own caste

- P 161 Adeisathra — McCrindle takes this to be the second *Ahichchhatra* But we do not know of a second *Ahichchhatra* from any authoritative source The word stands for Skr *Adri-stha* (अद्रिस्थ) or 'mountain-dweller' and seems to be identical with the *Adraistoi* located by the historians of Alexander on the eastern side of the Hydrates or Ravi [In the Camb H I (vol I p 371) it has been taken to stand for अदृष्टा *Adhṛṣṭas*] The *Adraistoi* the *Mālavas* and the *Ambasthas* were in the Punjab during the period of Macedonian invasion, but they migrated thence afterwards—most probably because they were displaced by the later invaders—the

Śakas, Yuchis, Pathrians and others  
[See notes on p 165 ]

P 163 Bharāod —It is Bharaut famous for its Buddhist sculpture removed to the Calcutta Museum

P 164 The Paramāras are not of the same stock as the *Pauravas* (of *lunar* family) The traditional account of their origin is that their progenitor sprang from the body of the sacred cow of Vasistha while she was being carried away by Visvāmitra [मारथिला परान् धेनुम् आनिन्द्य च ततो सुनि । उवाच परमाराण्यं पार्थिवेन्द्रो भविष्यति] He is sometimes said to have sprung from an *Agni-Kunda* (fire—जज्ञे वीरोऽग्निकुण्डात् रिपुकुलनिधन यथकार्त्तक एव) to save the cow [Paramāra Inscriptions and Parimala Padma-Gupta's *Nava Sāhasāṅka Charita* ]

P 165 Adeisathroi —Dr McCrindle has remarked (p 161) that Ptolemy has disjoined *Adeisathra* from the territory of the *Adeisathroi* Now I am sure that Ptolemy disjoins them, because there is no real connection between the two That different words assume the same form is one of the rules of Etymology

*Adeisathra* is, as I have already remarked, अदिस्य *Adri stha* ('mountain-dweller'), whereas Mt *Adeisathros* being the source of the Khaberis (*Kâverî*) is certainly a portion of the Western Ghats, though misplaced by Ptolemy Hence *Adeisathros* is *Adri-Sahya* or the *Sahyâdri* (सह्याद्रि) *Adei* stands for *adri* in both the

cases *Sathros*, in the second case, stands for *Sahya*. Ptolemy has, very often, tried to restore the original mute aspirate softened into *h* in Prakrit and sometimes even in Sanskrit. Thus *Aḥi-chchhatra* is the *Adisvara* of Ptolemy, the river *Mahi* is the *Mophs*, the *Sarayu* (*y* for the *h* elided—the *Ya-sruti*) is the *Sarabas*. And here also, on the same analogy, he replaces the *h* of *Sahya* by *th*. Compare also *Brahmanai* for *Brahmana* in p 170. As for the *r* it has been inserted wrongly—it being a peculiarity of Ptolemy (Cf p 107 *Daradrai* for *Darada*, p 109 *Kylindrine* for *Kulinda*, p 116, *Proklaīs* for *Puslalā(ati)*, p 185, *Pityndra* etc.)

As the Adeisathros chain has been displaced, it is very difficult to locate the five towns mentioned by Ptolemy in § 71 and the identifications proposed in p 166 are very doubtful. But if *Panassa* is really to be located somewhere in Central India then, I would like to connect it with the River *Parasiñā*—the modern *Banas* a tributary of the *Chambal*—and the city is to be located on that river [For another *Panasa* see notes on p 151.]

P 168 **Mandalai**—The only way to evade the difficulty of including *Pa'cipuira* (*Patna*), the *Pahimbothra* of Ptolemy within the dominions of *Mawc'ru* is to take the word not as the name of the Province of *Mandalā* (a city on the *Narmadā*) but as the Sanskrit word *Mandalā* (मन्दल) of a

*Mandaleśvara* (the Lord of an empire) *Pātaliputra* was, after the Kānva dynasty, included within the *Mandala* (or dominion) of the *Andhras* or the *Sātakarnis* who controlled the kingdom of Magadha for a time. And Ptolemy seems to record here this fact in this vague way. Thus he (being a foreigner) was not able to distinguish between a proper noun and a common noun and has used the word "Empire" (*Mandala*) as the name of a district which was included within the 'Empire.'

- P 169 Sambalaka —Sambalpur, headquarters of the district of the same name in B & O
- P 169 Palimbothra —The Skr form is *Pātali-putra*. The modern name of *Pātnā* comes from the word *Pattana* ('city') and has no etymological connection with *Pātaliputra*. Lt-Col Waddel has shown (in his 'Report on the Excavations at Pātaliputra,' Calcutta, 1903) that nearly the whole of the site of the city is intact, much lies below Patna, Bankipur and the E I Railway, being buried at a depth of ten to twenty feet. The old city was on the north bank of the old Sona, but it was several miles distant from the Ganges which shifted later to the south. Dr Spooner's excavation (1912-13) has resulted in the discovery of traces of the Maurya "Hall of a Hundred Columns" (Annual Report ASI, 1912-13, Part I, pp 24-27, 1912-13, pp 53-86.)

P 170 Brāhmaṇai Magos — Noticed already (Notes on p 51) The *Magas* (मग, Gr *Magos*, Lat *Magus* in singular, *Magoi*, *Magi* in the plural) were, according to the Indian tradition recorded in the *Purāṇas* (*Kūrma* XLVIII, 36, *Mahābhārata*, *Bhīṣma* P also refers to them as *Mangas*) the *brāhmaṇas* (i.e priest) of the *Sāla-dīpa* (Saka-land). Herodotus (I, 101) states that the Magi were one of the six tribes of the Medes. Prof Moulton informs us that they were indigenous in the country where the Aryans (Zoroastrians) were im-

NOTES

Thus the *Magas* or *Mangas* (as spelt in the *Mahâbhârata*) were known to the Indians as the priests of the *Sâkas* (and not as the priests of the Zoroastrians, a rank which they got later). They migrated to India, most probably with the *Śakas* who established themselves in India. Colonies of the Magi might have migrated from the land of the Medes also, for the *Bṛhat Samhitâ XIV* mentions (a colony of) *Medas* (Medes) also in India.

The *Sâka-dvîpiya Maga Brâhmaṇas* (also called the *Āchârya Brâhmaṇas* or *Graha-Vîpras* of Bengal, the *Sevakas* of Râjaputana and *Sâkadvîpis* in Bihar and U P) are (like the Magi) astrologers, astronomers and physicians. They have naturalised themselves in India adopting Indian manners and customs. But still they have retained their old name. The description sons of the Brâhmaṇs that is Canarese Brâhmaṇs, whose forefathers married women of the country, would suggest to the reader of the (Sanskrit drama) *Mîchchhalatîka* that the epithet ‘*Kânelimâtah*’ (used in the *Śakâra*), clearly indicates that the word is to be taken in the sense of one whose mother is *Kâneli*, i.e. a Canarese woman (*Kâneli* (a Canarese woman) thus came to be used in a bad sense, because *Kânelimâtah* refers to ‘one of mixed blood’).

Similarly the other Dravidian ethnic names—*Chola* and *Chera* also—came to be used in bad senses Prof D R Bhandarkar has suggested in his Carmichael Lectures (1918) that the Sanskrit word *Chora* (thief) is identical with *Chola* used in a bad sense The word *Chera* (=Kerala) seems, in my opinion, to have been introduced into Sanskrit as *Cheta* (Pkr *Cheda*) meaning ‘servant’ *Cheta* is, evidently, not an Aryan word, not being found in any other family of the Indo-European speech Nor has it any good derivation in Skr [Uhlenbeck suggests its derivation, (through Pkr) from Skr ✓ chest (to attempt) ] Then the history of the word *Cheta* will be just analogous to that of “slave”—originally a *Slav* made captive by the Teutons

P 173 **Gangaridae** —The Sanskrit synonym was either *Gângâ-râshtra* dominion of the (lower) Ganges,’ or *Gangâ-Râdha*—the territory of the Ganges with Râdha (which is identical with *Suhma*) But these combinations were not in actual use in Indian Literature

As for Vardhana identified with Parthalis, it was *Paundra-Vardhana*, the E boundary of the ‘Middle Country,’ (J R A S , 1904, p 86) and mentioned repeatedly in Pâla and Sena inscriptions (E I , IV, 24, I A , XII, 251, etc ) It is Pandua ( $25^{\circ} 8' N$  ,  $88^{\circ} 10' E$  ) in the district of Maldah

The Skr form of Burdwan is वर्धमान which occurs in the *Kûrma-vibhâga* of the *Bṛhat Samhitâ* (XIV)

#### INLAND PARTS OF THE TERRITORIES ALONG THE WESTERN COAST

P 176 **Omenogara.**—The name sounds very much like Minagar or the city of the Mins or Śakas (See notes on pp 152, 156) It was situated at the head of the Nanaguna (which seems to refer to the names of two passes—the ‘Nana’ Pass and the ‘Guna’ Pass) It thus corresponds to the modern Junnar ( $19^{\circ} 12' N$ ,  $73^{\circ} 56' E$ ), in Poona district—*Jirnangara* (जीर्णनगर) or Old City—where there are some 150 caves (I A, VI, p 32) and as many as thirty inscriptions It was, according to Sir R G Bhandarkar, the capital of *Nahapâna* [E H D, p 33] and, as such, might be rightly named as the city of the Min [I A, 1926, pp 144-5] Not far from Junnar there is a river known as the Mina, and the valley watered by the river is still known as Minner [Ibid]

P 177 **Tagara** —It has been mentioned in the records of the *Silâhâra* princes as their originals eat (E I, III, p 269, etc) The *Periplus* mentions it as a very great city, about ten days' journey to the east of Paithâna Dr Fleet has shown that it is the modern ‘Ter’ or ‘Thair’ on a small river, the Thairna It ( $18^{\circ} 19' N$

$76^{\circ} 12' E$ ) is in the Naldrug district of the Nizam's Dominions, and about 95 miles., SSE of Paithana. Here is a very ancient Buddhist Chaitya, built of brick, now used as a *Vauhnara* temple. [J.R.A.S., 1901, p 537, 1902, p 230, A.S.R., 1902-3, p 205] Skr *Tagara*=Pkr *Tasra* (=Tar or Ter)

P 17d Hippokoura.—Kolhapur and Nasik are the two places with which it has been proposed to be identified. Viriyakura was the Asura king Gotamiputra (V. Smith, E.H.I., p 232, or his vicere, Bhav-



a merchant of *Champâ* (the capital of Anga) went M Levi has also pointed out that it has been mentioned in the Hâthigumphâ Inscription of Khâravela as *Pithuda*, a place which was ploughed down with a plough drawn by asses Now Ptolemy describes Pityndra as the metropolis of the *Maisoloi* who take the name from the River *Maisolos* which signifies the whole extent of the mouths of the *Godâvari* and the *Krishnâ* Herein is the river *Nagavali* also called *Langulia* [*Lângalî* or *Lângulînî*] of the Purânas—Mar LVII, 29, etc ] on which Chicacole stands The very name of the river is to be connected with *Lângala* (=plough) and it seems to perpetuate the memory of the unusual punishment of Khâravela

We cannot expect to find Pityndra, for it was destroyed by Khâravela a few centuries before Ptolemy who seems to have mentioned it on the authority of his old materials [I A , 1926, pp 145-46 ]

The original name of the city seems to be *Pṛthûda(ka)* [पृथुद(क)] “Much Watered,” which is also the name of a famous place (mod Pehoa) near Thaneswar [C A G , pp 385, 702 ] *Pihu[m]da* of the Jaina Sûtra and *Pithuda* may be easily derived from it As for Ptolemy’s spelling (Pityndra), there is no difficulty in explaining the “extra R ” (Read my notes on p 165 )

## (Pp 187-89) ISLANDS

P 188 *Milizegyris*.—It is the *Melizigara* of the *Periplus* (p 43) It has been identified by McCrindle, with the modern Jaigarh ( $17^{\circ} 17' N$ ,  $72^{\circ} 13' E$ ), formerly a port of some size, but now little more than a fishing-village It is not impossible that it may be the modern Râjâpur ( $16^{\circ} 34' N$ ,  $73^{\circ} 31' E$ ) to which Arab boats still trade direct (See Imp Gaz of Ind XIII, 379, XXI, 66) This is the *Sigerus* of Pliny The name seems to suggest *Malayagiri* (Schoff, p 201) ‘Malai’ is the Tamil for Hill

**Heptanesia** —These are the *Sesecrienae* of the *Periplus* and probably the modern Vengurla Rocks ( $15^{\circ} 53' N$   $70^{\circ} 27' E$ ) a group of rocky islets some three miles in length and nine miles out from the modern town of Vengurla, which was a port of considerable importance during the Dutch occupation in the 17th century [Imp Gaz of Ind XXIV, 307 Schoff, p 202]

**Lieuke** —The ‘White Island’ of the *Periplus* is the modern Pigeon Island ( $14^{\circ} 1' N$ ,  $74^{\circ} 16' E$ )

P 189 India beyond the Ganges means India to the N and E of the Ganges and Further India As for Ptolemy’s account of Further India and the Indian Archi-

pelago, it has been fully dealt with by Mr Gerini in his *Researches on Ptolemy's Geography* (published by the Royal Asiatic Society, London) and as such I have not commented on it. I only draw the attention of the reader to the following facts which clearly indicate that Further India and the Indian Archipelago were colonized by the Indians in a very remote age. A fourth century A.D. Pillar Ins.

Dynasty at that place \* These are the epigraphic proofs As for sculptures of Indian deities in Further India and extensive Buddhist ruins in Java, they are too well-known to call for any remark

P 212 Maroundai.—These cannot be connected, as Dr McCrindle has clearly noted, with the *Lampâla-Murundas* of Lamghan, for we find them in the north-west even during the reign of Samudragupta, as his Allahabad Pillar Inscription shows The word cannot be equated with "*Mundas*" as Dr McCrindle has done, for the loss of the second syllable cannot be explained

I propose to connect *Maroundai* with the *Maladas*, *Mâladas* or *Mânadas* of the Epics and *Purâñas* [*Mahâbhârata*, *Sabhâ*, XXIX, 1081-2, *Drona*, VII, 183, *Vâyu*, XLV, 122, *Mar* LVII, 43, etc] They are mentioned in the *Râmâyana* also (though in some editions the word is spelt as *Malajas*) as occupying the Shahabad district originally, but then dislodged from that place by the Demness Tâdakâ They seem to have migrated eastward and settled in the district of Maldah in Bengal The spelling of Pliny (Monedes) is almost identical with *Mânada* The *Molinda* of Megasthenes and *Maroundai* of our author are to be

---

\* Dr Vogel in *Overdruk int de Bijdragen tot de Taal en Volkenkunde van Nederlandsch Indie*, Deel 74, Aflevering 12, 1918

connected with *Malada*. The insertion of the nasal in the last syllable is an example of the Prakrit tendency of नन्तर-दिलात् नुम्. As for *R* for *L* in the second syllable, it is due to the "rhotacism" of certain Sanskritic dialects (e.g. Rig-vedic and Maithili).

Kondôta.—It seems to be connected with the *Gandali* on which it is to be based.

- P. 217. Takoraioi.—Is it this tribe which has been mentioned in a second or third century B.C. Brahmi inscription discovered at Basarî १२३° ५८' N., ९३° ११' E., near village of वेश्वरी—where there were: "वेश्वि ग्रन्थावाच तकोइ" ? Prop. ४२६ ल०  
संग्रह नं १२ ल० १, १७१-१२ वर्ष I,

identical with the modern Varunâ. Though Kâsi is the older name, it is not correct that Vârânâsi (and not Vâranâsi as has been wrongly spelt) was never used as a name for Benares.

P 230 **Tôsalei** —It is the city of *Tosali* mentioned in the inscriptions of Asoka and to be identified with the ruins of a city near Dhauli (in Orissa) where the edicts of Asoka have been discovered. *Tosali* or *Tosala* has very often been mentioned with *Kosala* (e.g. *Kâvyamîmâmsâ*, p. 93) which is the Mahâ-Kosala or the southern *Kośala* comprising the whole of the upper valley of the *Mahânâdi* and its tributaries, from the source of the *Narmadâ* on the N to the source of the *Mahânâdi* itself on the S and from the valley of the *Wengangâ* (W) to the Hasda and Jonk rivers (E).

P 231 **Trilingon** —The word seems to be connected with Trilinga, the Sanskritized form of Telugu and indicates that there was a colony of the Telugus in this part of the country.

P 251 **Taprobane** —The Skr form is *Tâmraparna* or *Tâmraparni* ('Copper-coloured leaf'), one of the Purânic nine divisions of Greater India (C A G., pp. 749-754). In *Kautilya's Arthâshâstra* (II, xi) it has been referred to as *Pâra-samudra* (an alternative form of which is, according to a sûtra of Pânini, *Pâre-samudra*) which means 'Of the other side of the Ocean'.

Now a confusion of *Pâre-samudra* and its synonym *Pâre-sindhu* produced the *Palae Simoundu* of the *Periplus* which means this island. In page 247 of our text we read 'which was called formerly *Simoundou*' Here *formerly* is evidently a mis-translation of the first part (*Palae*) of *Palae-Simoundou*.

*Salikê* is from *Simhala*

- P 256 **Malaia**, a designation of Adam's Peak [It is from the Tamil word "Mala" meaning 'hill'] It is known in Sanskrit Literature as the *Rohana* hill (*Râjatarangini*, III, 72)

(Pp 260-329) CENTRAL ASIA

- P 260 **Hyrkania** —It is the Greek name of the country known as *Vehrkâna* in Avestan and *Varkâna* in Old Persian (Sacred Books of the East, IV, p 2) The Avestan and Old Persian forms enable me to identify it with *Vokkâna* of Sanskrit Literature (e.g. Varâhamihira's *Bṛhat Samhitâ*, XIV 20, locating it to the western division, *Kâvyamîmâmsâ*, pp 93-94, etc.)

**Parthia** —The Parthians are known in Sanskrit Literature as *Pârthiva* (?) (Fleet's Gupta Inscriptions), *Pathrava* (*Nâtyasâstra*), *Pârada* and *Pahlava* (Manu)

- P 262 **Margianê** —It is the Greek name of the modern district of Merv which was known as *Margu* in Old Persian (Sacred Books

of the East, Vol IV, p 2) I propose to identify it with the country of the *Mārgaras* mentioned (in Brhat Samhitā, XIV, 18) with the *Yavanas* (Greeks)

P 268 **Tokharoi** —They are the *Tushāras* (तुषार), *Tuhkhāras* or *Tukhāras* of Sanskrit Literature (*Mahābhārata*, *Sabbhā*, L, 1850, *Vana*, LI, 1991, *Śānti*, LXV, 2429, etc *Rāmāyana*, *Kishkindhyā*, XLIV, 15, *Vāyu* XLV, 118, *Mar*, LVII, 39, etc The *Rājatarangini* mentions them repeatedly) The so called specimens of the ancient Tokharian dialects have now been discovered and they are now considered by Philologists as the lineal descendant of the now lost Primitive Indo-European language (Ursprache), for they exhibit the peculiarities of both the Asiatic and the European branches of the primitive speech The discovery of these dialects has thus given a rude shock to the theory of European origin of the Primitive Indo-Europeans whose cradle is now again being located in Central Asia [As for the alternative spellings *Tushāra* and *Tukhāra*, it is due to the *Vājasaneyin* peculiarity of pronouncing *sh* (ष) as *lh* (ळ)—a peculiarity which is to be met with in North Bihar (Mithilā) even now ]

P 272 **Oxos** —This is the Greek spelling for Oxus (the Latin form) which is referred to in Sanskrit Literature as *Vankshu(s)*, or *Chakshus*

P 274 Balkh — I am not sure if the word has any connection with Sanskrit *Bahlīka* though Lassen identified the two References in Sanskrit Literature clearly indicate the *Bāhlīkas*, or rather the two tribes of them, as dwelling in the Punjab. One of these tribes was closely connected with the *Madras*, for Salva king of *Madra* (with its capital at modern Sialkot), is also called lord of the *Bāhlīkas* (*Mahābhārata* Adi CXIII 4425-40, LXVII, 2642) and his sister *Madri* is called *Vatīlī* (also *Adi*, CXXV, 4856). The

of the East, Vol IV, p 2) The theoretical Sanskrit form from the Avestan is *Sugda* which seems to have been Sanskritized as the *Śūdra* mentioned in the *Bṝhat Samhitā* (XIV, 18) together with the *Yavanas* (Greeks), *Mārgaras* (Marganē) and other nations of this locality

P 275 *Kōmēdai* —It is the *Comeda* Mt of the *Purānas* (e.g. Kûrma, XLVIII, 3) which is in the *Plaksha* (according to Kûrma) or *Gomedaka* (Matsya, CXXIII) *Dvīpa*

P 281 Tribes of Sogdiana —Indian names in this list is to be accounted for by the migration of Indian tribes. But the *Takhoroi* were certainly the *Tukhāras* or *Tushāras* mentioned before (p 393)

P 283 The *Sakai* were the *Śakas* of Sanskrit Literature. Their land was known as the *Śākadvīpa* which has been described as divided into seven provinces one of which is *Kaumāra* (Matsya, CXXII, 22) which is certainly identical with the land of the *Komaroi* of Ptolemy. The priests of their land were the *Magas* or *Mangas* and the warriors were the *Maśakas* (Mahâbhârata, Bhîsma, chap XI, 36-37 of Krishnâchârya's edition). As for the Magas, they have been noticed already (p 381). The *Maśakas* were evidently the *Massagetae* of Ptolemy.

P 295 Ottorokorrhas —The name is certainly connected with the *Uttara-Kuru* (उत्तर कुरु) of Sanskrit Literature. Though the description of *Uttara-Kuru* (*Mahâbhârata*,

*Bhîsma-Parvan*) would make it rather an earthly Paradise, there is no reason to believe that it is a mythical land (as Dr McCrindle thinks, p. 305)

- P 304 **The Aspakanai** —Are they connected with the *Aspasias* of Alexander's historians? The Aspasias are the *Abrakas*, through the Iranian form of *Aspa* ('horse') [C A G p. 667]

**The Bautta of the Râjatarangini** —The correct spelling of the word is *Bhautta* (भृत्य) which means peoples of Tibetan descent

- P 308 **Ariana** —It seems to have been named in the *Râjatarangini* as *Āryana-lâ-desa*

- P 311 **The Koa** —The Vedic *Kubha*, the modern Kabul river

- P 314 **Drangianê** —Its inhabitants were called remarks Dr McCrindle, Drangai or *Zaran-gae*. The second name enables me to identify them with the *Jingas* (जिंगा of the *Bṛhat Samhitâ*, XIV, 21) mentioned with the *Sakas* [of Seistan]

- P 318 **By Massagetae** Stephanos meant the *Sakai* —I have already pointed out that the *Massagetae* were the *Maśaka* described in Sanskrit Literature as the warrior tribe of the *Śakas*

- P 321 **Port of Alexander** —It is the Barbaricum or Alexander's Haven

- P 322 **Rhamnai** —These are the *Ramanas*, *Rama-thas* or *Râmathas* of the Epics and Purânas (*Mahâbhârata*, Bhîsma, IX, 374, *Vâyu* XLV, 117, *Matsoya* CXIII, 42, etc.)

**Gynaiκōn Limen or Women's Haven.—**

While describing the eastern part of Makran, Huen Tsiang mentions a city, the Chinese name of which has been Sanskritized by Watters (Vol II, pp 257-58) as *Strīsvāra* or "Women Paramount" Thus Ptolemy has been supported by Huen Tsiang [A district known as *Strīrājya* outside India proper has been mentioned in the *Vātsyāyana-Kāma-Sūtra* (p 144 of Durgāprasāda's Ed ) and in the *Rājatarangini* ]

# INDEX

A	PAGE		PAGE
Abaratha . .	248, 258	Agara ..	.. 159
Abarbina . .	261	Agathou	daimonos
Abhiras (Ahira)	40	Is ..	236, 238
Abioi Skythai	293 6, 323	Aghadip .	216
Abiria . .	36, 136, 140	Agimoitha	225
Abour . .	184 5	Aginnatai	236-7
Abragana	299	Agisymba	13 n11, 15
Abrana Is ....	250	Agrinagara	154
Achin . .	240	Ahiekhatra	133, 161
Adamas, R 70, 71, 80	104	Ahroni .	128
Adam's Peak	256	Aigidiôn, Is	. 250
Adarima	180	Aioi	53, 54, 180
Adersamon . .	250	Airthadoi	191
Adersathra	80, 133, 161	Aithiopians	245
Adersathroi	164-6	Aitymandroi	307
Adersathron	78, 79, 80, 159	Ajmir	129, 149
Adesdara	131, 133, 161	Ajûna	114
Adrapsa . .	261	Akadra .	202-3
Adris or Rhouadis R	81,	Akadrai	245
	90	Akesinçs, R	89
Aganagara	202, 215	Akhasa	293
Aganagora . .	212	Akinakai	268
Agar . .	154	Akour	183
		Alaba, Is	251
		Alana, Mts	286, 291

	PAGE		PAGE
Alanorsoi .. .	287	Anara . . . .	159
Alanoī Skythai	287, 292,	Anarea, Mts	287-8, 292
	325	Anarismoundon, C	248,
Alexandreia in Ara-			258
khosia .	316	Andâmân, Is.	237
Alexandreia Aerionē	307,	Andarâb ..	282
	309-10, 328	Andhela, R	98
Alexandreia Eskhatê	277,	Andomatis, R	98
	283, 325	Andrapana	136, 141
Alexandria Opiane .	112	Anniba, Mts	297-8, 326
Alexandreia Oxelianē	277	Anieseis ..	276
Alikhorda	269, 325	Anikhai	131
Alingar, R .	87, 106	Anina	225
Alishang, R .	87	Aninakha .	132, 221-2
Allosygnê . .	66, 68	Anoubingara .	249, 258
Aloē .. . . .	180	Anourogrammol.	249-50,
Alôr .. . .	145, 152		259
Alosanga . .	225, 231	Antakhara .. . .	156
Altai, Mts	292, 295	Antibolê, R	73-5, 191-2
Al-wâkin or Lukin	10n	Antiokheia Margiane	
Amakatis or Ama-		(Merv)	17, 263-4, 324
kastis . .	124, 127	Anupshahr .	175
Amarakanṭaka .	99	Anurâdhapura	155, 259
Amarapur	230	Aornos .	105, 143
Amareis	269	Aorsoi	288
Amarousa	261	Aparatote	258
Ambashtha	312	Aparytaī	116
Ambastai	159, 161, 245	Apokopa, Mts	75-6
Ambastes, R	244	Arabis, R	313-14, 319, 321,
Ambautai	311-312		329
Ambrôdax	307	Arabitaī .	159
Amminê, Is .	250	Arakan	196, 205
Anamba, Is	241	Arakhōsia	34, 315-19, 329

PAGE	PAGE
Arakhôtos, 20n 34, 316-18	Arikada 314
Arakhôtos Krêne 316-17,	Arikaka . 316
329	Arimaspians 295
Aral, sea of .. 279-82	Aripo 258
Arana .. 314	Arisabion 225
Aratha 263	Arispara 124, 126
Aravali, Mts 76, 94	Aristobathra 142
Araxates, R .. 325	Aristophylai 311
Araxes, R 280	Arjikiya, R .. 85
Arbaka . 316, 329	Ârkâd .. . 162
Arbis . 320	Arkand-âb, R .. 34
Arbita, Mts 95, 320	Ârkatos .. 64, 162
Arbitai or Arabies 321	Arkhinara ... . 225
Arbuda or Abu, Mt. 76,	Armagara ... . 45, 48
149	Arômata (Cape Guar-
Ardha-gangâ, R . 65	dafui) . . . 27
Ârdônê . . 124, 128	Arôr ... . 83, 151
Areia .... 305-10, 328	Arouarnoi (Arvar-
Areian Lake 306, 314, 328	noin) . . 65-6, 185
Areias, R 306, 328	Arsa . . . . . 118
Arembour .. 180, 182	Arsagalitae . 118
Argadina . . 263	Arsitîs . . . . . 261
Argalou .. . 60	Artakoana . . . . . 309
Argandâb, R . 317	Artamus, R 268, 273, 324
Arganic Gulf . 22	Artikaudna . 307, 309
Argenrou . . 59	Artoarta 136, 141, 311
Argonda ... . 311	Ârukgam Bay . . . . . 258
Argyra . . . 196	Âsanabara . . . . . 225
Anaka .. . . 263	Âsiakê . . . . . 316
Anakai . . . . 289	Asigramma .. 142, 143
Anakê . . 175 179	Asikni, R . . . . . 85, 89
Anakê Sadinôn 33	Asinda . . . . . 149
Anaspê .. 314-15, 329	Âsimi . . . . . 125

	PAGE		PAGE
Aesoi . . . . .	272	Augara . . . . .	307
Aesibai . . . . .	288	Auyakia . . . . .	294
Askatangkas, R	205,	Auxakian, Mts	293 4,
	284-5, 288		298
Asmanoi . . . . .	287	Auroamis or Axumis	149
Asmirain, Mts	208, 305,	Avanti . . . . .	154
	326	Ayodhyā	160 228 9
Asmoutra	261	Azania (Ajan)	76
Aspathus . . . . .	164	Azanos, R	248 9, 257
Aspakkāra	200, 301, 327	Azīka . . . . .	142
Aspabōta	286, 326	Azmorna	323
Aspisia, Mts	287 8, 291		
Aspithra	244 5		B
Assakēnoi . . . . .	111	Babarsana or Kabar-	
Asta	314	sana	307
Astabēnoi	306	Buborana	311-12
Astakana	269, 325	Badakhshān	12 n9, 83
Astakapra . . . . .	148, 150	Bādāmī	171
Astasana	308	Badara	320, 322
Asthagoura	167	Badiamnoi	167, 171
Astauila	307	Bactis (Guadalquivir,	
Astauēnoi or Astabē-		R )	20
noi . . . . .	306	Bāg or Bāgmāndlā	47
Asthain, Is	. . 320	Bagarda	311
Astrassos	124, 126	Bagōos	306, 309
Atak	118, 142	Bahruj	42
Athēnogouron	225	Baital	159
Athens	120	Baitana	79, 175-6
Atrasa	126	Baitian, Mts	314, 317,
Atrek, R	262, 273		320
Attaba, R	198, 208-9	Bakarei	49, 52
Audh	229	Baktra	18, 271-2, 278, 325
Augaloī	276		

	PAGE		PAGE
Baktrianê	267-74, 324-5	Bardamana	.. 185
Baktrioi	313	Bardaôtis	163
Balaka, Is	250	Bardâwad	165
Balantipyrgon	164, 166	Bardaxêma	33, 37
Balasôr .	. 72	Bardhwân	174
Baleopatam ..	45	Bardia	37
Bali, Is .	. 241	Barenkora (or Baren- athra)	226
Balima .	142	Baris, R	49, 53, 78, 103, 180
Balita	55	Barna	322
Balkh	269, 274	Barona, R	69
Balonga	202	Barousai, Is	236, 238 9
Balongka	226	Barrhai	222-4
Baltipatna	39, 45	Barygaza	38, 40, 49, 77, 152-3
Bambhara	148	Barzaura	311-12
Bammala	53, 55	Basanârai	222-3
Bammogoura	154	Baskatis, R	275
Banagara	136, 141	Bassa, Is	250, 259
Banaouasei	176, 179	Bassein	44, 197
Bânâras	129, 228	Batai	299, 304, 327
Bandobêne	87	Batoi .	63, 183-4
Bândogarh	166	Batanagara	124, 127
Bania .	145	Batangkaisara	128, 130
Banna or Banu .	141	Batrakheian Sea	246
Barabanga, R	74	Batticalao	258
Barago, C . .	197	Bautisos, R	298, 326
Barakê	36, 187-8	Bazakata, Is	236-7
Barakês, R	248-9, 257	Bear, Mt (Ouxenton)	100
Barakoura	191, 195	Becare	52
Barangê	261	Bedasta, R	89
Barbarei	148	Begram .	112
Barbarikon	148	Belas, R . . .	90
Barborana	112		
Barcelôr ..	50		

	PAGE		PAGE
Benagouron . .	171	Bidaspēs, R	81, 89, 109
Benda or Binda	39, 41,	Bideris	. 180
	103, 175	Bigis	. . 314
Bentote, R ..	257	Bilhāri .. ..	167
Bēpur . .	50	Binagara	. 145, 151
Bēpyrrhos, Mts	102, 204	Bintenne	259
	208, 221	Biolingai or Bōlingai	163
Bērabai	196-7	Bisauli	131
Berē . .	184	Bitaxa	307
Bēttigō, Mt	59, 78	Bogadia	307
Beseidai ..	217	Bodhpūr	151
Besmeid . .	143	Bôkana	248, 258
Besynga, R	196, 205	Bôkanoi	250
Besyngeitai .	196, 219	Bokhārā	. 35
Bettigoi	159, 160, 166	Bôlitai	311-12
Bhadar, R . .	37	Bolor, Mts	35, 302
Bhadrāvatī	163	Bombay .	43-4
Bhāndak	166	Bônis	142, 145
Bhanzas	223	Boraīta	212, 214, 216
Bharāod	163	Borgoi ..	307
Bharēch	216	BoreionAkron(North	
Bharoch	38, 153	Cape)	247-9
Bhars or Bhors	224	Boribān	167
Bhatnair	127	Boudala	150, 151
Bhaulingī	163	Boukephala	124
Bhaunagar	37, 150	Boumasanoī	250
Bhils	160	Brâhmanâbâd	152
Bhilsa .	122	Brakhmanai Magoi	167
Bhîma, R ,	41		169
Bhîwandî, R	42	Brahmaputra, R	192,
Bhōjapūr	163		208, 209
Bhota	192, 206	Brakhmē..51, 167, 170	1
Bibasis, R . .	190	Brâhmî, R ..	71

	PAGE		PAGE
Bramagara	48, 50	Chenâb, R . . .	89
Bramma	244	Chichalapoura . .	147n
Bridama	163-4	Chilan . . . .	258
Budhia	151	Chimula . . . .	43
Bungpasoı	203	China . . . .	9 n6
Burmâ	198	Chôla or Chôra. 65, 162	
Byltai	35, 284-5, 294, 304	Chutia Nâgpur	168
Byzanteion . .	45, 47	Coöl	58
C		Colcis Indorum ..	57
Calcutta	73	Colombo . . . .	257-8
Calingon C . .	62	Colicium, C . . .	61
Calinipaxa . .	228	Comorin, C . .	55, 62, 78
Canary Islands . .	4 n7	Cottara . . . .	55
Cantabra or Cantaba, R . . . .	99	Coddalore . . . .	65
Capitalia Mt . .	76	Cyrus, R . . . .	111
Cartana . . . .	112	D	
Cassandra . . . .	51	Déca. . . . .	253, 261,
Champi . 9 n7	203, 207	Dubba Tammâsi?	221,
Chandan R . . .	63	Dugza . . . .	243, 252
Chandîberi . . .	156	Dufel . . . . .	65
Channâgâze, R. 82, 91		Dufala . . . .	123
Chanda . . . .	155	Duffes . . . .	133
Chandî . . . .	202	Dalk, R . . . .	228, 241
Chandîmâ . . . .		Dâlakka . . . .	217
Chandîmâ . . . .	155	Damara or Dâlakka,	
Chandî . . . .	232	III . . . .	254, 255, 261
Chandî . . . .	155	Dâlakka . . . .	41
Chandî E . . . .	221	Damara . . . .	257

	PAGE		PAGE
Dânmai	299, 305	Diamond Point . .	74
Damuda, R	100	Dinmouna, R	96, 98
Dangayas .	211	Dilâwar . .	125
Dangors or Dagors	118, 305	Dildâna ..	165
Daradrac.	83, 105-7, 305	Dindugal ..	184
Darandai	313	Dionysopolis	112-13
Dargamenes, R	268, 272, 310-12	Dionysos, C	248, 258
Dargoidos, R	268	Diordouloï	.. 250
Darkama	308	Dista	307
Daroakana .	311	Doânaï	222 4
Dasamana	304	Doanas, R	202-3, 208-9
Dasana or Doana	226	Doblana	165
Daśārnas	71	Dondra Head .	258
Dashak .	315	Dôriæ, R	202, 209, 334-5
Dauaba	289	Dôsarêñô	171-3
Daulatâbâd	177	Doesa .	172
Daxata	300	Dôsarôñ, R	70-1, 80, 104
Dedera-Oya, R	257	Dounga	39, 42
Delhi	122, 128, 130, 222	Draband or Dera-	
Dekra	217	band	141
Dêmos, R	275, 325	Drakhamaï	307
Deopalı	175	Drangianç	313-15, 329
Derbikkai	263, 265	Drastoka	311-12
Dêvagana	150	Drepsa (or Rhepsa)	277,
Dêvagadh	177		282, 325
Dewaliya	149	Drepsianoi ..	276, 282
Dhângars	211	Drilophyllitai	160, 168,
Dhar	154		171
Dharanikôta	187	Drôsakhê (or Rhosakla)	
Dharmodaya, R	100	Drybaktai ..	276
Dhârur or Dârur	177	Dudhal	128
		Dugad . .	42

	PAGE		PAGE
Dumura, R	234-5	Euthymêdia	122-4
Dwârakâ	188	Ezata	196
Dyardanes, R	209		
		F	
E			
Ebousimouanassa	269	Faizâbâd	. . . 229
Eikour	184	Farzah	313
Eirânê, Ie.	250	Ferro, Is	4 n4
Ekbritana	17	Foul Point	258
Elangkon or Elang-		Fu nan	9 n6
kor	53, 54		
Elburg, Mts	262	G	
Eldana	225	Gagasmira	124, 129
Ellasing	231	Gahalata	. . . 118
Elura	177	Galaktophagoi Sky-	
Embolima	142	thai	228-9, 295-6, 326
Emôdos, Mt	293-4, 302,	Galiba	247
	326	Galiba, Mts	249, 257
Empelathra	135	Galle, Point de	258
Eôritai	316	Gamaliba	175-6
Epitausa	151	Gammakê	316
Erarasa	124, 129, 228	Gandakî, R	102, 135 205,
Erod or Yirodu	182		218
Erranobo is., R	98	Gandarai	115, 116
Errhenysis, R	97	Gandaritis	87
Erymmoi	288	Gandava, R	95
Estobara	269	Gandhara	115
Etymander, R	34, 309,	Ganganoi	210
	315	Gangaridai	172-4, 233
Euaspla, R	87	Gangè Regia, 172-3, 215-6	
Euergetai	315	Gangê, R (of Cey-	
Eukratidia	269, 274	lon)	249, 258

PAGE	PAGE		
Ganges, course of	79	Gôdâvarî, C	62, 68
Ganges, mouths of	72, 73,	Gôdâvarî, R	41, 66, 234
	100-2	Gomal, R	95
Ganges, tributaries of	97-8	Gomati, R	86
Gangetic Gulf	24, 63	Gonds	160
Ganjâm	70	Gonghrîs	174
Garamaioi	17	Gorakhpûr	99
Garamantes	13 n11	Gôrya	112-13
Garinaioi (or Khara-		Goryaia	88, 105, 110
unaioi)	299, 305	Gorys	87
Garô Hills	235	Goumara, Is	251
Garoa, R	88	Gouraios, R	110-11
Gaticara, C	10n	Gourianê	263
Gaur or Gâura	215	Goverdhan	129
Gauri, R	87	Great Cape	202, 204
Gazaka or Gaudzaka	311	Great Gulf	202, 204, 244
Gedrôsia	34, 319-22, 329	Green Sea	189, 191, 246
Ghâghra or Ghogra,		Grynaioi Skythaï	35, 284
R	98, 99	Gudalur	65
Ghâra, R	36	Gudur	68
Ghâts, Eastern	79	Gujarât	36, 38
Ghâts, Western	78-81	Gûndi	.. 150
Ghilghit	118	Gurkan (or Jorjan)	112, 261
Girirâja	129	Gwa	.. . 197
Ghoda-bandar	44	Gwadar	.. . 322
Ghorband, R	112	Gynaikôn Lîmén	319, 322, 329
Ghoregâon	44		
Ghorîs or Gur	111		
Ghûr, Mts	309	H	
Gîrnâr, Mt	37	Hadarâbâd	144, 152
Goa or Govâ	181	Hâjipûr	218
Goaris, R	39, 41, 103	Hala, Mts	95
Godana	307		

	PAGE		PAGE
Halsi ..	181	Hmâbi	199
Hambangtote, C	258	Hônan-fu (Sêra)	19n
Hang-chow	10n	Horatae	140, 149
Hangol	182	Horkand, sea of	259
Hanoi .	9 n6	Hughli, R	73
Hardwâr or Avarutta	130, 212	Hydaspes, R	89, 125
Hari-Rûd R	309	Hydraôtes, R	90, 123
Hashtnîgar	117	Hypanis, R	90
Hastakavapra	150	Hyperborean, Mts	286
Hastinâpura	72, 122, 212	Hyphasis or Hypasis, R	90 91-2
Hastimalla	174	Hythamia	17, 260-2, 323-4
Haump	154	I	
Havila	107	Iabadios, Is	191, 239-41
Hayakhshîtra	166	Iasonion	263, 324
Hazâras, Mt	309	Iâstai ..	288
Hekatompîlos	17, 18n	Iatioi ..	276
Heliou limén	24S, 25S	Iastos, R	286, 290
Hellespont, parallel of	14, 15, 18 n15	Iatour	.. 185
Helmund, R	34, 309, 317	Iaxartai	288, 326
Heorta	. 210	Iaxartes R	275, 279-81 286
Heptanêisia ..	187-8	Ibêringai ..	221, 223
Herat (Areia)	19n, 111, 308-10, 315	Ikarta ..	.. 185
Hesydrus, R	91	Imaôs, Mt	19, 35, 289-90 300
Hierapolis	11, 17	Indabara ..	124, 128
Hindu-kush ..	35	Indê .. . . .	175
Hippokoura	39, 44, 176, 178-9	Indikomordana ..	277
Hippêmolgoi ..	295	Indoi .... ..	222
Hippophagoi, Sky- thai ..	Sky- thai ..		

	PAGE		PAGE
Indoskythia	136, 140	Jalâlâbâd	114
Indoprathai	221-2	Jalâlpûr	. 125
Indrapratha	122, 128	Jâlandhara	110
Indus, changes of course of	84n	Jamma .	126
Indus, mouths of	33, 37, 96	Jamnak .	60, 72, 99
Indus, origin of name of	81, 82	Java, Is	239-41
Indus, sources of	81, 83, 142	Jayagadh	57
Indus, tributaries of	81, 85, 86	Jelasôr, R	101
Indus, valley of the	137	Jhelam, R	89, 109
Inna	314	Jîbal Khushnâmi, Is	238
Iobares, R	98	Jî-nan	6 n9
Iogana	248, 258	Jorampur	162
Iomusa	126	Jubunak, R	102
Irâwadi, R	198-9	Juna-gadh	37
Islands of the Blest	4 n4, 10, 28	Junnar	177
Issedôn Skythikê	294-6		<b>K</b>
Issédones	299, 327	Kabul .	147n, 311
Istargarh	312	Kabul, R	84, 86
Ithagouros	118, 299, 305	Kachh, Gulf of	36
Ivernia (Ireland)	14	Kadalundi	50
		Kadapâ .	186
<b>J</b>		Kadranj, sea of ..	200
Jagdalak	113	Kailâsa, Mt	. 83
Jajhar ..	129	Kainas, R	.. 98
Jajhpur	72	Kaineitai, Is	. 48
		Kaisana	112
		Kakobâi .	222-3
		Kâkamukha	172
		Kâkula	. 236

	PAGE		PAGE
Kâlagangâ, R.	257	Kanaris	269
Kalah .. .	200	Kanathra, Is.	280
Kalaikarias	48, 51	Kandaloi .. .	169
Kalaka serai	121	Kandaroi. ....	276, 281
Kalandradona, Is.	250	Kandipatna .. .	186
Kahikat	49	Kanâshi .. .	63
Kalmîr, C	60 2	Kangarayen, R.	267
Kâlinadi	215	'Kangia .. .	110
Kahnadi, R	134	Kanhagiri .. .	170
Kalinga	233	Kannagara ...	89, 70
Kalingai	68, 81	Kannetri .. .	64
Kaliour	184	Kanogiva .	134, 294, 297-8
Kallada	153	Kanodipan .. .	287 8
Kalliena	40, 57	Kanouj	134, 297-8
Kalliga	185	Kant .. .	134
Kalligeris	176, 179	Kantala .. .	130
Kalligikon, C	59, 60-2	Kanthi, Gulf of	33, 36, 136,
Kalpê	21		187
Kalyân	160, 179	Kanyakubja ..	134, 227
Kalyâna	43, 57	Kapishnî ..	103, 113
Kamah, R	86	Kapoutam .. .	207
Kamanç	38, 39	Karachi .. .	146, 321
Kamara	67	Kurugam .. .	122
Kambâyat	42	Katallu .. .	23
Kamberikhon, R	72	Karatzi	25, 924 b
Kamboja, C	.. 294	Katsu .. .	57, 64, 122
Kambukgam, R	257	Karipi .. .	125, 9
Kambyses, P.	71, 72, 73	Karikal .. .	11
Kamigata .. .	151-2	Karikard .. .	.... 172
Kamilla .. .	232	Karkalla .. .	142
Kampava P.	111	Karîv, S. ....	93
Kanagata ..	131, 134, 227	Karîvaz, P.	141, 225
Kanemât .. .	70	Karîza .. .	134

	PAGE		PAGE
Karnagarh .	172	Kattigara	9 n7, 11 n7, 25, 245
Karnasônagarh	172	Kaukasos, Mts	277, 311
Karnul	163	Kausâmbî .	72
Karoura (Kabul), 34, 180, 182, 311-12		Kausikî, R	102, 205
Kartasina	171-2	Kâvêri, R	50, 65, 79
Kartinaga..	171-2	Kaveripattam	65
Karur	50, 65	Kayal .	58
Kasapê	261	Kayâna or Kohâna, R	98
Kaseirotaí	306	Kelydna	212, 214
Kâshgar ..	304	Kennery, Is	44
Kâsi	228	Kerangê	185
Kasia .	303	Kesarwa	131
Kasia, Mts	293-4, 298	Kesho	9 n7
Kaskê ..	308	Ketaion, C	248, 258
Kasmîr	89, 108-9, 302	Khaberis	63, 65
Kaspapyros	116	Khabêros, R	63, 65
Kaspatyros .	108	Khaibar Pass	113
Kaspeira	124, 128	Khalinê, Is	236, 238
Kaspeiria	105-8, 124-6, 301	Khalkitîs	222
Kaspian Gates, 17, 18, 20n		Khan-fu	10n
Kassida	225-8	Kharakharta	269
Kastrâ	171	Kharaunaioi Skythai	
Katabêda, R ,	191, 194		293
Katak	70-1	Khariphron	33, 36
Kathaians .	123, 157	Khaša .	303
Kâthiâvad	157	Khatai Skythai	293
Kathîs	157-8	Khatriaioi	141, 156-7
Katîkardama	69-70	Khattris	159
Katîsa	311	Khattriskhê	307
Kattaks	157	Khaurana	294, 326
Kattaour	157	Khaurina	307
		Khêdâ	181

PAGE	PAGE		
Khetars	157	Kôa, R	81, 86, 87, 93, 95,
Khersonese, The Golden 24, 27, 190, 197-8, 208, 226			312
Khersonesus of the Pirates	45, 47-8	Koangka	132, 135
Khitai or Kathay	9 n 6	Kodanê, Is	320
Khiva	282, 290	Koddura	66, 68
Khoana	269	Kodrana	136, 141
Khoaspa	316, 329	Kognabanda	158
Khoaspes, R	86, 115, 128	Kognandoua	124, 126
Khôës, R	87	Kohik, R	35, 277, 291
Khojend	282	Koiamba	319
Kholbêina	276	Koimbatur Gap	78
Khomata	269	Kôkala	70
Khomatoi	268	Kôkanûr	179
Khonnamagara	124, 126	Kokelay	258
Khôrasmioi	276, 282	Kokkonagarn	226, 235-6,
Khrêndoi	261		245
Khryse	69	Kokkonagai	171-2
Khrysoanas, R	198-9, 208-9	Kola or Kula-taik	198 n
Khwârasm	279 n, 282	Kolaka	142, 146
Khyendwen, R	235	Kolhapur	177
Kianchi	9 n 7	Kôh	198, 200
Kimara	225	Kohndoia	183
Kindia	131, 134	Kolis	61
Kipin or Kophen	318	Kolkhic Gulf	57
Kirâta	192, 282	Kolkhoi	57-8, 78
Kirrhâdai	276, 282	Kolmândla	47
Kirrhadia	219-221	Kômari, C	29, 53
Kizibdarya, R	. 290	Komaroi	35, 284
Kleisobara	9	Kômêdai	18, 35, 104, 275,
			278, 284
		Kômoi	268
		Kondopalle	68
		Kondôta	212

	PAGE		PAGE
Konkan . . .	45	Kouba . . .	180
Konta .. .	130	Koudoutai . . .	222
Kontakossyla . . .	66, 68	Koumaraka, R . . .	74
Ko panto . . .	12 n 9	Kouni . . .	320
Kôphêñ or Kôphêñs, R	86,	Kourellour . . .	180-1
	105	Kouriandra . . .	269
Korangkaloï . . .	217	Kouraporeina . . .	135
Korankâra . . .	217	Kouroula . . .	22, 63, 64
Koraxoi . . .	288	Kranganûr . . .	50-53
Korcour . . .	180	Krishna, R . . .	41, 63, 66
Koreoura . . .	49	Krishnapatam . . .	67
Korindiour . . .	183	Krokala, Is. . .	146
Koringa . . .	68	Kubhâ, R . . .	86
Korkobara . . .	248, 258	Kuchiavellî . . .	258
Korônos, Mt . . .	260 2	Kuda . . .	45
Kortatha . . .	202	Kudramali, Pt . . .	258
Koroungkala . . .	185, 187	Kulburga . . .	177
Kôry, Is . . .	187	Kuhnda . . .	.. 110
Kôry, C . . .	22, 26 n, 59, 60,	Kuluta . . .	110
	189, 247	Kunâr or Kâmah, R	86,
Kôrygaza . . .	212, 216-7		106
Kôsa . . .	158	Kuram, R . . .	141
Kôsala . . .	99, 135	Kurumbars . . .	162
Kôsamba . . .	70, 72	Kunda . . .	130
Kotakê . . .	308	Kushans . . .	138
Kotaür . . .	55	Kusunagara . . .	135
Kottiara . . .	53, 54, 55	Kylindrînê . . .	105, 109
Kottiaris, R . . .	245-6	Kyreskhata . . .	276, 283, 325
Kottis . . .	66, 67		
Kottobara . . .	69		<b>L</b>
Kottobarâ (in Gedrosia) . . .	320	Labokla . . .	122, 124, 126
Kottonarikê . . .	50, 188	Lahore . . .	122, 123, 126

	PAGE		PAGE
Lambatai	104, 106	Madurâ or Mathura	80,
Lameta ..	167		122, 126, 129, 184
Lamghân	106, 141, 213	Madura, Is	241
Landai, R.	87, 110	Magaris	171
Lankâ (Ceylon) .	251	Maghada	119, 169
Lârdêsa .	153	Magnetic Rocks	242 4
Lariagara	225	Magona, R	97
Larikê	38, 152-3, 157	Magour	184
Lasypa	226	Mahaban, Mt	143
Launi or Lavanî, R	37,	Mahânadî, R	71, 161, 169,
	94		333
Lepchhas	224	Mahânanda	215
Lêstai or Robbers' Country	202	Maharashtra	39
Leukê, Is	57, 187-8	Mahâwelianga, R	257
Liganeira	124, 126	Mahendra, Mt	69, 76
Ligor	203	Mahi	136
Limyrikê	49, 180	Maïandros, Mt	204-5, 208
Lôgarh	313	Mais, R	104
Lohâwar	127	Maisolia	66, 67, 68, 185
Lokharna	311, 313	Maisôlos, R	66, 103
Lohkot	122	Maisoka or Mausoka	261
Lônibarê	33, 37	Malaja, Mt	249, 256
Lo-yang	19n	Malaïta	163-4
<b>M</b>		Malaka, straits of	200
Maagrammon	250, 259	Malamantus, R	88
Macco Calingae	233	Malanga	67, 185-6
Machin	9 n 7	Malaya, Mt	75, 78
Madagascar, Is	256	Maldâ	215
Madang arh	47	Maleiba	164
Madhy-a-dêsa	77	Maleo, C	38
Madra	123, 157	Maleou Kôlou, C	198 9
		Maliâne	317
		Malipalla	175-6

	PAGE		PAGE
Mâlkhêd	179	Margara	130
Malli	169	Marghînan	283
Maltaun	165	Margianê ..	262-7, 324
Manada, R	69, 71, 103	Margos, R	263-4
Manâr Gulf	57	Marhara	130
Manarat, R	67	Marouka	276
Manarppa or Manali- arpha	66, 67	Maroundai	212-4
Mandagara	45, 47, 57	Martaban	10n
Mandalai	132-3, 167-8	Martaban, gulf of	197
Mandaia, Mt	110, 205	Marudvridhâ, R	85
Manekir	156	Matykaioi	268
Mangalin	46, 48, 50	Masdoranoi or Mazô- ranoi	306
Mangaruth	46	Massagetai	35, 263, 265-6
Mangrol	37		284
Manituma or Mania- taia	225	Mas-aioi	287
Manikhai	132	Mestanoui	180-1
Maniolai Is	237, 239, 242-4	Masulipattam	68
Manneyeh	132	Matlak	74
Mantittoui	183	Mausarnaioi	320
Mantote	258-9	Muxêra, R	260, 262
Mapoura	70	Muxêrai	261
Marakanda (Samar- kand)	269, 274	Mega, R	72, 74
Marakodia	269	Mehatnu, R	68
Mardos or Maidou- lamnê	248, 258	Mekong, R	203, 209
Maidyçnoi	276	Melangê	65, 67
Mareoura or Mat- thouia	226, 235	Melizeigara	57, 187
Margana	247, 258	Melkynda	52-4
		Menapia	269, 325
		Mendela	183
		Menouthias, Is	189
		Meru, Mt	110
		Methora	98

	PAGE		PAGE
Milizegvris	57	Nagadiba or dina	Naga- 249, 258-9
Mingarai .	70, 72, 159	Nagapatam	63
Minnagar	139, 152	Nagara	112-13
Mins	266	Nigarouris	175
Miraj	180	Nigeiroi	259
Mirzapur	78, 131	Nagor	64
Mithankot	94, 143, 144	Nakandouba	259
Modogoulli	176, 179	Namadosor -s, R	38, 102
Modoura	124, 128, 183-4	Nainostri	289
Modouttou	249, 258-9	Ninagonna R	45, 49
Mohani, R	97	Ninabaloari	103, 159
Mologenoi	288	Ninabaloari	221, 223
Monkhe Is	250	Ninabaloari	221, 223
Mone ,	222	Ninabaloari	221, 223

	PAGE		PAGE
Neudros, R	90	Ophir	40, 140
Nigranigramma .	166	Opianç	20n, 112
Nikaua .	89, 125	Opotoura	168
Nikama.	63, 64	Orbadar-i or -ou .	149
Nikobar, Is .	230	Orchomaneq, R .	324
Nilâb	117	Oreisitoi .	260
Nîlgiri, Mts .	79	Oreitai .	159
Niphanda	311	Oreophanta .	167
Niranjana, R .	97	Organic Gulf	59, 60
Nisaua or Nigaua	263,	Orgasoi .	288
	267, 324	Ormeón, C	248, 258
Nisauoi	306, 309	Ormeón, Is	250
Nisibis .	308, 328	Orosann	300
Nissa	267	Oroudiann, Mts	78, 80, 81
Nitra	46, 48	Orthuana	307
Norowson, Mts	286, 291	Orthoura ...	84, 184-5
Nostana	314	Ortikane .	308
Noubarthia	248, 258	Ortospann (Kabûl)	20n,
Nygdosora .	159		34, 311-2, 328
Nysa	105	Orza	130, 131
O			
Obareis	306	Osanpûr	151
Odôka	248, 258	Oskana	144, 320
Odombarae	149	Otha	158
Oidanes, R	209	Ostobalasara	124
Oikhardç, R	293-4,	Ottorokorrhæs, Mts	298-
	298-9, 326		300, 305, 326
Ökhos, R	267, 272-3, 324	Ouangalia, Is	250
Olokhoïn	180-1	Ouandion (Vindhya),	
Oménogara	175-6	Mts	77
Omiza	320	Oulispada	250
		Ourathênaï	225, 230
		Ouxenton, Mts	76, 78,
			80, 100

	PAGE		PAGE
Oxela, C	249, 258	Panasa	150-1
Oxelian Lake	275, 281, 325	Panassa	164, 166-7
Oxelian, Mts	274, 276	Pañchâla	131, 133
Oxeiana	276	Pandasa	225, 235
Oxeianoi	276	Pandionoi	. 51, 183
Oxus, R	88, 260, 267-8, 276-9, 286	Pandion's Land	59
Oxydrângkai	. 276	Pandouoi	. 121
Ozênu	38, 152, 154-5	Pându's Fort	133
Ozoabis	158	Paniardoï	.. 287
Ozoana	168, 171	Panjâb, Rivers of	88
Ozola (or Axola)	316	Panjâb rivers, conflu- ence of	91, 94
<b>P</b>		Pañjkora	87
Pagrasa	. 202	Panjpûr	. 143
Pakidarê	38	Pañjshir	. . 312
Palaiogonoi	252-3	Panjshir, R	112
Palaiapatmai	45	Pantipolis	180
Palai-Simoundou	. 252-3	Parabali	. 151
Palk's Passage	60	Paradêne	320
Palanda	226	Parakanakê	308
Palandos, R	198, 208-9	Paraha	54, 63, 64, 184
Pali	45	Parashni, R.	85
Paliana	299	Parautoi	306, 312
Palibothra (Patna)	19, 30, 99, 132, 167, 168 9	Pardabathra	142
Palibothri	.. 98	Pardwa or Priya- deva	150
Paloura	23, 63, 67-70, 180	Pâripâtra or Pâriya tra	.. . 76
Pamîr Plateau	278n	Parnâsâ, R	. 166
		Parnoi	263, 266
		Paropanisadai	34, 310-13,
			328
		Paropanisos, Mt	268

	PAGE		PAGE
Parisara	225	Peshawarun	315
Parisiénê	320	Patîrgala	176, 179
Parsia	311-13	Peukelaotis	20 n, 115-17
Parsiana	311-12	Pharazana	314
Parsidai or Parsirai	320	Pharetra or Pharytra	185
Parsis	320, 322	Phasis, R	249 257
Parsyétai	311-12 316	Phaunoi, 278 n, 282, 305	
Parthalis	174	Philékos, Is	250
Parwân	112, 312	Phôkhs	316
Pasagî	180-1	Pharana	307
Pasianoi	272	Phra	309, 315
Pasikana	124, 126	Phratou	269
Pasipâda	142 3, 151	Phrounon	185 n
Paska	276	Phyllitai	159, 160
Passala	130-1	Pialai (or Piaddai)	299
Passalai	217-18	Pirate Coast	45
Patala	146-7	Pishon or Pisanu, R	107
Patalêne	136, 139	Piska	142
Patî Bay	249, 256 8	Pythonabastâ	202-3
Patistama	157	Piti, R	36
Pâtnâ	132, 168	Pityndra	68, 185
Pauravas	164	Plaita	165
Pavangarh	154	Podigei or Pothigei	
Pegu	69, 235	Mt	78
Penn âr, R	65, 67	Podoperoura	49, 52
Pentagramma	142 3	Podoukê	65, 66, 250
Pentapolis	191	Pomai Theôn, Mts	7
Peperinî, Is	187 8	Poleour	185
Perimoula	198, 201	Poloura	72, 75
Perimoulic, Gulf	198, 200	Polytimetos, R	281, 286
Peringkarei	51, 183		290-1
Persakra	131	Port of Alexander	321
Peshâwar	86, 117	Pârvâroi	163 5

PAGE	PAGE		
Posinara	225	Puri	70
Poudopatana	52	Pushkarâvatî	115
Poulndai Agriophagoi		Purrhon Oros (Red Hill)	53, 64
	156-7, 160		
Poulipoula	38, 39		
Pounnata	180		
Pramâras	164		
Prapiôtaï	158		
Prârjuna, Is	83	Qandahar	34, 116, 317
Prasiakê, Is	83	Quilon	53 4
Prasiakê	131-3		
Piasu	133, 253		
Prâsôdes Bay	248, 257-8	R	
Irasum, C	25, 191, 246	Ramagiri (Râmtek)	159
Pratishthâna	79, 177	Ramana	304
Prayâg (Allahâbâd)	175	Ramancoru, C	61
Priapis Haven	248, 258	Rame-varam, Is	60, 189
Prinas or Pinnas, R	98	Râmu	195, 235
Proklaïs	116-17, 155	Rangûn	197-8
Prokouri	249	Rapti, R	98-9
Prophthasia	20n, 313,	Rasâng	232
	315, 329	Rash	118
Pseudostomon, R	49, 52,	Ravi, R	90, 109, 123
	78, 103, 180	Rhâ, R	285-6, 290, 296
Pseudostomon (a		Rhabana	244
Ganges mouth)	73-4	Rhabannai	299, 305
Puduchcheri (Pondicherry)	67	Rhadamarkotta	225, 228-9
Pulicat	67	Rhagirana	319
Pulo Condor, Is	204, 241	Rhambakia	159
Punya or Pûnpûn R	98	Rhamnai	158-9, 320, 322
Purali, R	314, 321	Rhappha	210
Pur-bandar	37	Rhapta	25

	PAGE		PAGE
Rhaugara	307	Sador, R	196
Rhêa ..	263	Sagala 122, 131, 134-5, 169	
Rhibioi	289	Sagaraukaı	289, 326
Rhingibêri	225, 234-5	Saghêla or Sakula .	135
Rhuzana	316, 319	Sagapa( Ghâra) R	33, 36
Rhoboskoı	287	Sagêda	164-6
Rhôdes, parallel of 4 n3, 6, 11, 17, 18 n15		Sagôda or Sadôga	225, 228-9
Rhogandanoı	250, 259	Sahya, Mt	76
Rhoploutai .	316	Sahyâdîrı, Mt	79, 80
Rhouadis, R	90	Sailôdâ, R	110
Rhouda ..	313	Saimur or Jaimur	42
Riksha (Bear) Mts	76	Samnos, R	244-5
Rikshavat	80	Saitianoi	. 287
Rin or Irna	94, 157	Sajintra	154
Rizala Haven	249, 258	Sakai	283-5, 325
Robber Country .	222	Sakarauloi	. 272
Rupanârâyana, R	101, 170	Sakê or Salê	. 261
Rymmik, Mts	286-8, 291	Sâkêta	.. 166, 228
Rhymmos, R	286, 290, 326	Salagissa	124, 126
<b>S</b>		Salakênoı	171-3
Sabadeibaı, Is	236, 239	Salang, Is	238
Sabadioı	269	Salaterai	268
Sabana	136, 141, 198 9	Salatha	. 225
Sabalaessa, R	33, 36	Salikê (Ceylon)	247, 252
Sabara	196	Salour	59
Sabaraı	172-3	Salyuen, R	209
Sabouras	63, 65	Samarkand	12n9, 35, 271,
Sada	24, 195-6		274
		Samaradê	202-3
		Sambalaka	131, 133, 167,
			169
		Sambra	.. 196



	PAGE		PAGE
Tapouroi	263, 267	Tholouhana	163 4
Taprobane, Is	61, 247, 259	Thoule (Shetland Is.)	5, 297
Tâpti, R	48, 158, 160	Throana	202
Tarbakana	311	Throanoi	299, 305
Tarakkhoi	250	Taitoura (Chittore)	152
Tatakenç	313-14		156
Tathilba	167	Tiausa	142
Taua	307	Tiladai	217-8
Tankiana	307	Tilogrammon	72
Tavov, R	209	Timoula	29, 42
Taxila	20n, 115, 118	Tinneveh	57, 59
Tâshkand	12 n9	Tiripangolha	175
Tashkurgan	12 n9	Tisapatinga	157
Tasopion	172	Tistâ R	102, 205
Tejm, R	262	Tittoua	183
Tektosakes	287	Toana	131
Têmala, R	196	Tokharoi	268, 272, 276, 282, 324
Têmala, C	196	Tokosanna, R	191, 195
Tennagora	184	Tonnara	225, 235
Têwar	166	Tong-king	9 n6, 243
Thagora	202	Tong king Gulf of	246
Thagouron, Mt	298	Toörnai	35, 284
Thân	149	Tôringoi	63, 64
Thanesar	128	Tôsalei	225, 230-1
Tharawati	236	Tougma	225, 231, 255
Tharrha	226, 236	Tribazina	308
Thelkhen	63	Tüglypton or Trilugon	
Theophila	149		225 231-4
Thina	220	Trikadiba, Is	187 8
Thimai (Si-gnan fu oi Loyang)	9 n6, 245-6	Trimcsia, Is	187-8
Thogara	300	Trunkônamalai	257

	PAGE		PAGE
Tripuri (Tipperah)	194,	Vaitarna, R	41, 192
	232-4	Vakâtaka	166
Trishtâmâ, R	... 86	Valabhi	37, 140
Trivêni, R	99, 101	Vandabanda	276, 282
Trybaktra	... ... 277	Varadâ, R..	158-9, 179
Tuticorn	... ... 57	Vârânasî	129, 248
Tybiakai	... ... 288	Varela, C	10n
Tyndis	... ... 48-50	Varnoi	... ... 269
Tyndis, R	70-1, 80, 104	Varpna	... ... 307
Tyna, R	... 65 103	Vasai (Bassein)	40
U		Vasiôthta	... ... 90
Uchh	... ... 89	Velur	... ... 187
Udêpur (Udayapura)	229,	Vendelooz Bay	... 258
	232	Vengi	... ... 186
Udumbara	... ... 129	Viliçâjakura	... ... 179
Udyâna	... ... 197	Vindion (Vindhyâ),	
Udyânapara	... ... 112	Mts	75-77, 89
Ujjain	... 38, 172, 152	Vingâla Rocks	... 182
Uriur	... ... 182	Tîrâkâ R	... ... 91
Ural Mts.	... ... 221	Tîpâla M.	... ... 203
		Tîrâma, R	... ... 95
		Tîrâga, R	... ... 219

	PAGE		PAGE
Y		Z	
Yamuna (Jamna), R	85, 98	Zamīrāi	. 219, 221
Yarkand	12n 8	Zanzibar, Is	191
Yellapur	181	Zaradros, R	91
Yētūr . .	180	Zarafshān, R	290
Yuma, Mt	205	Zarah Lake	314, 317
		Zarangoi or Sarangai	314
		Zaratai .	289
		Zariaspā	19n, 269, 274
		Zariaspai	268
Zaba	. 25, 27, 200	Zariaspis, R	268, 324
Zaba, Is	251	Zerogerei	152, 154
Zabū	9 n 6, 202-3	Zeus, C	218, 258
Zaēn	224	Zibala, Is	251
		Zimyra	308

---

# GENERAL INDEX

A	PAGE		PAGE
Agastya Rishi	78	Camels	324
Albirûni	120	Cannibals	299
Alkman	295	Carnelian stone	77
Ammianus Marcellinus	323	Chandragupta	160
Andhrabritya dynasty	46	Cocks	225, 232-3
Antiochos Theos	271	Copper	222
Ants gold-digging	107, 110	Cottons	68
Apollonius of Tyana	119		
Aristeas of Prokonebos	295	D	
Arrian	292	Darius Hystaspes	82
Arsakes	324	Diamonds	71, 158 167 169, 172
Asoka, 116, 119, 154, 300		Dionysios	114
Astes	117		
		E	
B		Elephant	247 25
Baleokouros	176, 177		
Basaronagos	185-6	G	
Bdellium	117	Ginger	247
Beryl	180-1, 247	Gold	107, 219, 239 241
Bhrigu	153		247 295
Boukephalos	125 126	Griffins	295
Brankhidae	283	Gymnosophistai	130



## APPENDIX I

### INDIA WITHIN THE GANGES

#### MOUNTAINS

APOKOPA, Aravali

CAPITALIA, Abu

SARDONYX, Satpura

QUINDION, Vindhya

BETTIGO, Malaya, southern part of western ghats

ADEISATHRON, Western ghat where Kaveri rises, Adivas imountain

OUXENTION, Eastern Vindhya, Riksha

OROUDIAN, Vaidurya

IMAOS, Himalaya, also Skythian mountain range to the east of Aral Sea, to the north and south of which lie the two parts of Skythia, within and beyond Imaos, a snow-clad mountain

## APPENDIX 2

### INDIA WITHIN THE GANGES

### HYDROGRAPHY

GANGETIC GULF, Bay of Bengal

KANTHI, Gulf of Kachchh

SINTHON, Piti branch of the Indus, one of the mouths of the Baghar river

KHARIPHRON, Kyar river

SAPARA, Wari mouth of the Indus

SABALAESSA, Sir mouth of the Indus

LONIBARE, Kori or the Launi river

NANGOUNA, Tapti river

BARIS, A stream near Quilon entering Backwater

PSEUDOSTOMOS, A stream discharging into Backwater, a "false mouth"

MOPHIS, Mahi river flowing in Gulf of Khambhat

ORGALIC GULF, A Tamil Gulf

NAMADOS, Narbada river

SOLEN, Sittar river, a small river entering sea south of Kolkhoi

KOMARIA OR KORY, Cape Comorin, also Kumari Island of Rameshwaram

KALLIGIKON, Point Kalimir

KHABAROS, Kaveri river

TYNA, Pennar river

GOARIS, Godavari

MAISOLOS, Krishna

BENDA, Bhima joining the Krishna

PALOURA RIVER, Ganjam river

MANADA, Mahanadi river

TYNDIS, Brahmani river

DOSARON, Vaitarni river

ADAMAS, Suvarnarekha river

KAMBYSION, Hughaly river

- MEGA, Matla river  
 KAMBERIKHON, Koumaraka river  
 PSUEDOSTOMON, A concealed river behind islands, a mouth of Ganges  
 ANTIBOLE, Dhakka or old Ganges river  
 KOA OR KOPHEN OR KOPHES, Kabul river, Kubha  
 SOUASTOS, Swat river  
 MANASAROVAR, Lake Manas  
 BIDASPES, Jhelum river, Vitasta  
 SANDABAL, Chenab river, Asikni  
 ADRIS OR RHOUADIS, Ravi river  
 BIBASIS, Beas river, Vipasa  
 ZARADROS, Satlaj river, Shatadru  
 DIAMOUNA, Yamuna river  
 SARABOS, Sarayu or Ghogra river  
 Soa, Son river  
 GANGES, Ganga river  
 INDUS, Sindhu river  
 KOLKHIC GULF, Gulf of Manar  
 MILIZEGYRIS, Jayagarh Island  
 HEPTANESIA, Burnt Islands  
 TRIKADIBA, An Island in the Manar gul  
 PEPERINE,            "",            ""  
 TRINESIA,            "",            ""  
 LENKE,            "",            ""  
 NANIGERIS, An Island near Cape Kumari  
 ORGALIC GULF, Beyond the Gulf of Manar, separated by the Island of Rameshwaram

## APPENDIX 3

### INDIA WITHIN THE GANGES

#### PLACES

- SYRASTRENE, Saurashtra  
BARDAXEMA, Porbandar or Srinagar in Saurashtra  
BARAKE, Dvaraka  
SYRASTRA, Junagadh, Girnar  
MONOGLOSSON, Mangrol port  
LARIKE, Gujerat with northern parts of Konkan, Latdesha  
BARYGAZA, Bharoch, Bhrigukachchha  
OZENE, Ujjain  
MALEO, Land projection between the mouths of the Mahi and the Narbada  
GULF OF BARYGAZA, Gulf of Khambhat  
KAMANE, A place south of Narbada estuary  
POULIPOULA, Sanjan on the coast south from Nauseri or perhaps Balsar  
ARIAKE, Maharashtra, Land of the Aryans  
SOUPARA, Supara  
DOUNGA, A town S E of Supara separating Salsette from the mainland  
SIMYLLA, Port of Chaul or Chimula in the Trombay island  
HIPPOKOURA, Ghodabandar town in Thana strait  
BALTIPATNA, Daibal or Balaerpatam  
MANDAGARA, Madangarh or Mandla, now known as Kolmandala and Bag and Bagmandala  
BYZANTEION, Vijayadurga in Ratnagiri  
KHERSONESOS, Peninsula in the neighbourhood of Goa, at the mouth of Kali nadi in north Kanara  
ARMAGARA, A town near the mouth of the Tapti river  
NITRA, Mangalore, A pirate port  
LIMYRIKE, Damrike, Tamil country

TYNDIS, Tanur port or erstwhile Kadalundi or Kadalu-tundi port  
 BRAMAGARA, Brahmagara, a town called Brahme belonging to the  
 Brahmanoi Magoi, the sons of the Brahmanas (Arya  
 Brahmanas), Brahmagara of Brahmavarta

KALAIKARIAS, A coastal town in Tamilnad, Chalacoory N E of  
 Kranganur

MOUZIRIS, Muyuri of Muyiri-kodu

POTDOPEROURA, Poudopatana

SEMNE, A Shramanic town

BAKAREI, Kallada town on Kallada river or Parakada

MELKYNDA OR NELKYNDA, Nelisuram

ELANGKON OR ELANGKOR, Quilon (Kulam)

AIOI COUNTRY, South Travankor region, The Nagadesha

KOTHIARA, Kottara

BAMMALA, Bulita

KAREOI COUNTRY, South Tinneveli region

SOSIKOURAI TOWN, Tutikorin (Tutukudi)

LAND OF PANDION, Greater portion of Tinneveli, Madura,  
 Travankor, parts of Coimbatore and Kochin, The Pandya  
 country

KHABERIS, Karikal

BATOI COUNTRY, Tanjor region

NIKAMA, Nagapattam

PARALIA, Seaboard of Toringoi, the old name of Travankor

SABOURAS, Gudalor (Cuddalore)

PODOUKE, Puduchéheri (Pondicherry)

MELANGE, Malanga or Malanka port

MANARPHA, Manara

MAISOLIA, Coast between the Krishna and the Godavari rivers

KONTAKOSSYLA, Probably Kondapalle

KODDOURA, A town near Masulipatam

ALLOSYGNE, Korin ga (Koranja) port a little beyond Point  
 Godavari

PALOURA, A town on Palura river, the beginning of the Gangetic  
 gulf

NANIGAINA, Puri or Kotak, Capital of Orissa

KANNAGARA, Konarak

SIPPARA, Surparaka

MINAGARA, Mungrapur  
KOSAMBA, Balasor or a port on the mouth of Subarnarekha  
POLOURA, Jalasur near Subarnarekha  
TILOGRAMMON, Jesor  
LAMBTAI, Lamghan north of Kabul river  
SOUASTENE, Basin of Swat river  
DARADRAI, Darada region  
KASPEIRIA COUNTRY, Valley of Kashmir  
KYLINDRINE, Region of lofty mountains wherein the Vipasha,  
the Shatadru, the Yamuna and the Ganges had their sources  
GORYAIA, Valley of Ghor river  
KAISANA BARBORANA DRASTOKA, Towns of Paropansdai region  
GORYA, Ancient city near modern Mola-gouri  
NAGARA DIONYSOPOLIS, Nanghenhar in Afghanistan  
GANDARAI COUNTRY, Gandhara Country  
PROKLAIS, Pushkalavati  
*NAULIBI*, Nilab south of Kabul river  
ARSA, Region between Indus and Kashmir as far south as the  
boundary of Attak  
ITHAGOUCROS, A Darada city  
LABAKA, Lakhot City in Punjab  
SAGALA, Sakala, Sialkot on Ravi, Capital of Madras or Bahlika  
people  
BOUKEPHALA, City founded by Alexander to commemorate his  
dead, Horse on the western bank of Ravi  
IOMUSA, A town in Punjab  
SALAGISSA, A town under Kashmiris from Indus to Yamuna  
ARISPARA,                         "  
PASIKANA,                         "  
LIGANEIRA,                         "  
KHONUAMAGARA                     "  
KOGNANDAU,                         "  
ASTRASSOS, Atrso or Hathrus  
LABOKLA, Lahore in Punjab  
BATANAGRA, Bhatner, Hanumangarh town in Ganganagar  
District of Rajasthan State

- AMAKATIS, Shekhupura in Punjab  
 OSTOBALASARA, Sthaneswar or Thanesar  
 KASPEIRE, Capital of Kashmir  
 DAIDALA, Dudhal on Khagal river to the east of Bhatner  
 ARDONE, Abroni situate between Ghaghara and Chitang rivers  
 INDABARA, Indraprastha  
 MODOURA, Mathura  
 GAGASMIRA, Jajhar near Delhi  
 ERARASA, Varanasi  
 KOGNANDUA, A place near Varanasi  
 GYMNOSEPHISTAI, Jaina region east to Kashmir  
 DAITIKHAI COUNTRY, Region north of Ganges  
 KONTA, Kunda on the left bank of the Yamuna to the south-east  
     of Saharanpur  
 MARGARA, Marhara to the north-east of Agra  
 BATANGKAISSARA, Kesarma east of the Yamuna  
 PASSALA, Panchala, Capital of Panchaladesh  
 ORZA, Sarsai on the Ramganga river  
 PERSAKRA SANNABA TOANA, Towns on the south bank of the  
     Yamuna  
 SAMBALAKA, Sambhal in Rohilkhand  
 ADISDARA, Ahichchhatra, capital of northern Panchala  
 KANAGORA, Kanauj  
 KINDIA, Kant, an ancient city of Rohilkhand  
 SAGALA, Kushinagar  
 KOANGKA, A Prachya town  
 SAURAATIS, Chhatravati, part of Ahikshetra to the east of the  
     Ganges  
 INDO-SKYTHIA, Region comprising Baktriana to Kashmir and  
     from the Oxus river to Saurashtra, The Kushan region under  
     Kanishka  
 PATALENE, Delta at the mouth of the Indus with its capital Patala.  
 ABIRIA, Abhira region to the east of the Indus, Ophir  
 SYRASTRENE, Saurashtra  
 KHATRIAOI COUNTRY, Khatri region within delta of confluence  
     of the Kabul and the Indus rivers or between the Ravi and  
     the Beas rivers  
 ANDRAPANA, Deraband near Dera Ismail Khan

- BANAGARA, Bannu  
 EMBOIMA, Amb fort on the Indus  
 PENTAGRAMMA, Panjpura  
 ASIGRMMA, In Kabul region  
 TIAUSA, " "  
 ARISTOBATHRA, " "  
 AZIKA, " "  
 PISSA, " "  
 PASIPIDA, Besnid lying east of the Indus on the route from Mansura to Multan  
 SOUSIKANA, Alor, capital of upper Sindh  
 BONIS, Bania town in lower Sindh  
 KOLAKA OR KOIKA, Karkalla in the Bay of Karachi  
 PATAKA, Capital of Patalene region  
 BARIHARI, Bambhara, an ancient city between Karachi and Thattha  
 XODRAKE COUNTRY, Kshudraka region between the Jhelum and the Chenab  
 ASINDA, Siddhapur, a town on the river Sarasvati  
 AUXOAMIS OR AXUMIS, Ajmer  
 ORIADARON OR ORDABARI, Udumbara region  
 THEOPHILA, Sardhur town  
 ASTAKAPRA, Hastakampur, a town on the Indus river  
 PANASA, Bodhpur in upper Sindh  
 NAAGRAMMA, Naoshera  
 KAMIGARA, Aror to the S E of Kori on the Indus river  
 BINGARA OR MINAGARA, Indo-Skythian capital in Sindh  
 XOANA, Semana, country of the Bhulingas between the desert and the Aravallis  
 AGRINAGARA, Agri, 30 miles to the N E of Ujjain  
 STRIPALLA, Seripala on the Narbada river  
 BAMMOGOURA, Pavangarh on a hill to the north of the Naramada river  
 SAZANTION, Sajintra in the Bay of Khambhat  
 ZEROGEREI COUNTRY, Dhar to S W of Ujjain  
 MINAGARA, A town near Bharoch  
 TIATOURA, A town in Khambhat  
 NASIKA, Nasik



- TATHILBA, A Badami town  
 OZOANA, Seoni to N E of Nagpur  
 SIBRION, A Seoni Bhil town  
 OPOTOURA, " "  
 DOSARA, Doesa on upper Mahanadi  
 KARTINAGA, A Naga town Karnagarh near Bhagalpur  
 KARTASENA, Karnasongarh near Berhampur  
 GANGE, Sonargaon S E of Dhakka, the ancient capital of Vanga region  
 MALLIPALLA, A Maharashtra town  
 SARISABIS, " "  
 GOMALIBA, " "  
 OMAN OGARA, " "  
 BAITHAN, Paithan  
 TAGARA, Gulbarga  
 DEOPALI, Deogarh  
 TABASO, Tapasa, a city of ascetics  
 HIPPOKURA, Kalyan, capital of southern Ariake (Maharashtra)  
 SIRIMALAGA, Malkhed, a town in Hyderabad  
 KALLIGIRIS, Kanhagiri  
 MODOGOULA, Mudgal town in Hyderabad  
 BANAOUASEI, Banavasi, situated on the upper Varada, a tributary of the Tungabhadra  
 MOUSOPALLE, Miraj, a town near the Krishna river  
 OLOKHOIRA, Kheda  
 KOUBA, Goa or Gova  
 PASAGE, Halasi S F of Goa  
 MASTANOUR, A Goa town  
 KOURELLOUR, " "  
 PUUNNATA, A town near Seringpatam  
 PITYNDRA, Pihumda or Pithuda near Champa in times of Kharvela  
 ALOC, Yellapur in north Kanara  
 KAROURA, Karur, ancient capital of Chera, Kera or Kerala  
 AREMBOUR, A Kerala town  
 BIDERIS, Yirodu in the district of Koimbatur near the Kaveri river.  
 PANTIPOLIS, Pantiyapur in Dharvad district  
 MOROUNDA, A Kerala town  
 MENDELA, A south Tinneveli town



## APPENDIX 4

### INDIA WITHIN THE GANGES

#### PEOPLES

- AIOI, Ahı or Naga people in southern parts of Travankor  
SORA, Chol people  
KASPLIRAIROI, Kashmiri people  
GYMNOSOPHISTAI, Jaina people  
DAITIKHAI, North east frontier people  
PASSALA, Panchala people  
ANIKHAI OR NANIKHAI OR MANIKHAI, People living on the south bank of the Yamuna  
PRASIAKE, Prachya people, Prasii of Megasthenes  
POULINDAI, Pulindas, An important Adivasi tribe of Aravali, also of south and west Bharata  
KHATRIAIOI, Khatris  
TABASOI, Tapasa people of the river Tapti region  
PRAPIOTAI, People to the north of the Narmada river  
RHAMNAI, Ravana people originally from Gedrosia  
PHYLLITAI, Bhils of Satpura region  
Bettigoi, An Adivasi tribe in the western ghat region  
KANDALOI, Adivasi Gond people  
AMBASTAI, Ambastha people  
BIOLINGAI OR BOLINGAI, The Bhulinga people, a branch of the Shalva tribe  
KEROBOTHROS, Keralaputra  
POROUAROI, Paurava people, the later Rajasthani Pramaras, the Jaina Poravaras  
ADEISATHROI, Adivasi people in the Kaveri valley  
MANDALAI, The Adivasi Munda people  
BRAKHMANAI MAGOI, The Kanarese Brahmanas, The Brahmana descendants  
BADIAMOI, The Adivasi Badami people of the Belgaum region

- DRILOPHYLLITAI, A branch of the Bhils or the Pulindas  
KOKKANAGAI, Kolenaga, An Adivasi Naga Tribe  
SALEKENOI, An Adivasi tribe in the west Godavari region, the  
Suhma people  
SABARAI, The Adivasi Shavara tribe  
GANGARIDAI, The Ganga or the Vanga people  
BASSARONAGE, Majenka-Naga people of the Krishna Valley  
MAISOLOI, People living in the Krishna region  
AROUARNOI, Andhras  
SARAGANRS, The Satakarani dynasty of Andhra

## APPENDIX 5

### INDIA BEYOND THE GANGES

#### MOUNTAINS

BEPYRRHOS, Himalaya from the source of Sarayu upto the Garo hills

MAIANDROS, Yuma mounts, Mandara of the Malla region in India, Parshavanath hills, Mallus of Megasthenes and Arrian  
DOBASSA OR DAMAKA, Eastern Himalayas, the source of Brahmaputra river also

SEMANTHINOS, Mountain east to Maiandros

IMAOS, Western Himalaya or the mountain dividing Skythia in two parts

## APPENDIX 6

### INDIA BEYOND THE GANGES

### HYDROGRAPHY

- MENOUTHIAS ISLAND, Zanzibar or an Island adjacent to it  
KATABEDA, Karmafuli or Chittagong river  
TOKOSAMA, Arakan river  
SADOS, A small river in the Arakan region  
TEMALA, A river and a cape to S E of Sada  
SARABAKIE GULF, Gulf of Martaban  
BESYNGA, A river, the western arm of the Iravadi river of Burma,  
    Bassein river  
KHYRISOANAS, Rangoon arm of the Iravadi  
CAPE MALEON KOLON, Cape at Amherst or Cape Romania  
PERIMULIC GULF, Gulf of Siam, the Sea of Kadrang, Residents  
    of west Coast of India colonised this Gulf  
SOBANOS, Suvarna river, Meinau river on which stands Bangkok,  
    Capital of Siam, Thailand  
GREAT GULF, Gulf of Siam together with sea that stretches  
    beyond it towards China  
GREAT CAPE, Cape of Kamboj, Kang-Kao  
DOANAS, Meking river or Brahmputra river  
DORIAS, A small Siamese river entering Chinese sea between  
    Mekong estuary and Seros  
SEROS, A small Siamese river falling in the Gulf of Siam, Mekong  
    river  
ATTABAS, Tavoy river  
PALANDAS, Salyuen river  
SARABOS, Sarayu river  
BAZAKATA, Island of Cheduba, or Diamond Island at the mouth  
    of Bassein river  
KHALINE, Island of Salang in the latitude of Nicobar island,

SINDAI ISLANDS, Islands as far south as the island of Iabadios  
(Java)

BAROUSAI ISLANDS, Islands of Nicobar

SABADLIBAI ISLANDS, Islands in the east of southern Sumatra

IABADIOS, Java or Yavadvipa, also Sumatra

ISLANDS OF SATYRS, Madura, Bali and Lombok Islands, extreme  
limits of the Indian Archipelago.

ARGYRE, Capital of Java or Sumatra, The Silver-town as in Arakan.

MANIOLAI ISLANDS, Ten Islands somewhere east of Ceylon

## APPENDIX 7

### INDIA BEYOND THE GANGES

#### PLACES

AIRRHAOIJ, Land on the coast to the east of the mouth of the Ganges upto the mouth of the Arakan river, the east Bengal and the Burma coast

ANTIHOLE, Feringibazar, a town situate to S E of Dhakka  
PENTAPOLIS, Mirkanserai city

BARAKOURA, Ramu town S S E of Chittagong

ARGYRA, Silver country of Arakan including a part of Pegu  
SAMBRA, An Arakan city

SADA, " "

BERABONNA, Sandowe, an Arakan town

TEMOLA, A town S E of Sada

BESYNGA, Bassein town

BERABAI, Barago Point or Martaban town

GOLDEN KHEROSONESE, Malay Peninsula, Delta of the Iravadi, river, Suvarnabhumi.

TAKOLA, Rangoon

SABAN, Satung or Thatung town on the mouth of the Saluen river

KOLI, Kalah or Kadah or Quedda town on the Straits of Malaka

LESTAI, Robber's Country

PERIMOULA, A port in the Gulf of Siam

SIMYLLA, A part in the Island of Salsette, Timoula

SAMARADE, A city on the eastern Coast of the Malay Peninsula subject to Siam

SAMARAT, Nagara, a city

SOBANPURI, Swarnapuri, An old Siamese city in the Meinam basin

PITHONABOSTE, Bungpasoi on the river Bangpa-kong, eastward of Bangkok in Gulf of Siam

ZABAI PORT, Champa port to the south of the Mekong river, southern extremity of Cochinchina

- SINDA, A town on the coast near Pulo Condor, a group of Islands  
 THAGORA, A Siamese town  
 BALONGA, A Metropolis of Siam  
 THROANA, A Siamese town  
 KORATATHA, A Metropolis of Siam  
 PAGRASA, A Siamese town.  
 AGANAGARA, AHINAGAR, A siamese town  
 SAPOLOS, A town in the Tangana region (region between Ramganga and Sarayu)  
 STORNA, " "  
 HEORTA, " "  
 PHAPPHA, " "  
 BORAITA, A Murunda or hilly Munda town  
 KORYGAZA, " "  
 KONDOTA, " "  
 KELYDNA, , "  
 AGANAGORA, " "  
 TALARGA, " "  
 SELAMPOURA, Selempur north of lower Sarayu  
 KANOZIKA, Kanauj  
 KASSIDA, Kashi  
 SOUNAGOURA, Sonargaon near Dhakka  
 SAGODA, Ayodhya, Capital of Koshala  
 RHADMARKOTTA, Rangmati, ancient region in lower Brahmaputra  
 TOSALEI, Tosali, a tribe of Orissa, Koshala-Toshala of pre-Aryan,  
     pre-Dravidian Austric ethnic group  
 ALOSANGA, Town Ellasing on Lojung river to the north-west  
     Dhakka  
 TOUGMA, Tagaung town east of the Iravadi river  
 TRIGYPTON OR TRILINGON, Trilinga or Three Kalings, Three  
     regions in east Bengal and Burma colonised by Telugus  
 RHINGIBERI, Rangmati on the Brahmaputra at Udayapur (city  
     of sunrise)  
 TOMARA, A town of Zamirai or Tamrai in Garo hills  
 MAREOURA OR MALTHOURA, A metropolis on the Iravadi  
 BAREUKORA, Falgun or Palong near Chittagong  
 KOKKONAGAR, A city on the gulf of Siam, some ancient foundation  
     from Kalinga

THARA, Tharavati at the head of the Delta of the Iravadi, a division of Pegu in Malaya Peninsula

ELDANA, A transgangetic town

ASANABARA,        „        „

ARKHINARA,        „        „

OURATHENAI,        „        „

ANINA,        „        „

SALATHA,        „        „

ATHENAGOURON, A town in upper Brahmaputra region

MANIAINA,        „        „

ADEISANA,        „        „

KIMARA,        „        „

PARISARA,        „        „

ARISABION,        „        „

POSINARA,        „        „

PANDASA,        „        „

SIPIBERIS,        „        „

LARIAGARA, A town in east Bengal or Burma

AGIMOITHA,        „        „

DASANA OR DOANA, „        „

LASIPPA,        „        „

BALONGKA, A town in Malaya Peninsula

PALANDA,        „        „

KATTIGARA, A city in the extreme east of Bharata, Kian-chi in Tong-king

## APPENDIX 8

### INDIA BEYOND THE GANGES

#### PEOPLES

**KIRRADIA**, The Kirata people

**BESYNGYTAI**, Adivasi people residing in the Bassein region

**GANGANOI OR TANGANOI**, Tangana, An Adivasi tribe of the region east to the Ganges inhabiting the region between the Kiratas and the Kulindas

**MAROUNDAI**, Muranda or hilly Mundas to the south of Ganganoi and upto the Gangaridai

**TAKORAIORI**, Dakhoura, An Adivasi tribe above eastern Koshala

**KORANGKALOI**, Korankara, An Adivasi tribe near the sources of Gandak

**PASSALAI**, Vaishali people

**TIKADAI OR BESADAI OR BASADAI**, People residing in Brahmaputra regions

**ZAMIRAI**, A tribe of the family of Kiratas inhabiting regions between southern Magadha and western Son

**ANINKHAI**, Adivasi people of lower Assam

**INDAPRATHAI**, People residing between south of Brahmaputra and lower Assam

**IBERINGAI**, Adivasi people further east to Aninkhai

**NANGALOGAI**, Nagas of Assam

**TOSALEI**, Adivasi Toshala people in the upper regions of the Mahanadi, A pre-Aryan, pre-Dravidian Austric people

**TRILINGON**, Telugus

## APPENDIX 9

### FAR WESTERN INDIA AND TAPROBANE MOUNTAINS

KORONOS, Eastern Elburz

HAZARAS, Source of Margos river in Margiane, a spur of the Paropanisos and the Sariphi

SARIPHI, Mountain in Parthia, north of Paropanisos

KAUKASOS, Mountain range west of Himalaya and east of Paropanisos having junction with Tauros, specially called, as Kaukasos extends as far west to the Black Sea, Prolongation of real Kaukasos, here occupying northern frontiers of Afghanistan

IMAOS, Meridian chain intersecting Kaukasos now called Bolar Tagh

N B Ptolemy traces sources of Indus tributaries to Imaos where it means the Himalayas, he also places Imaos to north and south of Skythia

SOGDIAN, Thian Shan mountain having the sources of Jaxartes and Oxos

KOMEDAI, Muz-tagh mountain district

ALANA, Northern part of the Ural chain, to the east of the Hyperboreans

RHYMMIK, Another branch of Ural chain

NAROSSON, Southern branch of Ural chain

AORONOS, A mountain in Baktriane

ASPISIA, A mountain north of the Iaxartas

TAPOURA, A mountain north of the Iaxartas, western part of the Altai mountain.

SYEBA, A mountain still eastward, A branch of Altai

ANAREA, To south of Syeba having sources of Obi and Irtish rivers, a western branch of Altai

AUXAKIA, A part of Altai mountain

KASIA, Mountains of Kashgar



- EMODOS, Himalayas  
ANNIBA, A Serike mountain  
ASMIRAI,                "        "  
KASIA, An eastern mountain of Serike abutting on Imaos, Khasa hills.  
THAGOURON, A Serike mountain  
OTTOROKORRHAS, Uttarakuru mountain, Ural mountains  
MOUNT BAGOOS, Ghur mountains  
MOUNT SARIKE, Hazaras mountain  
GHUR MOUNTAIN, Western section of Hindukush  
BAITAN MOUNTAINS, Mountain range between Afghanistan and Baluchistan  
GALIBA, Mountains in Taprobane, the source of the Phasis and the Ganges  
MALAIA, Mountains in Taprobane from which flow the Soanes and the Azanos and the Barakes, Adam's Peak of the Greeks  
SEMANTHINOS, A Chinese mountain

APPENDIX 10

FAR WESTERN INDIA AND TAPOBANE

HYDROGRAPHY

ABRANA, Lake of Arakhosia		
ASTHAIA, A Gedrosian Island		
KODANE,	"	"
SOANA, Dedera-Oya river of Taprobane		
AZANOS, Bentote river of Taprobane		
BARAKES, Kambukgam river of Taprobane		
PHASIS, Kangarayen river of Taprobane		
GANGES, Mahaveliganga river of Taprobane		
TAPROBANE, Island country, formerly an island in the Sindh, then in Godaveri, Simoundouor Salike of the Greeks, the name later imposed on the present Ceylon island		
NORTH CAPE, Opposite to Cape Kumari		
GALIBA CAPE, Situate after north Cape		
ANARISOUNDON CAPE, Kundramalı Point or Kalpantyn		
CAPE OF ZEUS, At Columbo		
PATI BAY, Bay of Trinkonamalai		
PRASODES BAY, Harbour of Columbo, Bay of Columbo		
CAPE ORVEON, Point de Galle		
CAPE OF DIONYSOS, Hambangtote		
CAPE KETAION, Elephant Rock, Whale Cape		
HAVEN OF MARDOS, Arukgam Bay		
RIZALA HAVEN, Vendeloos Bay		
HAVEN OF THE SUN, Batticalao		
OXEIA CAPE, (Sharp Point) with foul Point		
SPATANA HAVEN, An Indentation, on Trinkonomalai Bay		
HAVEN OF PRIAPIS, Priapis Bay		
HAVEN OF RIZALA, A Taprobane Bay.		
OZIEA, A Taprobane headland		
OUNGALIA OUANGANA, A Taprobane Island		
COUANGANA	"	"
KANATHRA,	"	"
AIGIDEON,	"	"
ORVEON,	"	"
MONAKHE,	"	"
AMMINE,	"	"
KARKOS,	"	"
PHILEKOS,	"	"
EIRENE,	"	"
KALANDADROUA,	"	"

BASSA, A Taprobane island

BALAKA, " "

ALAHA, " "

GOUMARA, " "

ZAHIA, " "

SOUSOUARA, " "

WILD BEAST GULF, Gulf of Tonquin in China

GULF OF SENAI, Chinese Sea beyond Hai-non Island

KOTTIARIS, River of Canton,

THINAI OR SINAI, Nankin river

ASPISTHRA, A Chinese river

AMBASTES, " " Ambastha

SAENIS, " "

SOUTHERN CAPE, A Chinese Cape

CAPE OF SATYRS, " "

## APPENDIX 11

### FAR WESTERN BHARATA AND TAPROBANE

#### PLACES

HYRKANIA, Country lying between Kaspean Sea, Media, the Oxos river and Parthia

HYRKANA, Gurkan or Jorjan, metropolis of Hyrkania lying to the east of Asterabad

BARANGE, A Hyrkanian city

ADRAPS, " "

KASAPE, Kasyaps

AHARBINE, " "

SORHA, " "

SINAKA, , "

AMAROUZA , "

HYRKANIA, Metropolis

SAKE, A Hyrkanian city

ASMOURNA, " ",

MAISOKA, " "

SARAMANNE, Shramana nagar, A Hyrkanian town north of Media

ARSITIS, Region adjacent to Koronos range

SIRAKENE, Shramanic region with metropolis Saramanne

MEDIA, Country west to Hyrkania country

PARTHIA, Country south to Hyrkania country

MARGIANE, Country lying east to Hyrkania, south to parts of Skythia and part of Baktriane, north to Areia and Parthia and on the west to Baktriane

NISAIA OR NIGAIA, Nissa town or Naga town, A town between Asterabad and Meshd

MARGIANE, Metropolis of the Margiane Country, near Alexandria city in Parthia, watered by river Margos, later named Syriana, renamed Antiokheia Margiane by Antiochos son of Seleucus

**ARIAKA**, A city in Margiane

**SINA (Sena)**,      „      „

**ARATHA**,      „      „

**ARGADINA**,      „      „

**IASONION**,      „      „

**RIIYA**,      „      „

**GORIANE**,      „      „

**BAKTRIANE**, Country bounded on west by Margiane, on the north and east by Sogdiane along the rest of the course of Oxos river and on the south by the rest of Areia, extending from the extreme point towards Margiane

**BAKTRA**, Balkh, Capital of Baktriane

**MARAKANDA**, Samarakand, a historical city belonging to Sogdiana but placed in Baktriana by Ptolemy

**EUKRATIDIA**, Founded by Gracka Baktrian king, Eukratides

**ZARIASPA**, A Baktrian town towards Oxos

**KHARKHARTA**,      „      „

**KHOANA**,      „      „

**SOUROGANA**,      „      „

**PHRATON**,      „      „

**ALIKHORDA**,      „      „

**KHOMARA**,      „      „

**KOURIANDRA**,      „      „

**KAUARIS**,      „      „

**ASTAKANA**,      „      „

**EBOUSMOUANASSA**,      „      „

OR **TOSMOUANASSA**

**MENAPIA**,      „      „

**ESTOBARA**,      „      „

**MARAKODRA**,      „      „

**SOGDIONA**, Country bounded on the west by part of Skythia, on the north by another part of Skythia, on the east and south and again on the west by Baktriane and by the Kaukavian mountains specially so called

**OUANDAHANDA**, Badakshan

**KYRESKHATA**, A city on the Jaxartas

**OXEIANA**, A city on the Oxos

**MARONKA**,      „      „

KHOLBESINA, A city on the Oxos

DREPSA, Andarah, A Baktrian town

TRYBOKTRA, A Segdiana City

ALEXANDREIA OXIANE, Alexandreia in the Oxos

ALEXANDREIA ESKHETE, Alexandreia near Khojend on Jaxartas river

INDIKOMORDANA, A Sogdiana town

SAKAI, Country bounded on the west by Sogdiana, on the east by Skythia and on the south by Imaos

SKYTHIA WITHIN IMAOS, Country bounded on the west by Sarmatia in Asia, on the north by unknown land, on the east by Mount Imaos ascending north and on the south and also on the east by the Sakai and the Sogdiane and as far as Hyrkanian (Kaspian) sea at the mouth of the Oxos

DAUAHA, A town on Oxos river

SKYTHIA BEYOND IMAOS, Country bounded on the west by Skythia within Imaos, and Sakai, on the north by the unknown land, on the east by Serike and on the south by a part of India beyond the Ganges. It embraced Ladakh, Tibet, Chinese Tartary and Mongolia

ISSEDON SKYTHIKE, Different from Issedon of Serike, Metropolis with abundance of gold

AUXAKIA, A Beyond Skythian town

KHAURANA, " "

SOITA. " "

SERIKE, Country bounded on west by Skythia beyond Imaos, on the north by the unknown land, on the east by the unknown land and on the south by the rest of India beyond the Ganges and also by the Sinai (China)

ASMIRIA, Kashmir

OTTAROKORRHA, Uttarakuru, The Ural region, unknown land of the Greek authors beyond Skythia and Serike

AREIA, Country bounded on the north by Margiane and a port of Baktriane, on the west by Parthia and the Karmanian desert, on the south by Drangiane and on the east by western parts of Paropanisos, A small province, a district of wide extant in Ariana comprehending nearly the whole of ancient Persia.

**ARTIKAUDNA,** Artakana, Metropolis of Areia, near Alexandreia  
founded by Alexander

**ALEXANDREIA OF THE AREIANS,** Identified with Herat, or near  
Herat or Hera

**SOTEIRA,** A town founded by Greek-Bactrian Soter

**DISTA,** A town or village in Areia

**NABARIS,** " "

**TAUAY** " "

**AUGARA,** " "

**BITAXA,** " "

**SARMAGANA,** " "

**SIPHARE,** " "

**RHANGARA,** " "

**ZAOUMKHANA,** " "

**AMBRODAX,** " "

**BOGADIA,** " "

**OVARPNA(VARPNA),** " "

**GODANA,** " "

**PHAURANA,** " "

**KHATRISKHE,** " "

**KHAURINA,** " "

**ORTHIANA,** " "

**TAUKIANA,** " "

**ASTAUDA,** " "

**BABARSANA OF,** " "

**KABARSANA,** " "

**KAPOUTANA,** " "

**AREIA,** Principal city of the province

**KASKE,** A town or Village in Areia

**ORTIKANE,** " "

**NISIBIS,** " "

**PARAKANANE,** " "

**SARIGA,** " "

**DARKAMA,** " "

**KOTAKE,** " "

**TRIBAZIKA,** " "

**ASTASANA,** " "

**ZIMYRA,** " "

**PAROPANISDAI**, Country bounded on the west by Areia, on the north by a part of Baktriana, on the east by a part of India and on the south by Arakhosia

**ORTOSPANA**, High fort of Kabul, Urdhvasthana

**KAROURA**, Kabul

**PARSIANA**, Panjshir

**BARZAURA**, Bazarak

**BABORANA**, Paravan

**DRASTOKA**, Istargarh

**PARSIA**, Capital of the Parsii, Farzah

**LOKHARNA**, Logarh, south of Kabul

**ARTOARTA**, A Paropanisdaian town

**KATISA**                    "       "

**NIPHANDA**,              "       "

**GAZAKA**,                 "       "

**NAULIBS**,                "       "

**DAROAKANA**,           "       "

**TARBAKANA**,           "       "

**BAGARDA**,               "       "

**ARGOUDA**,               "       "

**DRANGIANA**, Country bounded on the west and north by Areia, on the east by Arakhosia and on the south by a part of Gedrosia, Seistan region

**PROPHATHASIA**, Capital of Drangiana

**DASHAK**, Metropolis of Seistan

**ARIASPE**, A town in Drangiana

**RHOUDA**,                "       "

**INNA**,                   "       "

**ARIKADA**,               "       "

**ASTA**,                   "       "

**XARXIARA**,           "       "

**NOSTANA**,              "       "

**PHARAZANA**,           "       "

**BIEGIS**,                  "       "

**ARANA**,                  "       "

**ARAKHOSIA**, Country bounded on the west by Drangiana, on the north by Paropanisda, on the east by part of India and on the south by Gedrosia Arakhosia comprises of considerable portions of eastern Afghanistan, Name derived from Saraswati river known as Haraqati, White India,

ARKHOTOS, Capital of Arakhosia, near Kandahar or Ulan Robat.  
 OZOLA, An Arakhosian town

PHOKLIS,	"	"
ARIKAKA,	"	"
ALEANDREIA,	"	" founded by Alexander
RHIZANA,	"	"
ARBAKA,	"	"
SIGARA,	"	"
KHOASPA,	"	"
ASIAKE,	"	"
GAMMAKE,	"	"
MALIANE,	"	"
DAMMANA,	"	"

GEDROSIA, Country bounded on the west by Karmania, on the north by Drangiana and Arakhosia, on the east by a part of India along the river Indus and on the south by a part of the Indian ocean Baluchistan.

PARSIS, Metropolis of Baluchistan

BADARA, Gevadar

KOUNI, A Gedrosian town

MUASARNA, " "

KOTLAHARA, " "

SOXESTRA OR SOKTRA " "

OSKANA, " "

GYNAIKON LIMEN, Women's Haven, a town in eastern part of Makran ruled by women

OMIZA, A Gedrosian town

ARBIS, A Gedrosian Harbour or Port of Alexander

TAPROBANE, Island country opposite Cape Kumari, which is in India, called formerly Simouadou and now (Ptolem'y's time) Sahke

MARGANA, Mantote

IOGANA, Aripo

SINDO KAUDA, Chilau

PRIAPIS PERT, Negombo

NOUBARTHA, Barberyn

ODOKA, Hikkode

DAGANA, Dondra Head

KARKOBARA, Tangalle

- ABRATHA, Karativoe or Aparatote  
 NAGADIBA OR NAGADINA, A Naga town near the Bay  
 ANONBRIGARA, Kuchavelli  
 MODOUTTON, Kokelaylor Mantote  
 TALAKORY OR AOKOTE, Tondi Mannar  
 PROKOURI, A Taprobane town  
 MAAGROMAN, Mahagama or Bintenne (ancient Mahayangam or  
     Mahavelligam), Metropolis  
 ANOUROGRAMMON, Anuradhapur, the Royal Residence.  
 ADEISEMON, An interior Taprobane Town  
 PODOUAKE,                  „       „  
 OULISPODA,                  „       „  
 NAKADOUBA,                  „       „  
 SENAI (CHINA), Country bounded on the north by part of  
     Serike, on the east and the south by unknown land, on the  
     west by India beyond the Ganges  
 BRAMMA, A Chinese town  
 RHABANA,                  „       „  
 KATHIGARA, A Chinese port  
 AKADRA, Chinese town  
 ASPITHRA,                  „       „  
 COKKONAGAR,                „       „  
 SARATA,                  „       „  
 SINAI, OR THENAI, Metropolis of China, Nankin

## APPENDIX 12

### FAR WESTERN BHARATA AND TAPROBANE

#### PEOPLES

MAXERAI, People residing in Maxera river valley port on Hyrkania

ASTABENOI, People residing in the Oxos valley part on the Aral sea, an affluent of the Kaspian in ancient times

KHRENDOI, People residing in the Sokauda valley port on Hyrkania sea

DERBIKKAI, A Skythian tribe of Margiane in Oxus valley

MASSAGETAI, A nomadic Skythian tribe in the neighbourhood of river Askatangkas

PARNOI, Dahai Skythai near Kaspian Sea.

MARGIANE, Peoples of Margiane country

TAPOUROI, People of Margiane residing in the vicinity of Hyrkanoi and Areioi

SALATERAI, A Baktrian tribe

JARIASPAI, " "

KAMASROI, " "

KOMOI, " "

AKINAKAI, " "

TAMBYZOI, " "

TOKHAROI, Tushars or Tushkhars or Tukhars, the later Turks

MARYKAIOI, A Baktrian tribe

SKORDAI, " "

OUARNOI, " "

SABADIOI, " "

ORESITOI, " "

AMAREIS, " "

BAKTRIANE, The Bahlika people

SOGDIANOI, Sogdiana peoples

KAMEDAI, A Sogdiana tribe living in Muz-Tagh mountain district

- KANDAROI, Gandharas, A Sogdiana tribe.  
 PASKAI, A Sogdiana tribe  
 MARDYENOI, Madras, Sogdiana tribe  
 TAKHOROI, Takurs „ „ „  
 KIRRIADAI, Kiratas, „ „ „  
 KHORASMOI, Khwarazm, „ „ „  
 DREPSIANOI, A Sogdiana tribe  
 IATIO, „ „ „  
 AUGALOI, „ „ „  
 DRYBAKTAI, „ „ „  
 OXEIADOI, „ „ „  
 OXYDRANGKAI, „ „ „ Kshudraka  
 SAKAI, Shaka nomads dwelling in woods and caves in the  
     Komeda district, Nomadic Skythians  
 KARATAI Kiratas, A Shaka tribe, A Mongolian Karait tribe  
 KOMAROI, A nomadic Shaka tribe  
 KOMEDOI, „ „ „  
 BYLTAI, A Shaka tribe of Baltistan and also of Little Tibet  
 TOORNAI, A nomadic Shaka tribe  
 GRYNAIOI, SOYTHAI, „ „ „  
 ALANOI, SKYTHAI, Alan people of eastern Europe, and southern  
     Russia  
 SOUOBENOI, A nomadic, pastoral and migratory tribe of Skythia  
 ALANORSOI, „ „ „  
 SAITAINOI, „ „ „  
 MASSAIOI, A nomadic, pastoral and migratory Skythian tribe  
 SYEBOI, Shivis  
 TEOTOSAOBS, „ „ „  
 RHOBOSOOI, „ „ „  
 ASMENOI, „ „ „  
 PANIARDOI, „ „ „  
 KORAXOI, „ „ „  
 ORGASOI, „ „ „  
 FRYMANOI, „ „ „  
 ASIOTAI, „ „ „  
 AORSOI, „ „ „  
 IAXARTAI, „ „ „  
 SAITANIOI, „ „ „  
 MOLOGENOI, „ „ „

- SAMNITAI, A nomadic, pastoral and migratory Skythian tribe  
 ZARATAI, " "  
 SASONES, " "  
 TYBIAKAI, " "  
 TABIENOI, " "  
 IASTAI, " "  
 MAKHAITEGOI, " "  
 NAROSHEIS, " "  
 NAROSSOI, " "  
 KAKHAGAI SKYTHAI " "  
 ASPISIOI SKYTHAI, " "  
 GALAKTOPHAGOI SKYTHAI,  
 TAPOUREOJ, " "  
 ARIAKAI, " "  
 VAMOSLAI, " "  
 SAGARAUKAI, " "  
 RHIBIOI, " "  
 ABIOI SKYTHAI, General term for Skythians  
 HIPPOPHAGOI, A beyond Skythian tribe  
 AUXAKITIS, " "  
 KHATAI SKYTHAI, " "  
 KHARAUNAIOI SKYTHAI, A Himalay and Skythian tribe  
 ANNIBOI, A Serike tribe  
 UXAKIOI, " "  
 DAMNAI, Northern Dashamava people  
 RHABAUNRI, Northern Ravana people  
 PIALAI, A Serike tribe  
 OIKHARDAI, A Serike people on river Oikhardas  
 GARINAOI, A Serike tribe  
 ISSEDONES, Great people of Kasia range  
 THROANOI, Phuna tribe of Serike  
 KHARAUNAIOI, Daradas  
 ITHAGOUROI, Dhakars, a prominent Darda tribe  
 OTTOROKARRHA, Uttarakuru people, Hyperboreans  
 PAROPANIDAI, Collective name of tribes living in the southern  
     and eastern sides of the Hindukush which Ptolemy calls  
     Kaukasos, of which Paropanisos formed a ~~r~~  
 BOLITAI, Kabul people  
 AMBAUTAI, Ambasthas

- PARYETAI, Pravata people  
 PARAUTOI, " "  
 ARISTOPHYLOI, A branch of Paropanisdaï  
 PARSIOI, Parasu people  
 DANANDAI, Drainge, Dragiana people  
 BAKTRIOI, A Branch of Dragiana people  
 TATAKEVE, " "  
 SYDROI, An Arakhosian tribe  
 RHOPLOUTAI, " "  
 EORITAI, " "  
 ARBITAI OR ARBIES, People possessing maritime region adjoining the Indus  
 RHAMNAI, The Ravana tribe of Baluclustan  
 PARSIDAI, Parsi people of Baluchistan  
 MAUSARNAIOI, A Baluch tribe  
 PARADFNE, " "  
 PARISIANE, " "  
 SALAI, People of Sarike or Taprobane  
 GALIBOI, Galiba region people  
 MOUDOUTTOI, Kokelay or Mantote people  
 ANOUROGRAMMOI, Anuradhapur people  
 NAGEDIBOL, Nagadvipa people  
 SOANOI, Son people  
 SENNOI A Naga people  
 SANDOKANDAI, A Sindokanda people  
 BOUMASANOI, A Taprobane people  
 TARAKHOI, " "  
 BOKANOI, " "  
 DIARDOULOI, " "  
 NAGEIROI, A Naga people  
 RHOGANDANOI, People of S W Taprobane  
 SEMANTHINOI, A Chinese people of the mountain  
 AKADRAI, " "  
 ASPITDAI, "  
 AMBASTAI, Ambasthas  
 IKTHYOPHAGOI,

